













Father and Sons for Liberty.

BARNES' HISTORICAL SERIES

A

BRIEF HISTORY

OF THE

UNITED STATES

1884

COPYRIGHT, 1871, 1879, 1880, 1885

A. S. BARNES & COMPANY

NEW YORK AND CHICAGO

270  
278

BARNES' BRIEF HISTORY SERIES.

BARNES' BRIEF HISTORY OF THE UNITED STATES,  
FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS. 12MO. ILLUSTRATED.

BARNES' BRIEF HISTORY OF FRANCE,  
FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND FOR PRIVATE READING.  
12MO. ILLUSTRATED.

BARNES' BRIEF HISTORY OF ANCIENT PEOPLES,  
FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND FOR PRIVATE READING.  
12MO. ILLUSTRATED.

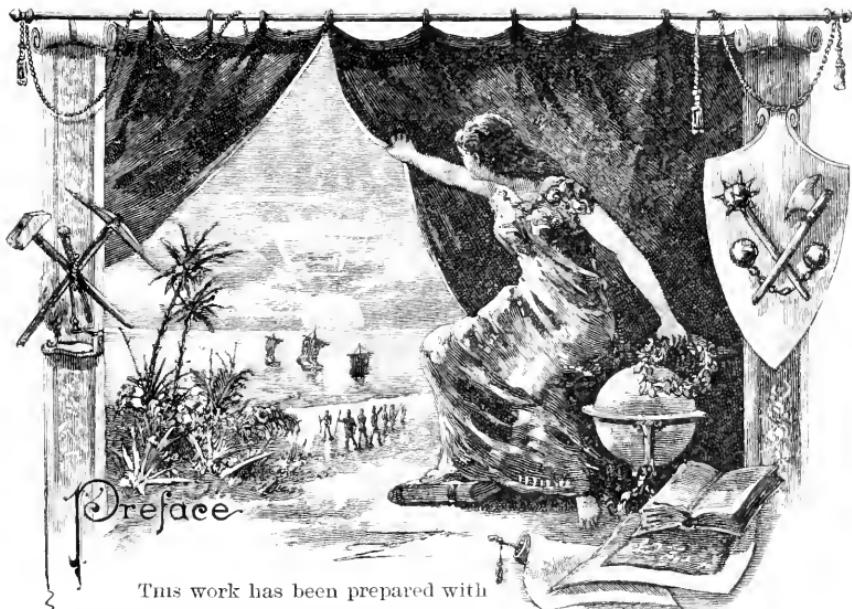
BARNES' BRIEF HISTORY OF GREECE,  
With Select Readings from Standard Authors  
12MO. BEAUTIFULLY ILLUSTRATED.

BARNES' BRIEF HISTORY OF ROME  
With Select Readings from Standard Authors.  
12MO. BEAUTIFULLY ILLUSTRATED.

BARNES' BRIEF HISTORY OF MEDIEVAL AND  
MODERN PEOPLES,  
FOR THE USE OF SCHOOLS AND FOR PRIVATE READING.  
12MO. ILLUSTRATED.

BARNES' BRIEF GENERAL HISTORY.  
The Ancient, Mediaeval, and Modern Peoples,  
BOUND IN ONE VOLUME. 12MO. ILLUSTRATED.

BARNES' POPULAR HISTORY OF THE UNITED  
STATES,  
FOR PRIVATE READING AND FOR REFERENCE IN SCHOOLS AND FAMILIES.  
ROYAL SVO. BEAUTIFULLY ILLUSTRATED.



This work has been prepared with  
the following design, viz.: to state only

those important events in our history which every American citizen should know, and to tell them in such a way as to arouse the pupil's interest and inspire enthusiasm for the study. In carrying out this idea, the author has sought to avoid all sectional and partisan statements; to explain, from the standpoint of the Union, those principles which, coming to an issue at different times, have been decided by the progress of events; and, incidentally, to inspire, by the sweep of the story, a love for our common country, and an intelligent solicitude for her destiny.

Experience has taught the value of certain general methods of teaching this study.

1. To divide the history into Epochs, giving each a characteristic name.
2. To precede each Epoch by a map and questions in order to familiarize the pupil with the localities of the events about which he is to read; and to follow each Epoch with a Chronological Table and a list of Reading References for further study.
3. To furnish copious notes containing collateral facts, minor events, sketches of the lives of presidents and noted men, and, especially, those anecdotes of heroism and devotion that so brighten the record of our national growth.
4. To give each paragraph a distinct title to aid the pupil in learning, and the teacher in hearing the lesson; and to arrange these topics in such a way as to form a systematic analysis of the subject.

5. To make the great battles easy of remembrance by associating with the description of each the pivotal point on which its issue turned.

6. To introduce something of the philosophy of history by stating the plan of each campaign, and the objects sought by, and the results of, important engagements, thus leading pupils to appreciate the fact that events hinge upon each other.

7. To stimulate flagging interest, and also induce a more comprehensive study of history, by means of review questions like the Historical Recreations of this series.

This work is offered to American youth in the confident belief that, as they study the wonderful history of their native land, they will learn to prize their birthright more highly, and treasure it more carefully. Their patriotism must be kindled when they come to see how slowly, yet how gloriously, this tree of liberty has grown, what storms have wrenched its boughs, what sweat of toil and blood has moistened its roots, what eager eyes have watched every out-springing bud, what brave hearts have defended it, loving it even unto death. A heritage thus sanctified by the heroism and devotion of the fathers can not but elicit the choicest care and tenderest love of the sons.

J. D. S.

ELMIRA, N. Y., Nov. 1871.



PAGE

INTRODUCTION .....	9
Remains of Prehistoric Peoples.....	9
The Mound Builders.....	10
The Indians and their Characteristics.....	10
The Coming of the Northmen.....	15
The Division of American History into Six Great Epochs.....	16
References for Reading .....	17
Blackboard Analysis of the Introduction.....	18

#### FIRST EPOCH.

EARLY DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.....	19
The Commercial Problem of the Fifteenth Century.....	19
Christopher Columbus and his Voyages.....	20
Naming the New Continent.....	24
The Cabots and their Discoveries.....	25
Some Spanish Explorers.....	26
Some French Explorers.....	30
Some English Explorers.....	34
New Netherland.....	39
Settlements at the End of the Sixteenth Century.....	40
Sea-life in the Fifteenth and Sixteenth Centuries.....	41
Table of Contemporary European Sovereigns.....	42
Chronological Summary.....	42
References for Reading .....	43
Blackboard Analysis of the First Epoch.....	44

#### SECOND EPOCH.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE COLONIES.....	45
Settlement of the Thirteen Colonies.....	45
The Four Inter-Colonial Wars .....	77 90

	PAGE
Colonial Civilization.....	91
General Condition of the Colonies.....	91
Manners and Customs.....	93
Education.....	96
Table of Contemporary European Sovereigns.....	97
Chronological Summary.....	97
References for Reading .....	99
Blackboard Analysis of the Second Epoch.....	100

## THIRD EPOCH.

THE REVOLUTIONARY WAR.....	101
Causes of the Separation from Great Britain.....	101
The Seven-Years Struggle for Independence.....	106-142
Condition of the Country at the Close of the War.....	142
Adoption of Federal Constitution and Formation of Parties.....	143
Rural Life One Hundred Years Ago .....	144
Chronological Summary.....	146
References for Reading .....	147
Blackboard Analysis of the Third Epoch.....	148

## FOURTH EPOCH.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE STATES.....	149
Washington's Administration.....	149
Adams' Administration .....	154
Jefferson's Administration.....	155
Madison's Administration.....	159
Second War with Great Britain.....	160
Monroe's Administration.....	172
John Quincy Adams' Administration.....	174
Jackson's Administration.....	175
Van Buren's Administration.....	178
Harrison and Tyler's Administration .....	180
Polk's Administration .....	185
War with Mexico.....	185
Taylor and Fillmore's Administration.....	191
Pierce's Administration .....	194
Buchanan's Administration.....	196
Secession of the South .....	198
New States.....	200
Civilization.....	210
Distinctions of Dress—the Five Classes.....	210
The Laborer .....	210
The Schools .....	210
The Middle of the Century.....	211
Chronological Summary.....	211
References for Reading .....	213
Blackboard Analysis of the Fourth Epoch.....	214

## FIFTH EPOCH.

	PAGE
THE CIVIL WAR.....	215
Lincoln's Administration .....	215
The Five-Years Struggle for National Unity .....	216
What the War Cost.....	275
Assassination of the President.....	275
New States.....	277
Chronological Summary.....	277
References for Reading .....	279
Blackboard Analysis of the Fifth Epoch.....	280

## SIXTH EPOCH.

RECONSTRUCTION AND PASSING EVENTS.....	281
Johnson's Administration.....	281
Grant's Administration .....	287
Hayes' Administration.....	294
Garfield and Arthur's Administration.....	296
Cleveland's Administration.....	300
New States.....	301
Progress of Civilization .....	302
Blackboard Analysis of the Sixth Epoch.....	312

## APPENDIX.

Questions for Class Use .....	313
Historical Recreations.....	328
Declaration of Independence .....	334
Constitution of the United States, with Questions, and Notes.....	338
Table of States .....	352
Table of Presidents.....	354
Index .....	355

## LIST OF MAPS.

EARLY VOYAGES AND DISCOVERIES.....	I., III.
DEVELOPMENT OF COLONIES.....	Opposite.... 45
REVOLUTIONARY WAR—THE COLONIES.....	" .... 101
REVOLUTIONARY WAR—CAMPAIGNS NORTH AND SOUTH.....	" 120, 121
WAR OF 1812, AND WAR WITH MEXICO.....	" .... 149
CAMPAIGNS IN WAR OF 1812, AND WAR WITH MEXICO.....	" 160, 161
THE CIVIL WAR.....	" .... 215
CAMPAIGNS OF THE CIVIL WAR .....	" 222, 223
PENINSULAR CAMPAIGN.....	236
VICINITY OF VICKSBURG.....	245
VICINITY OF CHATTANOOGA.....	247
VICINITY OF GETTYSBURG.....	252
GRANT'S CAMPAIGN AROUND RICHMOND.....	261
TERRITORIAL DEVELOPMENT OF THE UNITED STATES.....	Opposite.... 281

## ILLUSTRATIONS.

PAGE	PAGE
FATHER AND SONS FOR LIBERTY. <i>Frontispiece.</i>	123
PREFACE (Illustrated Heading).....	126
TABLE OF CONTENTS (Illustrated Heading).....	131
INTRODUCTION (Illustrated Heading).....	138
Relics of Early American Races.....	141
Scene in Indian Life.....	149
Indian Hieroglyphics.....	158
Landing of Northmen.....	162
EPOCH I. (Illustrated Heading).....	167
Tomb of Columbus.....	170
Burial of De Soto.....	182
La Salle at the Mississippi.....	184
EPOCH II. (Illustrated Heading)...	186
Smith Trading with Indians.....	191
The Ruins of Jamestown .....	197
Puritans Going to Church.....	207
Canonieus Receiving Powder and Shot .....	215
Morning Attack by Indians .....	219
The Charter Oak.....	224
Dutch Trading at New York....	232
Mr. Dustin Defending his Children from the Indians .....	235
An Incident of Washington.....	249
Quebec in Early Times.....	256
A Scold Gagged .....	257
New England Kitchen Scene...	264
EPOCH III. (Illustrated Heading)...	268
Retreat from Lexington.....	271
Prayer before Bunker Hill.....	275
Capture of Ticonderoga .....	276
Surrender of Rall.....	281
	285
	293
	294
	305
	306

## PORTRAITS.

PAGE	PAGE
COLUMBUS.....	20
PENN.....	71
LA FAYETTE.....	119
FRANKLIN.....	127
MARION.....	134
WASHINGTON, HAMILTON, JEFFERSON.	151
JACKSON.....	176
	177
	192
	198
	199
	290
	297
	300



THE following method of using this work has been successfully employed by many teachers. At the commencement of the study, let each pupil be required to draw an outline map of North America, at least 18×24 inches in size. This should contain only physical features, viz., coast-line, mountains, lakes, and rivers. If desired, they may be marked very faintly at first, and shaded and darkened when discovered in the progress of the history. As the pupils advance in the text, let them mark on their maps, day by day, the places discovered, the settlements, battles, political divisions, etc., with their dates. They will thus see the country growing afresh under their hand and eye, and the geography and the history will be indissolubly linked. At the close of the term, their maps will show what they have done, and each name, with its date, will recall the history which clusters around it.

Recitations and examinations may be conducted by having a map drawn upon the blackboard with colored crayons, and requiring the class to fill in the names and dates, describing the historical facts as they proceed. In turn, during review, the pupil should be able, when a date or place is pointed out, to state the event associated with it.

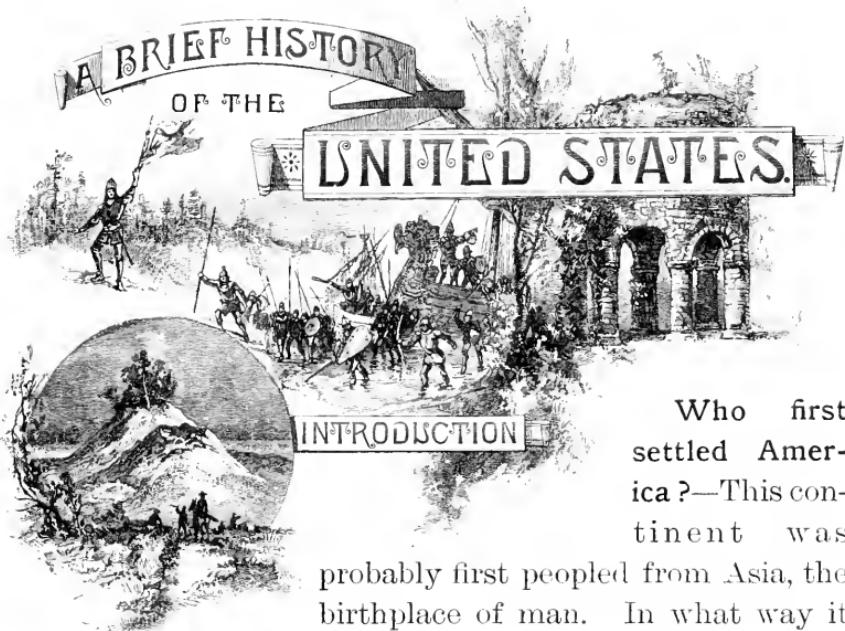
It will be noticed that the book is written on an exact plan and method of arrangement. The topics of the epochs, chapters, sections, and paragraphs form a full analysis; thus, in each Presidential Administration, the order of subjects is uniform, viz.: Domestic Affairs, Foreign Affairs, and Political Parties—the subsidiary topics being grouped under these heads. The teacher is therefore recommended *to place on the board the analysis of each Epoch, and, when possible, conduct the recitation from that without the use of the book in the class.*

Specimen Analyses are given at the close of each Epoch. These are merely suggestions, and should be used to elicit other and more elaborate ones from the

pupils. In these analyses may, also, be inserted the titles of additional material gathered by teacher and class. Good analyses thus, incidentally, serve as pigeon-holes for classifying as well as preserving one's knowledge.

The Reading References at the end of each Epoch contain a list of books that will be found valuable for additional information and for consultation. It is not the intention to give a catalogue of U. S. Histories and biographies of celebrated Americans, but simply to name a few works to interest a class and furnish material for collateral reading. Bancroft's and Hildreth's Histories, Irving's *Life of Washington*, and Sparks' *American Biographies* are supposed to be in every school library. They are, therefore, not referred to in these lists. The Lives of the Presidents, the Histories of the different States, and all works of local value are useful, and should be secured, if possible. The Magazine of American History will be found serviceable for reference on disputed points of American History and Biography. The recent volumes of Harper's Magazine, and the Century, abound in excellent articles on special subjects. The American Cyclopedia and Thomas' Dictionary of Biography will afford material for preparing essays. With a little effort, a poem, a prose selection, or a composition on some historical topic may be offered by the class each day to enliven the recitation.

For Courses of Reading, and for information concerning the value and character of various historical works, refer to Adams' Manual of Historical Literature—a most reliable and excellent bibliography. Hall's Methods of Teaching History will, also, furnish the teacher with suggestive ideas.



Who first settled America?—This continent was

probably first peopled from Asia, the birthplace of man. In what way it happened, we do not know. Chinese

vessels, coasting along the shore according to the custom of early voyagers, may have been driven by storms to cross the Pacific Ocean, while the crews were thankful to escape a watery grave by settling an unknown country: or, parties wandering across Bering Strait in search of adventure, and finding on this side a pleasant land, may have resolved to make it their home.

**American Antiquities.**—In various parts of the continent, remains are found of the people who occupied this country in prehistoric times. Through the Mississippi valley, from the Lakes to the Gulf, extends a succession of defensive earth-works.\* The largest forest trees are

\* It is a singular fact that banks of earth grassed over are more enduring than any other work of man. The grassy mounds near Nineveh and Babylon have remained unchanged for centuries. Meantime massive buildings of stone have been erected, have served long generations, and have crumbled to ruin.

often found growing upon them. The Indians have no tradition as to the origin of these structures. They generally crown steep hills, and consist of embankments, ditches, etc., indicating considerable acquaintance with military science. At Newark, Ohio, a fortification exists which covers an area more than two miles square, and has over two miles of embankment from two to twenty feet high.

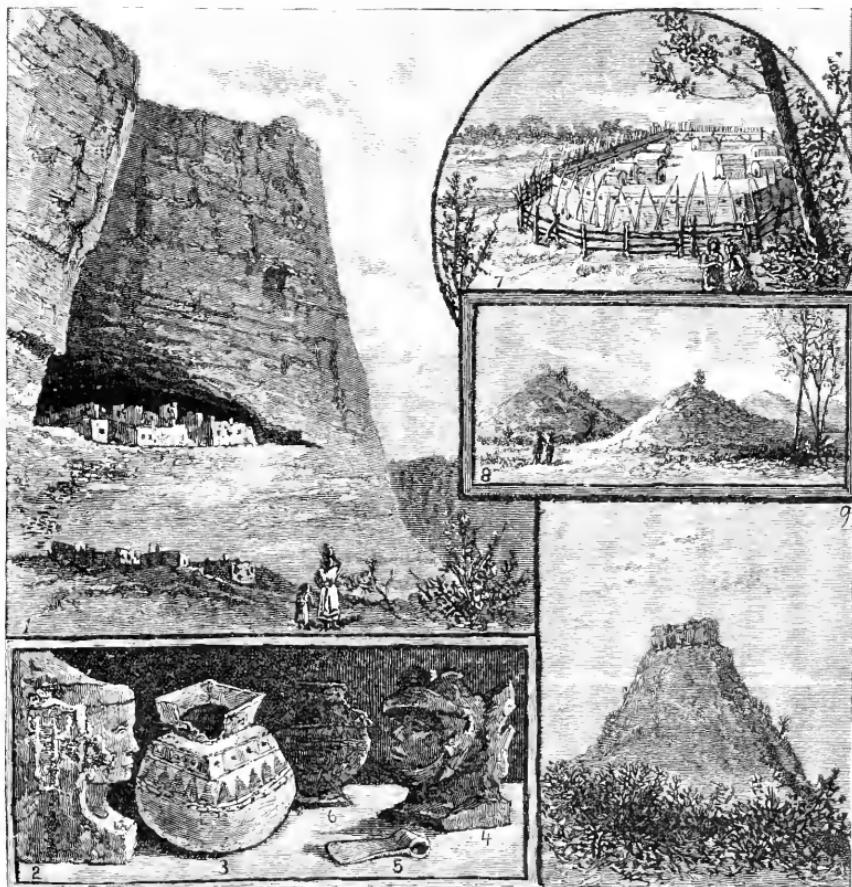
Mounds, seemingly constructed as great altars for religious purposes or as monuments, are also numerous. One, opposite St. Louis, covers eight acres of ground, and is ninety feet high. There are said to be 10,000 of these mounds in Ohio alone.

A peculiar kind of earth-work has the outline of gigantic men or animals. An embankment in Adams County, Ohio, represents very accurately a serpent 1,000 feet long. Its body winds with graceful curves, and in its wide-extended jaws lies a figure which the animal seems about to swallow. In Mexico and Peru, still more wonderful remains have been discovered. They consist not only of defensive works, altars, and monuments, but also of idols, temples, aqueducts, and paved roads.

**The Mound Builders** is the name given to the people who erected the mounds of North America. The old pits where the Mound Builders dug copper are still found in the mining region of Lake Superior. They seem, also, to have occupied Central America, and there to have developed a high civilization. They built cities, wove cotton, worked in gold, silver, and copper, labored in the fields, and had regular governments.

**The Indians** who were found on this continent east of the Mississippi, by the first European settlers, did not exceed 200,000 in number. In Mexico, Peru, and the

Indies, however, there was an immense population. The Indians were the successors of the Mound Builders, and



1. CLIFF-DWELLERS OF NEW MEXICO. 2. SCULPTURED HEAD FROM YUCATAN. 3. INDIAN VASE. 4. INCENSE BURNER. 5, 6. STONE HATCHET AND VASE FROM MEXICO. 7. FORTIFIED ONONDAGA VILLAGE. 8. MOUNDS AT SPRING CREEK, TENNESSEE. 9. TEMPLE IN YUCATAN.

were by far their inferiors in civilization.\* We know not why the ancient race left, nor whence the Indians came.

\* This view was generally accepted until recently. Many now hold that all the aboriginal inhabitants of this country were of one race; and that the agriculture, pottery, and other arts of the Mound Builders, as well as of the Indians, came from the superior civilization of Central America and Mexico, illustrating what is termed "the northern drift of civilization" on this continent.

It is supposed that the former were driven southward by the savage tribes from the north.

**Indian Characteristics.\*—.arts and Inventions.**—The Indian has been well termed the “Red Man of the Forest”. He built no cities, no ships, no churches, no school-houses. He constructed only temporary bark wigwams and canoes. He made neither roads nor bridges, but followed foot-paths through the forest, and swam the streams. His highest art was expended in a simple bow and arrow.

*Progress and Education.*—He made no advancement, but each son emulated the prowess of his father in the hunt and the fight. The hunting-ground and the battle-field embraced every thing of real honor or value. So the son was educated to throw the tomahawk, shoot the arrow, and catch fish with the spear. He knew nothing of books, paper, writing, or history.

*Domestic Life.*—The Indian had neither cow, nor beast of burden. He regarded all labor as degrading, and fit only for women. His squaw, therefore, built his wigwam, cut his wood, and carried his burdens when he journeyed. While he hunted or fished, she cleared the land for his corn by burning down the trees, scratched the

\* The chief exceptions to this description of the Indians within the present limits of the United States were the *Mobilians*, who lived along the South Atlantic and the Gulf; the *Iroquois Confederacy*, or the Five Nations of Central New York; and the *Pueblos* or *Village Indians* of New Mexico and Arizona. (1.) The *Mobilians* worshiped the sun; built timber houses, sometimes clustered in towns and fortified with a ditch and wall; made pottery, and cultivated corn, hemp, and flax. (2.) The *Iroquois Confederacy* was styled the “Long House”, because these Indians dwelt in wigwams often 250 feet in length and 30 feet wide, and each holding 20 or 30 families. This league formed, in fact, a republic, with a chief magistrate, a cabinet, and a congress of the sachems of the different tribes. Fierce, blood-thirsty, and fond of conquest, the Iroquois would probably have subdued the continent if the white man had not come. Early travelers called them the Romans of the new world. (3.) The *Pueblo Indians* lived in huge stone or adobe buildings, a single one often containing several thousand people. They tilled the land, and dressed in cloth of their own manufacture.

ground with a crooked stick or dug it with a clam-shell, and dressed skins for his clothing. She cooked his food by dropping hot stones into a tight willow basket containing materials for soup. The leavings of her lord's feast sufficed for her, and the coldest place in the wigwam was her seat.



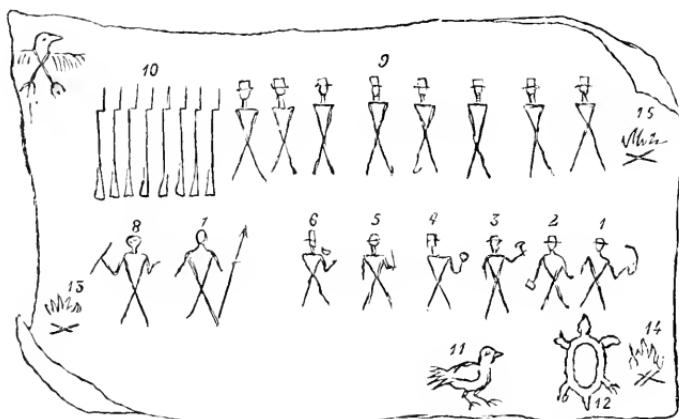
SCENE IN INDIAN LIFE.

*Disposition.*—In war, the Indian was brave and alert, but cruel and revengeful, preferring treachery and cunning to open battle. At home, he was lazy, improvident, and an inveterate gambler. He delighted in finery and trinkets, and decked his unclean person with paint and feathers. His grave and haughty demeanor repelled the stranger; but he was grateful for favors, and his wigwam always stood hospitably open to the poorest and meanest of his tribe.

*Endurance.*—He could endure great fatigue, and in

his expeditions often lay without shelter in the severest weather. It was his glory to bear the most horrible tortures without a sign of suffering.

*Religion.*—If he had any ideas of a Supreme Being, they were vague and degraded. His dream of a Heaven was of happy hunting-grounds or of gay feasts, where his dog should join in the dance. He worshiped no idols, but peopled all nature with spirits, which dwelt not only in birds, beasts, and reptiles, but also in lakes, rivers, and



SPECIMEN OF INDIAN HIEROGLYPHICS.\*

water-falls. As he believed that these had power to help or harm men, he lived in constant fear of offending them. He apologized, therefore, to the animals he killed, and made solemn promises to fishes that their bones should be respected. He placed great stress on dreams, and his camp swarmed with sorcerers and fortune-tellers.

**The Indian of the Present.**—Such was the Indian two hundred years ago, and such he is to-day. He opposes

\* This cut represents a species of picture-writing occasionally used by the Indians. Some Indian guides wished to inform their comrades that a company of fourteen whites and two Indians had spent the night at that point. Nos. 9, 10 indicate the white soldiers and their arms; No. 1 is the captain, with a sword; No. 2 the secre-

the encroachments of the settler, and the building of railroads. But he can not stop the tide of immigration. Unless he can be induced to give up his roving habits



LANDING OF NORTHMEN.

and cultivate the soil, he is doomed to destruction. It is to be earnestly hoped that the red man may yet be Christianized, and taught the arts of industry and peace.

**The Northmen** (inhabitants of Norway and Sweden) claim to have been the discoverers of America. According to their traditions, this continent was first seen about the year 1000, by one Biorne (be ern'), who had been

tary, with the book; No. 3 the geologist, with a hammer; Nos. 7, 8 are the guides, without hats; Nos. 11, 12 show what they ate in camp; Nos. 13, 14, 15 indicate how many fires they made.

driven to sea by a tempest. Afterward, other adventurers made successful voyages, established settlements, and bartered with the natives. Snor'ri, son of one of these settlers, is said to have been the first child born of European parents upon our shore.\* The Northmen claim to have explored the coast as far south as Florida. How much credit is to be given to these traditions is uncertain. Many historians reject them, while others still think there are traces of the Northmen remaining, such as the old tower at Newport, R. I., and the singular inscriptions on the rock at Dighton, Mass. Admitting, however, the claims of the Northmen, the fact is barren of all results. No permanent settlements were made, the route hither was lost and even the existence of the continent was forgotten.

The true history of this country begins with its discovery by Columbus in 1492. It naturally divides itself into six great epochs.

**First Epoch.**—*Early Discoveries and Settlements.*—This epoch extends from the discovery of America in 1492, to the settlement at Jamestown, Va., in 1607. During this period, various European nations were exploring the continent and making widely scattered settlements.

**Second Epoch.**—*Development of the Colonies.*—This epoch extends from the settlement at Jamestown, Va., in 1607, to the breaking out of the Revolutionary War in 1775. During this period, the scattered settlements grew into thirteen flourishing colonies, subject to Great Britain.

**Third Epoch.**—*Revolutionary War.*—This epoch extends from the breaking out of the Revolutionary War

\* Snorri was the founder of an illustrious family. One of his descendants is said to have been Albert Thorwaldsen, the great Danish sculptor of the present century. The beautiful photographs of Thor'waldsen's "Day", "Night", and "The Seasons", which hang in so many American parlors, thus acquire a new interest by being linked with the pioneer boy born on New England shores so many centuries ago.

in 1775, to the adoption of the Constitution in 1787. During this period, the colonies threw off the government of England and established their independence.

**Fourth Epoch.**—*Development of the States.*—This epoch extends from the adoption of the Constitution in 1787, to the breaking out of the Civil War in 1861. During this period, the States increased in number from thirteen to thirty-four, and grew in population and wealth until the United States became the most prosperous nation in the world.

**Fifth Epoch.**—*The Civil War.*—This epoch extends from the breaking out of the Civil War in 1861, to the surrender of Lee's army in 1865. During this period, a gigantic strife was carried on between the Northern and the Southern States, the former struggling for the perpetuation of the Union, and the latter for its division.

**Sixth Epoch.**—*Reconstruction and Passing Events.*—This epoch extends from the close of the Civil War in 1865, to the present time. During this period, the seceding States have been restored to their rights in the Union, peace has been fully established, and many interesting events have occurred.

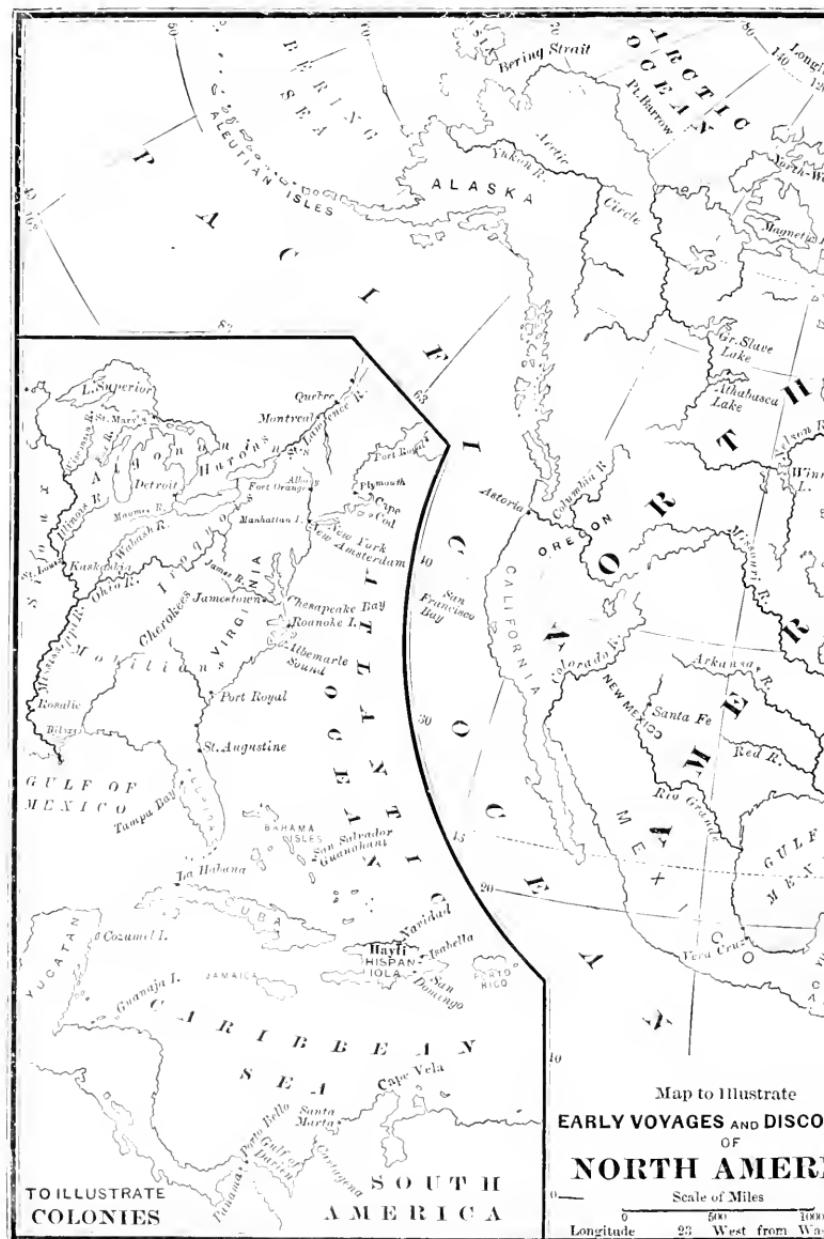
#### REFERENCES FOR READING.

*Beamish's Discovery of America by the Northmen.*—*Bradford's American Antiquities.*—*Baldwin's Ancient America.*—*Squier and Davis' American Antiquities, and Discoveries in the West.*—*Sinding's History of Scandinavia.*—*Cattin's North American Indians.*—*Thatcher's Indian Biography.*—*Stone's Life and Times of Red Jacket, and Life of Brandt.*—*Cooper's Leather Stocking Tales.*—*Morgan's League of the Iroquois.*—*Scholecraft's Memoirs of Residence Among the Indians, and other works by the same author.*—*Foster's Prehistoric Races of the United States of America.*—*Bancroft's Native Races.*—*Matthew's Behemoth, a Legend of the Mound Builders (Fiction).*—*Lowell's Chippewa Legend (Poetry).*—*Whittier's Bridal of Pennacook (Poetry).*—*Jones' Mound Builders of Tennessee.*—*Goodrich's So-called Columbus.*—*Ancient Monuments in America, Harper's Magazine, vol. 21; The First Americans, The Pueblos, and Visit of the Vikings, vol. 65; also many excellent articles on American History, vols. 66 and 67.*—*The Old Mill at Newport, Scribner's Monthly, vol. 17.*—*The Beginning of a Nation, Century, vol. 25.*

## BLACKBOARD ANALYSIS.

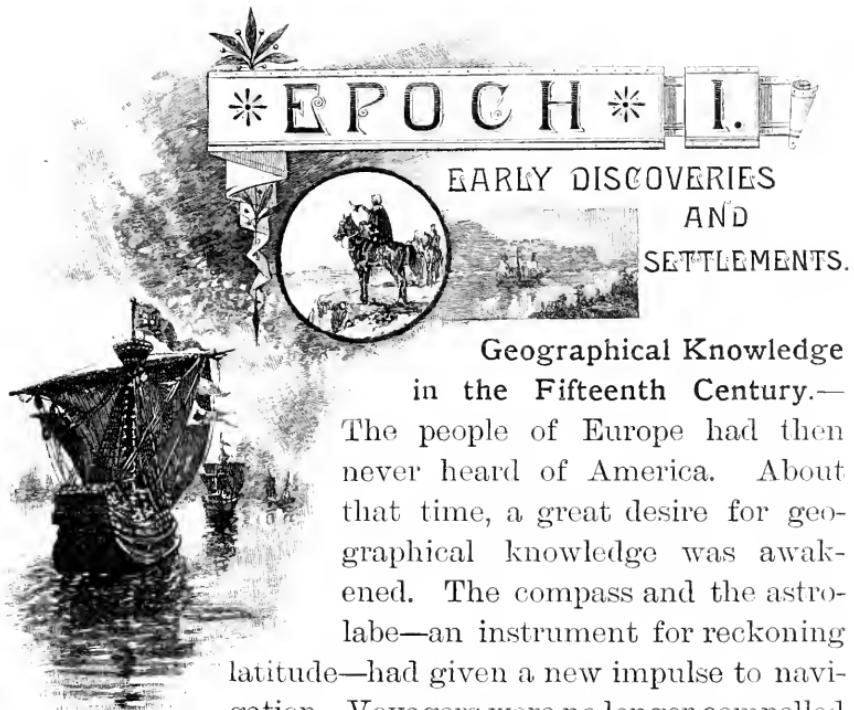
1. Who first settled America.
  1. Mounds.
  2. Earthworks.
  3. Peruvian and Mexican Ruins.
2. American Antiquities.
  1. Their Number.
  2. Indian Characteristics.
  3. The Indians of To-day.
    - a. *Arts and Inventions.*
    - b. *Progress and Education.*
    - c. *Domestic Life.*
    - d. *Disposition.*
    - e. *Endurance.*
    - f. *Religion.*
3. The Mound Builders.
4. The Indians.
5. The Northmen.
  1. Who were they?
  2. Story of Bjorni.
  3. Who was Snorri?
  4. Traces of Northmen.
  5. The Results.
6. Natural Divisions of United States History.
  1. First Epoch.
  2. Second Epoch.
  3. Third Epoch.
  4. Fourth Epoch.
  5. Fifth Epoch.
  6. Sixth Epoch.











**Geographical Knowledge in the Fifteenth Century.**—The people of Europe had then never heard of America. About that time, a great desire for geographical knowledge was awakened. The compass and the astrolabe—an instrument for reckoning latitude—had given a new impulse to navigation. Voyagers were no longer compelled to creep along the shore, but began to strike out boldly into the open sea. The art of printing had just come into use, and books of travel were eagerly read. Marco Polo

**Questions on the Geography of the First Epoch.**—In the accompanying map there are no divisions of the continent, as none existed at that time. When they are called for in the following questions, the object is to test the pupil's knowledge.

Locate the West Indies. San Salvador, [now called Guanahani (gwah nah hah ne), though many assert a neighboring island to be the true San Salvador]. Cuba. Hispaniola or Hayti (ha ti). Cape Breton. Roanoke Island. Manhattan Island.

Describe the Orinoco River. Mississippi River. St. Lawrence River. James River. Ohio River. Colorado River. Columbia River.

Where is Labrador? Central America? Florida? Mexico? New Mexico? California? Oregon? Peru?

Locate St. Augustine. Santa Fé (sahn tah fa). New York. Montreal. Quebec. Albany. Jamestown. Port Royal. Isthmus of Darien. Cape Henry. Cape Charles. Cape Cod. Chesapeake Bay. Hudson Bay.

and other adventurers returning from the East told wonderful stories of the wealth of Asiatic cities.

Genoa, Florence, and Venice, commanding the commerce of the Mediterranean, had become enriched by trade with the East. The costly shawls, spices, and silks of Persia and India were borne by caravans to the Red Sea, thence on camels across the desert to the Nile, and lastly by ship over the Mediterranean to Europe.

The great problem of the age was how to reach the East Indies by sea, and thus give a cheaper route to these rich products.



COLUMBUS.

**Columbus\*** conceived that by sailing west he could reach the East Indies. He believed the earth to be round, which was then a novel idea. He, however, thought it much smaller than it really is, and that Asia extends much farther round the world to the east than it does. Hence, he argued that by going a few hundred leagues west, he would

\* Christopher Columbus was born in Genoa, Italy, about 1435. He was trained for the sea from his childhood. Being the eldest of four children, and his father a poor wool-comber, much care devolved upon him. It is said that at thirty his hair was white from trouble and anxiety. His kind and loving disposition is proved by the fact that in his poorest days he saved part of his pittance to educate his young brothers and support his aged father.

Columbus was determined, shrewd, and intensely religious. He believed himself to be divinely called to "carry the true faith into the uttermost parts of the earth". Inspired by this thought, no discouragement or contumely could drive him to despair. It was eighteen years from the conception to the accomplishment of his plan. During all this time his life was a marvel of patience, and of brave devotion to his one purpose. His sorrows were many; his triumph was brief. Evil men maligned him to Ferdinand and Isabella. Disregarding their promise that he should be governor-general over all the lands he might discover, the king and queen sent out an-

touch the coast of Eastern Asia.\* He was determined to try this new route, but was too poor to pay for the necessary ships, men, and provisions.

*Columbus at the Court of Portugal.*—He accordingly laid his plan before King John of Portugal, who, being pleased with the idea, referred it to the geographers of his court. They pronounced it a visionary scheme. With a lurking feeling, however, that there might be truth in it, the king had the meanness to dispatch a vessel secretly to test the matter. The pilot had the charts of Columbus, but lacked his courage. After sailing westward from Cape Verde Islands for a few days, and seeing nothing but a wide waste of wildly tossing waves, he returned, ridiculing the idea.

*Columbus at the Court of Spain.*—Columbus, disheartened by this treachery, betook himself to Spain. During seven long years, he importuned King Ferdinand for a reply. All this while, he was regarded as a visionary fellow, and when he passed along the streets, even the children pointed to their foreheads and smiled. At last, the learned council declared the plan too foolish for further attention.† Turning away sadly, Columbus determined to go to France.

other governor, and by his order Columbus was returned home in chains! No wonder that the whole nation was shocked at such an indignity to such a man. It is sad to know that although Ferdinand and Isabella endeavored to soothe his wounded spirit by many attentions, they never restored to him his lawful rights. From fluent promises they passed at last to total neglect, and Columbus died a grieved and disappointed old man. At his request, his chains were buried with him, a touching memorial of Spanish ingratitude.

\* Several facts served to strengthen the faith of Columbus in the correctness of his theory. The Azores and the Madeira, Canary, and Cape Verde islands being the most westerly lands then known, were the outposts of geographical knowledge. There had been washed on their shores by westerly winds, pieces of wood curiously carved, trees, and seeds of unknown species, and especially the bodies of two men of strange color and visage.

† “It is absurd,” said those wise men. “Who is so foolish as to believe that there are people on the other side of the world, walking with their heels upward, and their heads hanging down? And then, how can a ship get there? The torrid zone, through which they must pass, is a region of fire, where the very waves boil. And

*Columbus Successful.*—His friends at the Spanish court, at this juncture, laid the matter before Queen Isabella, and she was finally won to his cause. The king remained indifferent and pleaded the want of funds. The queen in her earnestness exclaimed: “I pledge my jewels to raise the money.” But her sacrifice was not required. St. Angel, treasurer of Aragon, advanced most of the money, and the friends of Columbus the remainder. Columbus had succeeded at last, after eighteen years of waiting.

*Columbus' Equipment.*—Though armed with the king's authority, Columbus obtained vessels and sailors with the greatest difficulty. The boldest seamen shrank from such a desperate undertaking. At last, three small vessels were manned; the Pinta (pīn'tä), Santa Maria (mä rī'ä), and Nina (nīn'yä). They sailed from Palos, Spain, Aug. 3, 1492.

*Incidents of the Voyage.*—When the ships struck out boldly westward on the untried sea, and the sailors saw the last trace of land fade from their sight, many, even of the bravest, burst into tears. As they proceeded, their hearts were wrung by superstitious fears. To their dismay, the compass no longer pointed directly north, and they believed that they were coming into a region where the very laws of nature were changed. They came into the track of the trade-wind, which wafted them steadily westward. This, they were sure, was carrying them to destruction, for how could they ever return against it? Signs of land, such as flocks of birds and fresh, green plants, were often seen, and the clouds near the horizon assumed the look of land, but they disappeared, and only the broad ocean spread out before them as they advanced. The sailors, so often deceived, lost heart, and in-

even if a ship could perchance get around there safely, how could it ever get back? Can a ship sail up hill?” All of which sounds very strange to us now, when hundreds of travelers make every year the entire circuit of the globe.

sisted upon returning home. Columbus, with wonderful tact and patience, explained all these appearances. But the more he argued, the louder became their murmurs. At last, they secretly determined to throw him overboard. Although he knew their feelings, he did not waver, but declared that he would proceed till the enterprise was accomplished.

Soon, signs of land silenced their murmurs. A staff artificially carved, and a branch of thorn with berries floated near. All was now eager expectation. In the evening, Columbus beheld a light rising and falling in the distance, as of a torch borne by one walking. Later at night, the joyful cry of "Land!" rang out from the Pinta. In the morning, the shore, green with tropical verdure, lay smiling before them.

*The Landing.*—Columbus, dressed in a splendid military suit of scarlet embroidered with gold, and followed by a retinue of his officers and men bearing banners, stepped upon the new world, Friday, Oct. 12, 1492. He threw himself upon his knees, kissed the earth, and with tears of joy gave thanks to God. He then formally planted the cross and took possession of the country in the name of Ferdinand and Isabella.

The wondering natives, who crowded the shore, gazed on the spectacle with awe. They supposed the ships to be huge white-winged birds, and the Spaniards to have come from heaven. How sadly and how soon these simple people were undeceived!

*Further Discoveries.*—Columbus found the land to be an island, which he named St. Salvador. He supposed that he had reached the islands lying off the eastern coast of India, and he therefore called the dark-hued natives, Indians. Careful inquiries were also made concerning the rich products of the East, such as spices, precious stones, and especially gold. But the simple people had only a few golden ornaments. These they readily bartered for hawks' bells.

Cuba, Hayti, and other islands were discovered and visited in the vain hope of securing Oriental treasures. Columbus even sent a deputation into the interior of Cuba, to a famous chief, supposing him to be the great king of Tartary !

At last, urged by his crew, he relinquished the search and turned his vessels homeward.

*His Reception*, on his return, was flattering in the extreme. The whole nation took a holiday. His appearance was hailed with shouts and the ringing of bells. The king and queen were dazzled by their new and sudden acquisition. As Columbus told them of the beautiful land he had discovered, its brilliant birds, its tropical forests, its delicious climate, and above all, its natives waiting to be converted to the Christian faith, they sunk upon their knees, and gave God thanks for such a signal triumph.



TOMB OF COLUMBUS AT HAVANA.\*

*Subsequent Voyages*.—Columbus afterward made three voyages. In 1498, he discovered the mainland, near the Orinoco River. He never, however, lost the delusion that it was the eastern coast of Asia, and died ignorant of the grandeur of his discovery.

**How the Continent was named.**—Americus Vesputius (á měr'í eús věs pü'shí ús), a friend of Columbus, accompanied a subsequent expedition to

the new world. A German named Waldsee-Muller published

\* The body of Columbus was buried at Valladolid. It was thence transported, in 1513, to the Carthusian Monastery of Seville, where a monument was erected by Ferdinand and Isabella, with the inscription—"To Castile and Leon, Colon gave a new world." In 1536, his body was removed to the city of Saint Domingo, Hayti. But, in

an interesting account of his adventures, in which he suggested that the country should be called America. This work, being the first description of the new world, was very popular, and the name was soon adopted by geographers.

**John Cab'ot**, a navigator of Bristol, England, by studying his charts and globes, decided that since the degrees of longitude diminish in length as they approach the pole, the shortest route to India must be by sailing north-west instead of west, as Columbus had done. He easily obtained authority from King Henry VII., to make the attempt. After a prosperous voyage, he came in sight of the sterile region of Labrador,\* and sailed along the coast for many leagues. This was in 1497, FOURTEEN MONTHS BEFORE COLUMBUS DISCOVERED THE CONTINENT. Cabot supposed that he had reached the territory of the "Great Cham", king of Tartary. Nevertheless, he landed, planted a banner, and took possession in the name of the king of England. On his return home, he was received with much honor, was dressed in silk, and styled the "Great Admiral". The booty which he brought back consisted of only two turkeys and three savages.

**Sebastian Cabot** continued his father's discoveries. During the same summer in which Columbus reached the shore of South America, Sebastian, then a youth of only twenty-one, discovered Newfoundland and coasted as far south as

1796, the remains, as was supposed, were taken to Havana with imposing ceremonies. The tomb in the Cathedral is inscribed in Spanish :

"O, rest thou, image of the great Colon,  
Thousand centuries remain, guarded in the urn,  
And in the remembrance of our nation."

In 1877, however, while excavating near the Cathedral in Saint Domingo, the vault was opened and a leaden coffin found containing human bones, and inscribed in Spanish—"Illustrious and renowned man, Christopher Columbus". It is therefore thought that the body carried to Havana was not that of the great admiral.

\* Very little is definitely known of John Cabot, and even the time and place of his birth and death are matters of conjecture. Sebastian went with his father on the first voyage, and some give him the credit of all that is attributed above to John Cabot.

Chesapeake Bay. As he found neither the way to India, nor gold, precious stones, and spices, his expedition was considered a failure. Yet, by his discoveries, the English acquired a title to a vast territory in the new world. Though he gave to England a continent, no one knows his burial-place.

We shall now follow the principal explorations made within the limits of the future United States, by the SPANISH, FRENCH, ENGLISH, and DUTCH. The Spanish explored mainly the southern portion of North America; the French, the northern; and the English, the middle portion along the coast.

### SPANISH EXPLORATIONS.

**Feeling in Spain.**—America, at this time, was to the Spaniard a land of vague, but magnificent promise, where the simple natives wore unconsciously the costliest gems, and the sands of the rivers sparkled with gold. Every returning ship brought fresh news to quicken the pulse of Spanish enthusiasm. Now, Cortez had taken Mexico, and reveled in the wealth of the Montezumas; now, Pizarro had conquered Peru, and captured the riches of the Incas; now, Magellan, sailing through the straits which bear his name, had crossed the Pacific, and his vessel returning home by the Cape of Good Hope, had circumnavigated the globe. Men of the highest rank and culture, warriors, adventurers, all flocked to the new world. Soon, Cuba, Hispaniola, Porto Rico, and Jamaica were settled, and ruled by Spanish governors. Among the Spanish explorers of the sixteenth century we notice the following:

**Ponce de Leon** (pōn'shā dā lā ōn') was a gallant soldier, but an old man, and in disgrace. He coveted the glory of conquest to restore his tarnished reputation, and, besides, he

had heard of a magical fountain in this fairy land, where one might bathe and be young again. Accordingly, he equipped an expedition, and sailed in search of this fabled treasure. On Easter Sunday (Pascua Florida, in Spanish), 1512,\* he came in sight of a land gay with spring flowers. In honor of the day, he called it Florida. He sailed along the coast, and landed here and there, but returned home at last, an old man still, having found neither youth nor glory.

**Balboa** crossed the Isthmus of Darien the next year, and from the summit of the Andes beheld a wide expanse of the Pacific Ocean. Wading into its waters with his naked sword in one hand, and the banner of Castile in the other, he solemnly declared that the ocean, and all the shores which it might touch, belonged to the crown of Spain forever.

**De Narvaez** (när'vä ēth) received a grant of Florida, and (1528) with 300 men attempted its conquest. Striking into the interior, they wandered about, lured on by the hope of finding gold. Wading through swamps, crossing deep rivers by swimming and by rafts, fighting the lurking Indians who incessantly harassed their path, and nearly perishing with hunger, they reached at last the Gulf of Mexico. Hastily constructing some crazy boats, they put to sea. After six weeks of peril and suffering, they were shipwrecked, and De Narvaez was lost. Eight years afterward, four persons—the only survivors of this ill-fated expedition—reached the Spanish settlements on the Pacific coast.

**Ferdinand de Soto**, undismayed by these failures, undertook anew the conquest of Florida. He set out with 600 choice men, amid the fluttering of banners, the flourish of

\* Eight years afterward, De Ayllon (da ile yon') made a kidnapping expedition to what is now South Carolina. Desiring to obtain laborers for the mines and plantations in Hayti, he invited some of the natives on board his vessels, and, when they were all below, suddenly closed the hatches and set sail. The speculation did not, however, turn out profitably. One vessel sunk with all on board, and many of his cap-

trumpets, and the gleaming of helmet and lance. For month after month, this procession of cavaliers, priests, soldiers, and Indian captives strolled through the wilderness, wherever they thought gold might be found. They traversed what is now Georgia, Alabama, and Mississippi. In the third year



BURIAL OF DE SOTO.

of their wanderings (1541), they emerged upon the bank of the Mississippi. After another year of fruitless explorations, De Soto died. At the dead of night, his followers sunk his body in the river, and the sullen waters buried his hopes and his ambition. "He had crossed a large part of the continent," says Bancroft, "and found nothing so remarkable as his burial-place." De Soto had been the soul of the company. When he died, the other adventurers were

tives, preferring starvation to slavery, died on the voyage. History tells us that in 1525, when De Ayllon went back with the intention of settling the country, the Indians practiced upon him the lesson of cruelty he had taught them. His men were lured into the interior. Their entertainers, falling upon them at night, slew the larger part, and De Ayllon was only too glad to escape with his life.

anxious only to get home in safety. They constructed boats and descended the river, little over half of this gallant array finally reaching the settlements in Mexico.

**Menendez** (mā nēn'dēth), wiser than his predecessors, on landing (1565), forthwith laid the foundations of a colony. In honor of the day, he named it St. Augustine. THIS IS THE OLDEST TOWN IN THE UNITED STATES.\*

**Explorations on the Pacific.**—*California*, in the sixteenth century, was a general name applied to all the region north-west of Mexico. It is said to have originated in an old Spanish romance very popular in the time of Cortez, in which appeared a queen whose magnificent country bore this name. The Mexicans told the Spaniards that most of their gold and precious stones came from a country far to the north-west. Cortez, therefore, turned his attention in that direction and sent out several expeditions to explore the Californias. All these adventurers returned empty-handed from the very region where, three centuries afterward, the world was startled by the finding of an El Dorado such as would have satisfied the wildest dreams of Cortez and his credulous followers.

*Cabrillo* (ka brēl'yo) made the first voyage along what is now the California coast (1542); he died in San Diego harbor, but his pilot went north past the present limits of Oregon.

*New Mexico* was explored and named by *Espejo* (ěs pā'ho) who (1582) founded Santa Fe, which is the second oldest town in the United States. This was seventeen years after the settlement of St. Augustine.

**Extent of the Spanish Possessions.**†—Spain, at the close of the sixteenth century, held possession not only of the

\* Many Spanish remains still exist. Among these is Fort Marion, once San Marco, which was founded in 1565 and finished in 1755. It is built of coquina—a curious stone composed of small shells.

† The conquests of the new world enriched Spain, which became the wealthiest

West Indies, but of Yucatan, Mexico, and Florida.\* The Spanish explorers had traversed a large portion of the present Southern States, and of the Pacific coast. All this vast territory they claimed by the rights of discovery and possession.

### FRENCH EXPLORATIONS.

The French were eager to share in the profits which Spain was acquiring in the new world. Within seven years after the discovery of the continent, the fisheries of Newfoundland were frequented by their mariners.†

*Verrazani* (zä'nä), a Florentine, was the first navigator sent by the French king to find the new way to the Indies. Sailing westward from Madeira (1524), he reached land near the present harbor of Wilmington. He supposed this had never been seen by Europeans, although we know that Cabot had discovered it nearly thirty years before. He coasted along the shores of Carolina and New Jersey, entered the harbors of New York and Newport, and returned with a glowing description of the lands he had found. He named the country New France.

*Cartier*‡ (kär te ä') ascended the River St. Lawrence (1535) to the Indian village of Hochelaga (hō shē lä'gä), the present site of Montreal. The town was pleasantly situated

and most powerful country in Europe. This made other nations all the more anxious to find the western passage to India. The routes by the Cape of Good Hope and by the Strait of Magellan were long and dangerous. To discover the shorter north-western route now became the great wish of all maritime nations, and has been anxiously sought down to the present time.

\* A writer of that time locates Quebec in Florida; indeed, the Spaniards applied the name, Florida, to all North America, as far as Canada and Newfoundland.

† Cape Breton was named by the fishermen in remembrance of their home in Brittany, France.

‡ The name, St. Lawrence, was that of the day on which Cartier entered the gulf.

at the foot of a lofty hill, which Cartier climbed. Stirred by the magnificent prospect, he named it Mont Real (mōng rā āl'), Regal Mountain.

**John Ribaut**\* (rē bō') led the first expedition (1562) under the auspices of Coligny (ko lēn yē').† The company landed at Port Royal, S. C. So captivated were they, that when volunteers were called for to hold the country for France, so many came forward "with such a good will and joly corage", wrote Ribaut, "as we had much to do to stay their importunitie". They erected a fort, which they named Carolina in honor of Charles IX., King of France. The fleet departed, and this little band of thirty were left alone on the continent. From the North Pole to Mexico, they were the only civilized men. Food became scarce. They tired of the eternal solitude of the wilderness, and finally built a rude ship and put to sea. Here a storm shattered their vessel. Famine overtook them, and, in their extremity, they killed and ate one of their number. A vessel at last hove in sight, and took them on board, only to carry them captives to England.‡ Thus perished the colony, but the name still survives.

**Laudonnière** (lō dō'nē ēr), two years after, built a fort, also called Carolina, on the St. John's River.§ Soon the colonists

\* Jean Ribaut, as his name is given in Coligny's MS. and in his own journal.

† Coligny was an admiral of France, and a leader of the Huguenots (hu'ge nōt), as the Protestants were then called. He had conceived a plan for founding an empire in America. This would furnish an asylum for his Huguenot friends, and at the same time advance the glory of the French. Thus religion and patriotism combined to induce him to send out colonists to the new world.

‡ The most feeble were landed in France. It is said that Queen Elizabeth, while conversing with those sent to England, first thought of colonizing the new world.

§ The history of this colony records an amusing story concerning the long life of the natives. A party visited a chief in the midst of the wilderness, who gravely assured them that he was the father of five generations, and had lived 250 years. Opposite him, in the same hut, sat his father, a mere skeleton, whose "age was so great that the good man had lost his sight and could speak one onely word but with exceeding great paine". The credulous Frenchmen gazed with awe on this wonderful pair and congratulated themselves on having come to such a land,—where certainly there would be no need of Ponce de Leon's fabled fountain.

were reduced to the verge of starvation.\* They were on the point of leaving, when they were reinforced by Ribaut. The French now seemed fairly fixed on the coast of Florida. The Spaniards, however, claimed the country. Menendez, about this time, had made a settlement in St. Augustine. Leading an expedition northward through the wilderness, in the midst of a fearful tempest, he attacked Fort Carolina and massacred almost the entire population.

**Champlain** (shám plán'), at the beginning of the seventeenth century, crossed the Atlantic in two pigmy barks—one of twelve, the other of fifteen tons—and ascended the St. Lawrence on an exploring tour. At Hochelaga all was changed. The Indian town had vanished, and not a trace remained of the savage population which Cartier saw there seventy years before.† Champlain was captivated by the charms of the new world, and longed to plant a French empire and the Catholic faith amid its savage wilds.

**De Monts** (mōn) received a grant of all the territory between the fortieth and forty-sixth parallels of latitude.‡ This tract was termed Acadia, a name afterward confined to New Brunswick and the adjacent islands, and now to Nova Scotia. With Champlain, he founded Port Royal, N. S., in 1605. THIS WAS THE FIRST PERMANENT FRENCH SETTLEMENT IN AMERICA. It was three years before a cabin was built in Canada, and two before the James River was discovered.

**Champlain returned** in 1608, and established a trading

\* Their sufferings were horrible. Weak and emaciated, they fed themselves with roots, sorrel, pounded fish-bones, and even roasted snakes. "Oftentimes," says Laudonnière, "our poor soldiers were constrained to give away the very shirts from their backs to get one fish. If at any time they shewed unto the savages the excessive price which they tooke, these villaines woul'd answer them roughly: 'If thou make so great account of thy merchandise, eat it, and we will eat our fish'; then fell they out a laughing, and mocked us with open throat."

† This fact illustrates the frequent and rapid changes which took place among the aboriginal tribes.

‡ Between the sites of Philadelphia and Montreal.

post at Quebec. THIS WAS THE FIRST PERMANENT FRENCH SETTLEMENT IN CANADA. The next summer, in his eager desire to explore the country, he joined a war party of the Hurons against the Iroquois, or Five Nations of Central New York.\* On this journey he discovered the beautiful lake that bears his name. Amid discouragements which would have overwhelmed a less determined spirit, Champlain firmly established the authority of France on the banks of the St. Lawrence. "The Father of New France", as he has been termed, reposes in the soil he won to civilization.

**The Jesuit Missionaries.**—The explorers of the Mississippi valley were mostly Jesuit priests. The French names which they gave, still linger throughout that region. Their hope was to convert the Indians to the Christian faith. They pushed their way through the forest with unflagging energy. They crept along the northern shore of Lake Ontario. They traversed the Great Lakes. In 1668, they founded the mission of St. Mary, the oldest European settlement in Michigan. Many of them were murdered by the savages; some were scalped; some were burned in rosin-fire; some scalded with boiling water. Yet as soon as one fell out of the ranks, another sprung forward to fill the post. We shall name but two of these patient, indefatigable pioneers of New France.

*Father Marquette* (mar'ket'), hearing from some wandering Indians of a great river which they termed the "Father of Waters", determined to visit it. He floated in a birch-bark canoe down the Wisconsin to the Mississippi (1673), and thence to the mouth of the Arkansas (är'kăñ săw).†

\* The interference of Champlain with the Indians secured the inveterate hostility of the Iroquois. Not long after, they seized the missionaries who came among them, tortured and put them to death. This cut off any further explorations toward the south. The French, therefore, turned their attention toward the west. The Iroquois afterward made an alliance with the English (see p. 77).

† Soon after, while on another expedition, he went ashore for the purpose of quiet

*La Salle* was educated as a Jesuit, but had established a trading-post at the outlet of Lake Ontario. He undertook various expeditions full of romantic adventure. Inflamed with a desire to find the mouth of the Mississippi, he made his way (1682) to the Gulf of Mexico. He named the country Louisiana, in honor of Louis XIV., King of France.

**Results of French Enterprise.**—Before the close of the seventeenth century, the French had explored the Great Lakes, the Fox, Maumee, Wabash, Wisconsin, and Illinois rivers, and the Mississippi from the Falls of St. Anthony to the Gulf. They had traversed a region including what is now known as Louisiana, Arkansas, Mississippi, Iowa, Minnesota, Nebraska, Kansas, the Canadas, and Acadia.\* In 1688, it had a population of 11,000.

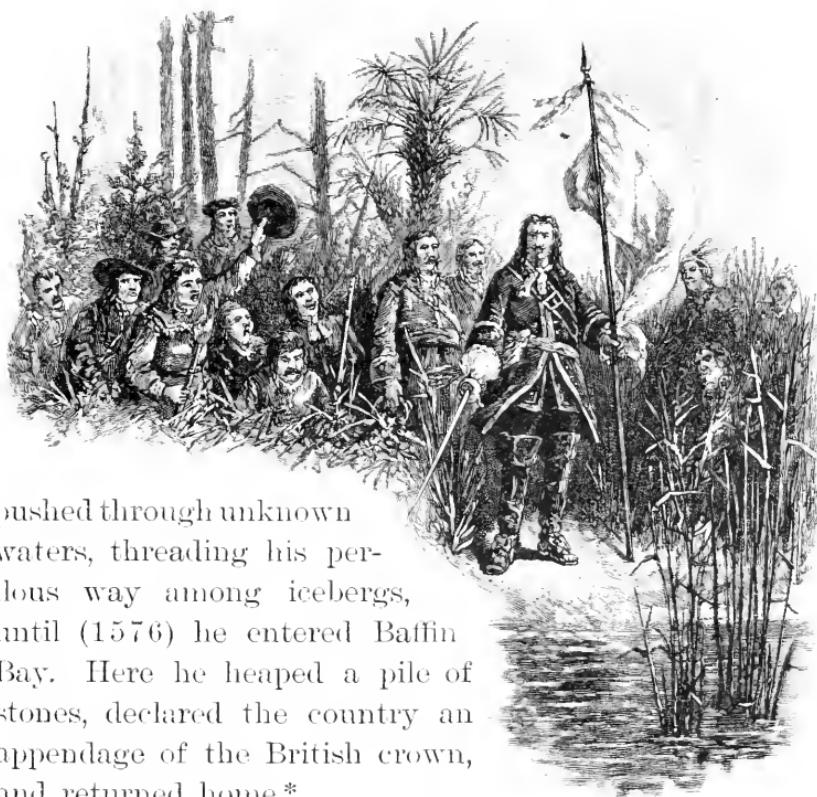
### ENGLISH EXPLORATIONS.

We have seen how the Cabots, sailing under an English flag, discovered the American continent, exploring its coast from Labrador to Albemarle Sound. Though the English claimed the northern part of the continent by right of this discovery, yet during the sixteenth century they paid little attention to it. At the close of that period, however, maritime enterprise was awakened, and British sailors cruised on every sea. Like the other navigators of the day, they were eager to discover the western passage to Asia.

**Frobisher** (frōb'ish er) made the first of these attempts to go north of America to Asia—Cabot's plan repeated. He

devotion. After waiting long for his return, his men, seeking him, found that he had died while at prayer. He was buried near the mouth of the Marquette. Years after, when the tempest raged, and the Indian was tossing on the angry waves, he would seek to still the storm by invoking the aid of the pious Marquette.

\* As we shall see hereafter, the English at this time clung to a narrow strip along the Atlantic coast.



pushed through unknown waters, threading his perilous way among icebergs, until (1576) he entered Baffin Bay. Here he heaped a pile of stones, declared the country an appendage of the British crown, and returned home.\*

**Sir Francis Drake** was a famous sailor. In one of his expeditions on the Isthmus of Panama, he climbed to the top of a lofty tree, whence he saw the Pacific Ocean. Looking out on its broad expanse, he resolved to "sail an English ship on those seas". Returning to England, he equipped a squadron. He sailed through the Strait of Magellan, coasting along the Pacific shore to the southern part of Oregon. Having refitted his ship, probably

LA SALLE AT THE MOUTH OF THE MISSISSIPPI.

\* One of the sailors brought back a stone which was thought to contain gold. A fleet of fifteen vessels was forthwith equipped for this new El Dorado. The northwest passage to Cathay was forgotten. After innumerable perils incident to Arctic regions, the ships were loaded with the precious ore and returned. Unfortunately, history neglects to tell us what became of the cargo!

in Bodéga Bay (1579), he sailed westward, and returned home by way of the Cape of Good Hope.\*

**Sir Humphrey Gilbert** was not a sailor, but he had studied the accounts of American discoveries and concluded that, instead of random expeditions after gold and spices, companies should be sent out to form permanent settlements. His attempts to colonize the new world, however, ended fatally. Sailing home in a bark of only ten-tons burden, in the midst of a fearful storm the light of his little vessel suddenly disappeared. Neither ship nor crew was ever seen again.

**Sir Walter Raleigh,†** a half-brother of Gilbert, adopted his views of American colonization. Being a great favorite with Queen Elizabeth, he easily obtained from her a patent of an extensive territory, which was named Virginia in honor of Elizabeth, the Virgin Queen.

*Raleigh's first attempt to plant a colony* was on Roanoke Island. The settlers made no endeavor to cultivate the soil, but spent their time in hunting for gold and pearls.‡ At

\* He was thus the first Englishman who explored the Pacific coast, and the second European who circumnavigated the globe.

† Raleigh was not only a man of dauntless courage, but he also added to a handsome person much learning and many accomplishments. Meeting Queen Elizabeth one day while she was walking, he spread his mantle over a wet place in her path. She was so pleased with his gallantry that she admitted him to court, and he continued a favorite during her entire life-time. Conversing with her once upon the singular properties of tobacco, the new Indian weed which was coming into use, he assured her that he could tell the exact weight of smoke in any quantity consumed. The incredulous queen dared him to a wager. Accepting it, Raleigh weighed his tobacco, smoked it, and then carefully weighing the ashes, stated the difference. Paying the bet, Elizabeth remarked that she "had before heard of turning gold into smoke, but he was the first who had turned smoke into gold". This incident illustrates the friendly relations between Raleigh and the queen. After her death, he was accused by James I. of treason, was imprisoned for many years, and finally, executed. On the scaffold, he asked for the ax, and feeling the edge, observed, with a smile, "This is a sharp medicine, but a sound cure for all diseases." Then composedly laying his head on the block, and moving his lips as in prayer, he gave the fatal signal.

‡ They were told that the Roanoke River had its head-waters in golden rocks, by

last, they were nearly starved, when Drake, happening to stop there on one of his exploring tours, took pity on them and carried them home.

They had lived long enough in America to learn the use of tobacco and the potato. These they introduced into England. The custom of "drinking tobacco", as it was called, soon became the fashion.\*

*Raleigh's Second Attempt.*—Raleigh, undiscouraged by this failure, still clung to his colonizing scheme. The next time, he sent out families, instead of single men. John White was appointed governor of the City of Raleigh, which they were to found on Chesapeake Bay. A granddaughter of Gov. White, born soon after they reached Roanoke Island, was the first English child born in America. The governor, on returning to England to secure supplies, found the public attention absorbed by the threatened attack of the Spanish Armada. It was three years before he was able to come back. Meanwhile, his family, and the colony he had left alone in the wilderness, had perished. How, we do not know. The imagination can only picture what history has failed to record.

Raleigh had now spent about \$200,000, a great sum for that day, on this American colony; and, disheartened, transferred his patent to other parties (1589).

**Trading Voyages.**—Fortunately for American interests, trading ventures were more profitable than colonizing ones. English vessels frequented the Banks of Newfoundland, and, probably, occasionally visited Virginia. Gos'nold,† a master

the Pacific Ocean, and that the walls of a great city near its fountain were thickly studded with pearls.

\* An amusing story is told of Raleigh while he was learning to smoke. On entering his study one morning to bring his master a cup of ale, his servant saw a cloud of smoke issuing from Sir Walter's mouth. Frantically dashing the liquor in his face, he rushed down stairs imploring help, lest his master should be burned to ashes!

† The English ships were at that time accustomed to steer southward along the coast of Spain, Portugal, and Africa, as far as the Canary Islands; then they followed

of a small bark, discovered (1602) and named Cape Cod and some of the islands about Martha's Vineyard. Loading his vessel with sassafras-root, then highly esteemed as a medicine, he returned home to publish the most favorable reports of the region he had visited. Some British merchants accordingly sent out the next year a couple of vessels under Captain Pring. He discovered several harbors in Maine, and brought back his ships loaded with furs and sassafras.

As the result of these various explorations, many felt an earnest desire to colonize the new world. James I. accordingly granted the vast territory of Virginia, as it was called, to two companies, the London and the Plymouth.

**The London Company**, whose principal men resided at London, had the tract between the thirty-fourth and thirty-eighth degrees of latitude. This was called South Virginia. They sent out a colony in 1607 under Captain Newport. He made at Jamestown\* **THE FIRST PERMANENT ENGLISH SETTLEMENT IN THE UNITED STATES.**

**The Plymouth Company**, whose principal men resided at Plymouth, had the tract between the forty-first and forty-fifth degrees of latitude. This was called North Virginia.

**The Charter** granted to these companies was the first under which English colonies were planted in the United States. It is therefore worthy of careful study. It contained no idea of self-government. The people were not to have the election of an officer. The king was to appoint a council,

the track of Columbus to the West India Islands, and thence past the coast of Florida northward to the point they wished to reach. Navigators knew this was a round-about way, but they were afraid to try the northern route straight across the Atlantic. Gosnold made the voyage *directly* from England to Massachusetts, thus shortening the route 3,000 miles. This gave a great impulse to colonization, since it was in effect bringing America 3,000 miles nearer England.

\* The river was called James, and the town Jamestown, in honor of the King of England. The headlands received the names of Cape Henry and Cape Charles from the king's sons, and the deep water for anchorage "which put the emigrants in good comfort", gave the name Point Comfort.

to reside in London and have general control of all the colonies; and also a council, to reside in each colony and have control of its local affairs. The Church of England was the established religion. Moreover, for five years, all the proceeds of the colonial industry and commerce were to be applied to a common fund, no person being allowed the fruit of his individual labor.

### DUTCH EXPLORATIONS.

During all this time, the Dutch manifested no interest in the new world. In the beginning of the seventeenth century, however, Captain Henry Hudson, an English navigator in the Dutch service, entered the harbor of New York. Hoping to reach the Pacific Ocean, he afterward ascended the noble river which bears his name (1609).\*

On this discovery, the Dutch based their claim to the region extending from the Delaware River to Cape Cod. They gave to it the name of New Netherland.

### EXTENT OF THESE EXPLORATIONS.

1. The Spanish confined their explorations to the West Indies and the adjacent mainland, and in the United States made settlements only in Florida and New Mexico.

2. The French claimed the whole of New France and made their first settlements in Acadia and Canada.

3. The English explored the Atlantic coast at various points, and claimed this vast territory, which they termed Virginia, having made their first settlement at Jamestown.†

\* It is now believed that Verrazani (p. 30) was the true discoverer of this stream, over three quarters of a century before.

† After this time, the English is the only nation that directly influences the his-

4. The Dutch laid claim to New Netherland, but made no settlement till 1613.

**The Rival Claims.**—These four claims overlapped † one another and necessarily produced much confusion. While the first few settlements were separated by hundreds of miles of savage forests, this was of little account. But as the settlements increased, the rival claims became a source of constant strife and were decided principally by the sword.

**Two Centuries of Exploration and One of Settlement.**—These explorations had lasted during the fifteenth and sixteenth centuries, and at the close of the sixteenth century, the only permanent settlements were those of the Spaniards at St. Augustine and Santa Fé. In the beginning of the seventeenth century, permanent settlements multiplied. They were made, as we have seen, by

The FRENCH at Port Royal, N. S., in 1605;

The ENGLISH at Jamestown, in 1607;

The FRENCH at Quebec, in 1608;

The DUTCH at New York, in 1613;‡

The ENGLISH at Plymouth, in 1620.

tory of the United States. The country was settled mainly by emigrants from Great Britain, and in the next epoch all the colonies became dependencies of that empire.

† It is noticeable that the English grants extended westward to the Pacific Ocean; the French, southward from the St. Lawrence to the Gulf; and the Spanish, northward to the Arctic Ocean. None of the European nations had any idea of the immense territory it was donating.

‡ Here lay the shaggy continent from Florida to the Pole, outstretched in savage slumber along the sea. On the bank of the James River was a nest of woe-begone Englishmen, a handful of fur-traders at the mouth of the Hudson, and a few shivering Frenchmen among the snow-drifts of Acadia; while, deep within the wild monotony of desolation, on the icy verge of the great northern river, Champlain upheld the banner of France over the rock of Quebec. These were the advance guard of civilization, the messengers of promise to a desert continent. Yet, not content with inevitable woes, they were rent by petty jealousies and miserable quarrels, while each little fragment of rival nationalities, just able to keep up its own wretched existence on a few square miles, begrimed to all the rest the smallest share in a domain which all the nations of Europe could not have sufficed to fill. *Parkman.*

## SEA-LIFE IN THE FIFTEENTH AND SIXTEENTH CENTURIES.

At the opening of modern history, the known world comprised only Europe, south-western Asia, and a strip of northern Africa. The southernmost point in Africa then discovered was Cape Non (nun), so called because it was considered the limit of navigation. The most absurd ideas prevailed with regard to the regions beyond. The water at the equator was thought to be boiling hot; the tropic sun, it was said, would permanently blacken the skin of any white man who ventured farther south; while the unknown seas were supposed to be peopled by terrible sea-monsters.

To the Portuguese belongs the glory of having dissipated many of these errors, and opened the way to the discovery of new lands. In the fifteenth century, they were the most enlightened and enterprising people in Europe. Prince Henry devoted himself to the study of astronomy, founded an observatory and a naval college, collected all existing information concerning the earth's surface, and prepared new and more accurate charts for navigators. His father, John I., and his grand-nephew, John II., encouraged maritime explorations. Under such auspices, the Portuguese sailors discovered the Azores\* and Cape Verde Islands, crossed the dreaded equator, and finally descried the southern extremity of Africa. Diaz, the discoverer, well named it the Stormy Cape; but the king, believing the long-desired route to India was now found, rechristened it the Cape of Good Hope. His hope was realized fifteen years later, when Vasco da Gama rounded the cape and reached India. The problem of a sea-route (p. 20) was solved. The Portuguese quickly established settlements and opened a direct trade by sea between India and Europe. The old land-routes to India across the Mediterranean and the Levant being abandoned, Venice and the other Italian cities lost the profitable Eastern trade.

The sixteenth century, however, had already dawned. The discoveries of Columbus had kindled the zeal and fired the imagination of Spain,—then fast becoming the leading nation of Europe. Pope Alexander VI. had apportioned the unknown regions of the Earth to the Portuguese and the Spaniards, giving to the former all east and to the latter all west of an imaginary line running north and south 100 leagues west of the Azores. Spanish warriors who “united the valor of the knight-errant with the rapacity of pirates”, flocked to the new world. The West Indies, Mexico, Peru, and Chili were discovered and conquered, and the spoils were sent to Europe. Soon, the coffers of Spain were running over with American gold and silver. While the Spanish flag was planted, step by step, on the eastern coast of America, “from the St. John's to the river Platte”, the whole western coast of South America fell into Spanish hands. The Spanish explorations in America surpassed the Portuguese in Africa. Portugal was too busy with her discoveries to turn aside, except to possess the territory of Brazil, and Spain was left unmolested to prosecute her conquests.

While Spain was thus building up an empire in the western world, English seamen were content with a humbler harvest in the Newfoundland fisheries. During the reign of Elizabeth, however, English navigators began to dispute with Spain the sovereignty of the sea. The British Channel swarmed with privateers—“sea-dogs”,

\* The explorers were accustomed to take formal possession of the country they discovered. Thus Cartier (p. 30) erected a cross thirty feet high, on which he hung a shield containing the arms of France and the inscription, “Vive le Roi”. Gilbert (p. 36) raised a pillar in Newfoundland with a lead plate, on which were engraved the queen's arms. A piece of turf and a bit of twig were presented to him, and he received these symbols of possession with a hazel wand.

as they were called—and it was a lucky galleon that could run the gauntlet of these swift cruisers. The greed of gold, the love of adventure, a chivalrous contempt of danger, and the bitter hatred then existing between Protestant England and Catholic Spain, combined to inspire the sea-dogs to the most daring deeds. In 1577, Drake set sail with five ships, his own scarcely larger than a channel schooner, the others still smaller, resolved to fly the English flag in waters where it had never been seen. The first of Englishmen to pass through the Strait of Magellan, he swept along the coast of Chili and Peru, plundering towns and vessels, and capturing the great galleon that yearly sailed from Lima to Cadiz with precious stones, gold dust, and silver ingots. Finding a squadron was stationed in the Strait of Magellan to intercept him on his return (p. 35), he took the bold resolution of crossing the Pacific and going home via the Cape of Good Hope. His venture succeeded, and he reached Plymouth, England, after an absence of three years. Though he had escaped with only one ship—the Golden Hind—it was laden with treasure to the amount of £800,000. The queen received a large share of the spoils, knighted the freebooter, wore his jewels in her crown, and ordered the Golden Hind to be preserved in memory of this remarkable voyage. Open war having at last broken out between England and Spain, Drake again went to the West Indies, plundered the towns of St. Domingo and Cartagena, burned Forts San Antonio and St. Augustine, and, visiting Virginia, brought back the remains of Raleigh's colony (p. 37). The success of these adventures, lured other freebooters to the "Spanish Main". Cavendish fitted out a fleet and sailed thither (1586); he roamed about for months, burning villages and capturing coasting vessels, until at last he overhauled the Santa Anna, a merchantman loaded with a rich cargo of gold, silver, and spices, from the Manillas. Returning via the cape, he was the second Englishman to circumnavigate the globe.

The English privateers, however, could fight for their country as well as for gain, and Drake, Hawkins, and Frobisher were in the very front of the little fleet that destroyed the "Invincible Armada" (1588) and broke the Spanish power.

#### CONTEMPORARY EUROPEAN SOVEREIGNS.

ENGLAND.	FRANCE.	GERMANY.	SPAIN.
Henry VII....1485	Charles VIII....1483	Frederick III....1440	Ferdinand &
Henry VIII....1509	Louis XII....1498	Maximilian I....1493	Isabella ....1479
	Francis I....1515	Charles V....1520	
Edward VI....1547	Henry II....1547		Charles I....1516
Mary .. .... 1553			
Elizabeth.....1558	Francis II....1559	Ferdinand I....1556	Philip II .....1556
	Charles IX....1560	Maximilian II....1564	
James I.....1603	Henry III ....1574	Rudolph II....1576	
	Henry IV....1589	Matthias ....1612	Philip III.....1598

#### CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

	PAGE
1492. Columbus discovered the new world, October 12 . . . . .	23
1497. The Cabots discovered Labrador, June 24 . . . . .	25
1498. The Cabots explored the Atlantic Coast . . . . .	25
South America was discovered by Columbus, August 10 . . . . .	24
Vasco da Gama sailed round the Cape of Good Hope and discovered a passage to India . . . . .	41

	PAGE
1512. Ponce de Leon discovered Florida, March 27 . . . . .	26
1513. Balboa saw the Pacific Ocean, September 26 . . . . .	27
1519-'21. Cortez conquered Mexico . . . . .	26
1520. Magellan discovered and sailed through the strait which bears his name, into the Pacific Ocean; his vessel returning home by the Cape of Good Hope, made the first circumnavigation of the globe. . . . .	26
1524. Verrazani explored the coast of North America . . . . .	30
1528. Narvaez explored part of Florida . . . . .	27
1534-'35. Cartier explored the Gulf of St. Lawrence and ascended the river . . . . .	30
1539-'41. De Soto rambled over the Southern States and in 1541 discovered the Mississippi River . . . . .	27
1542-'43. Cabrillo explored California and sailed along the Pacific Coast. . . . .	29
1562. Ribaut attempted to plant a Huguenot colony at Port Royal . . . . .	31
1564. Laudonnière attempted to plant a Huguenot colony on the St. John's River. It was destroyed by the Spaniards . . . . .	31
1565. Menendez founded a colony at St. Augustine, Florida; first permanent settlement in the United States . . . . .	29
1576-'77. Frobisher tried to find a north-west passage; entered Baffin Bay, and twice attempted to found a colony in Labrador, but failed . . . . .	34
1578-'80. Drake sailed along the Pacific Coast to Oregon, and circumnavigated the globe. . . . .	35
1582. Espejo founded Santa Fe; second oldest town in the United States, . . . . .	29
1583. Gilbert was lost at sea . . . . .	36
1584-'87. Raleigh twice attempted to plant a colony in Virginia . . . . .	36
1602. Gosnold discovered Cape Cod, May 15 . . . . .	37
1605. De Monts established a colony at Port Royal, Nova Scotia; first permanent French settlement in America . . . . .	32
1607. The English settled Jamestown; first permanent English settlement in America, May 13 . . . . .	38
1608. Champlain planted a colony at Quebec; first permanent French settlement in Canada, July 3 . . . . .	32
1609. Hudson discovered the Hudson River. . . . .	39
Champlain discovered Lake Champlain . . . . .	33
1613. Settlement of New York by the Dutch. . . . .	39
1620. Pilgrims settled at Plymouth; first English settlement in New England, December 21 . . . . .	40

## REFERENCES FOR READING.

*Irring's Columbus*.—*Parkman's Pioneers of France, Jesuits in North America, and Discovery of the Great West*.—*Longfellow's Sir Humphrey Gilbert (Poem)*.—*De Vere's Romance of American History*.—*Abbott's Biography of Illustrious Men and Women*.—*T. Irving's De Soto in Florida*.—*Help's Spanish Conquest of America*.—*Biddle's Sebastian Cabot*.—*Nicholls' John Cabot*.—*Barlow's Vision of Columbus (Poem)*, and *Poems on Columbus* by *Samuel Rogers* and *J. R. Lowell*.—*Simms' Damsel of Darien (Poem)*.—*Prescott's Ferdinand and Isabella (Columbus)*.—*Hawks' History of North Carolina (Lost Colony of Roanoke)*.—*Shea's Discovery and Exploration of the Mississippi Valley*.—*Wallace's Fair God (Fiction)*.—*Barnes' Popular History of the United States*.—*Harper's Magazine*, Vol. 49, *The First Century of the Republic*; Vol. 65, *Overthrow of the French Power in America, and The Spanish Discoverers*.—*Scribner's Monthly*, Vol. 9, *Pictures from Florida*.—*Weise's Discoveries of America to the Year 1525*.

## BLACKBOARD ANALYSIS.

## EARLY DISCOVERIES AND SETTLEMENTS.

1. Geographical Knowledge in the Fifteenth Century.

2. Columbus.

3. How America was Named.

4. The Cabots.

5. Spanish Explorations.

6. French Explorations.

7. English Explorations.

8. Dutch Explorations.

9. Extent of these Explorations.

1. His Views.  
2. At Court of Portugal.  
3. At Court of Spain.  
4. His Success.  
5. His Equipment.  
6. His Voyage.  
7. The Landing.  
8. Further Discoveries.  
9. His Reception Home.  
10. Subsequent Voyages.

1. John Cabot.  
2. Sebastian Cabot.

1. The Feeling in Spain.  
2. Ponce de Leon.  
3. Balboa.  
4. De Narvaez.  
5. Ferdinand de Soto.  
6. Menendez.

7. Explorations on Pacific. *a. California.*  
*b. Cabrillo.*  
*c. New Mexico.*

8. Extent of the Spanish Possessions.

1. Newfoundland Fisheries.  
2. Verrazani.  
3. Cartier.  
4. John Ribaut.  
5. Landonnière.  
6. Champlain. *a. Visit to Hochetaga.*  
*b. Founds Quebec.*

7. De Monts and Port Royal.

8. Jesuit Missionaries. *a. Their zeal.*  
*b. Marquette.*  
*c. La Salle.*

9. Results of French Enterprise.

1. British Claim and Maritime Zeal.  
2. Frobisher.  
3. Francis Drake.  
4. Humphrey Gilbert. *First attempt to plant*  
*a Colony.*

5. Raleigh. *Second attempt.*

6. Trading Voyages.

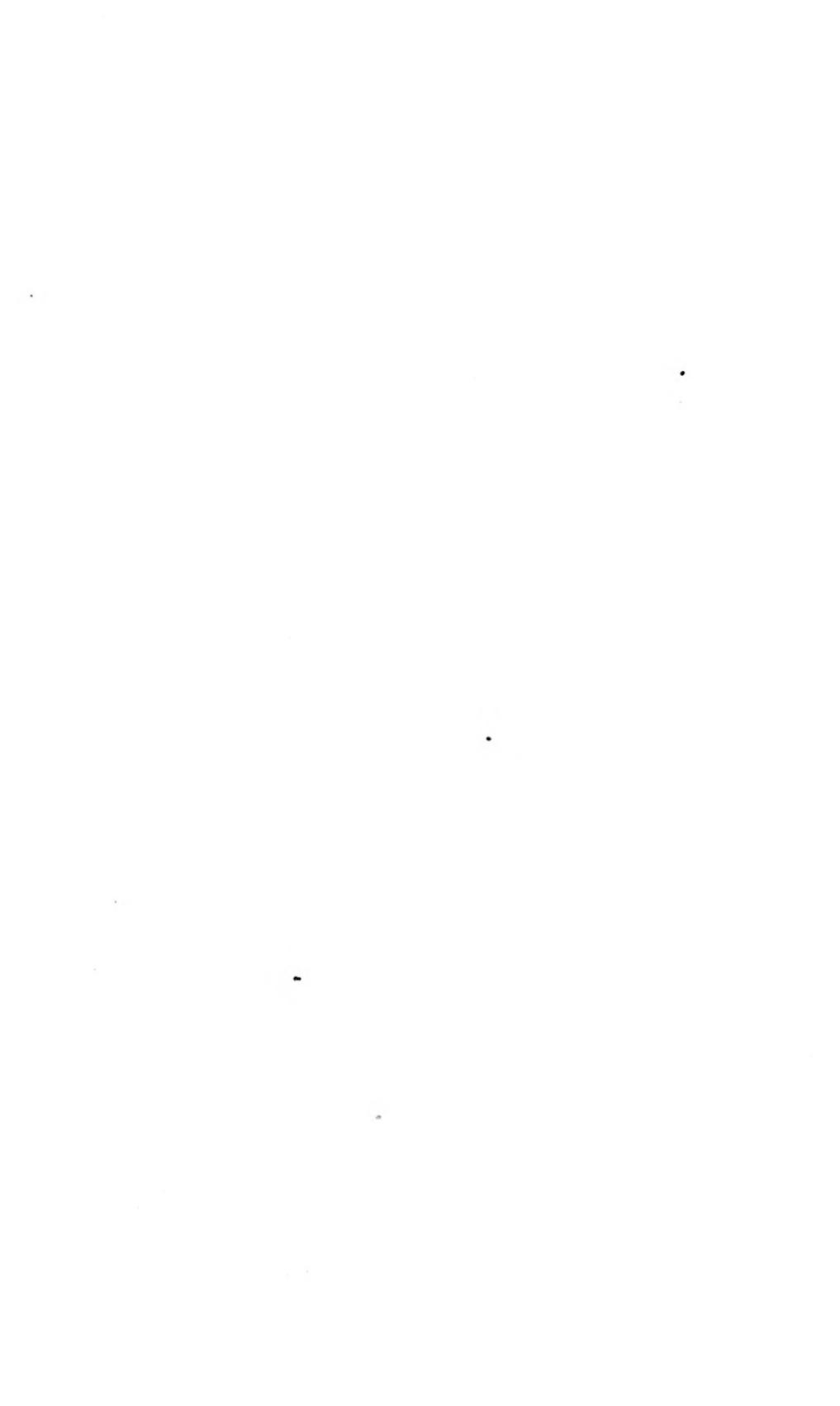
7. Companies formed. *a. London Co.*  
*b. Plymouth Co.*  
*c. Their Charter.*

1. Henry Hudson.  
2. Dutch Claim.

1. Claims of the Four Nations. *a. The Spanish.*  
*b. The French.*  
*c. The English.*  
*d. The Dutch.*

2. Result of these Rival Claims.

3. Permanent Settlements at the end of Two Centuries of Exploration and One Century of Settlement.



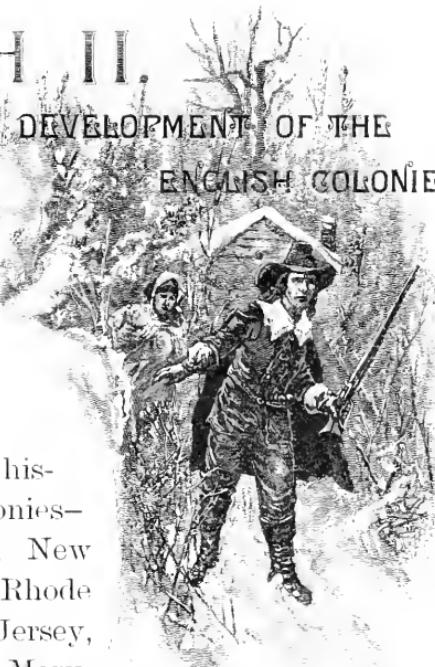


# EPOCH II.

DEVELOPMENT OF THE

ENGLISH COLONIES

FROM 1607  
TO 1775



## THIS Epoch

Traces the early history of the thirteen colonies—Virginia, Massachusetts, New Hampshire, Connecticut, Rhode Island, New York, New Jersey, Pennsylvania, Delaware, Maryland, South Carolina, North Carolina, and Georgia. The Cavaliers land in Virginia, and the Puritans in Massachusetts. Immigration increases and the settlements multiply along the whole coast. The colonies, however, have little history in common. Each by itself struggles with the wilderness, contends with the Indian, and develops the principles of liberty.

*Questions on the Geography of the Second Epoch.*—Locate Jamestown, Salem, Boston, Swansea, Providence, Bristol, Hadley, Hatfield, Portsmouth, Dover, Hartford, Wethersfield, New Haven, Windsor, Saybrook, New York, Albany, Schenectady, Elizabethtown, Wilmington, Philadelphia, St. Mary's, Charleston, Savannah, Haverhill, Deerfield, St. Augustine, Quebec, Louisburg.

Locate Fort Venango, Oswego, Presque Isle, Fort Le Bœuf, Crown Point, Fort Ticonderoga, Fort Niagara, Fort Duquesne, Fort William Henry, Fort Edward.

Describe the Ohio River, Monongahela River, French Creek, Chowan River, Ashley River, Cooper River, River St. John, Potomac River, James River, Hudson River, Connecticut River, Mohawk River, Delaware River, Kennebec River, Penobscot River, Miami River, St. Lawrence River.

Locate Manhattan Island, Alleghany Mountains, Cape Breton, Massachusetts Bay, Chesapeake Bay.

## I.—VIRGINIA.

The Character of the colonists was poorly adapted to endure the hardships incident to a life in a new country. The settlers were mostly gentlemen by birth, unused to labor. They had no families, and came out in search of wealth or adventure, expecting, when rich, to return to England. The climate was unhealthy, and, before the first autumn, half of their number had perished.

John Smith\* saved the colony from ruin. First as a member of the council, and afterward as president, his services were invaluable. He persuaded the settlers to erect a fort, and to build log huts for the winter. He made long voyages, carefully exploring Chesapeake Bay, securing the friendship of the Indians, and bringing back boat-loads of supplies. He

\* Captain John Smith was born to adventure. While yet a boy he leaves his home in Lincolnshire, England, to engage in Holland wars. After a four-years service he builds a lodge of boughs in a forest, where he hunts, rides, and studies military tactics. Next we hear of him on his way to fight the Turks. Before reaching France he is robbed, and escapes death from want only by begging alms. Having embarked for Italy, a fearful storm arises; he, being a heretic, is deemed the cause, and is thrown overboard, but he swims to land. In the East, a famous Mussulman wishes to fight some Christian knight "to please the ladies"; Smith offers himself and slays three champions in succession. Taken prisoner in battle and sold as a slave, his head is shaved and his neck bound with an iron ring; he kills his master, arrays himself in the dead man's garments, mounts a horse and spurs his way to a Russian camp. Having returned to England, he embarks for the new world. On the voyage, he excites the jealousy of his fellows and is landed in chains; but his worth becomes so apparent that he is finally made president of the colony. His marvelous escapes seem now more abundant than ever. A certain fish inflicts a dangerous wound, but he finds an antidote, and afterward eats part of the same fish with great relish. He is poisoned, but overcomes the dose and severely beats the poisoner. His party of fifteen is attacked by Opechancanough (O pe kān'ka no), brother and successor of Powhatan, with seven hundred warriors; Smith drags the old chief by his long hair into the midst of the Indian braves, who, amazed at such audacity, immediately surrender. He is shockingly burned on a boat by the explosion of a bag of powder at his side; but he leaps into the water, where he barely escapes death by drowning. These and many other wonderful exploits he published in a book after his return to England. Historians very generally discredit them. His services were, however, of unquestionable value to Virginia; and his disinterestedness appears from the fact that he never received a foot of land in the colony his wisdom had saved.

trained the tender gentlemen till they learned how to swing the ax in the forest. He declared that "he who would not work, might not eat". He taught them that industry and self-reliance are the surest guarantees to fortune.

*Smith's Adventures* were of the most romantic character. In one of his expeditions up the Chickahominy\* he was



SMITH TRADING WITH THE INDIANS.

taken prisoner by the Indians. With singular coquetry, he immediately tried to interest his captors by explaining the use of his pocket compass, and the motions of the moon and stars. At last, they allowed him to write a letter to Jamestown. When they found that this informed his friends of his misfortune, they were filled with astonishment.† They

\* This was undertaken by the express order of the company, to seek a passage to the Pacific Ocean, and thus to India. Captain Newport, before his return to England, made a trip up the James River for the same purpose, but on reaching the falls concluded that the way to India did not lie in that direction. These attempts show what inadequate ideas then prevailed concerning the size of this continent.

† As another evidence of the simplicity of the Indians, it is said that having seized

could not understand by what magical art he made a few marks on paper express his thoughts. They considered him a being of a superior order and treated him with the utmost respect. He was carried from one tribe to another\* and at last brought to the great chief, Pow ha tăñ', by whom he was condemned to die. His head was laid on a stone, and the huge war-club of the Indian executioner was raised to strike the fatal blow. Suddenly, Po ca hōñ'tas, the young daughter of the chief, who had already become attached to the prisoner, threw herself upon his neck and pleaded for his pardon.† The favorite of the tribe was given her desire. Smith was released, and soon sent home with promises of friendship. His little protector was often thereafter to be seen going to Jamestown with baskets of corn for the white men.

**A Second Charter** (1609) was now obtained by the company. This vested the authority in a governor instead of a local council. The colonists were not consulted with regard to the change, nor did the charter guarantee to them any rights.

**The “Starving Time.”**—Unfortunately, Smith was disabled by a severe wound and compelled to return to England. His influence being removed, the settlers became a prey to disease and famine. Some were killed by the Indians. Some, in their despair, seized a boat and became pirates. The winter of 1609–10 was long known as the Starving Time. In six months, the colonists were reduced from 490 to 60. At last, they determined to flee from the wretched place. “None dropped a tear, for none had enjoyed one day of happiness.”

a quantity of gunpowder belonging to the colonists, they planted it for seed, expecting to reap a full harvest of ammunition for the next contest.

\* His route was over the peninsula, since made famous by McClellan's campaign.

† This incident has been discredited because Smith did not mention it in his first account (1608) of his adventures, but describes it in the second one, published 16 years later. It should be remembered, however, that this conduct of Pocahontas

The next morning, as they slowly moved down with the tide, to their great joy they met their new governor, Lord Delaware, with abundant supplies and a company of immigrants. All returned to the homes they had just deserted, and Jamestown colony was once more rescued from ruin.

**The Third Charter.**—Up to this time, the colony had proved a failure and was publicly ridiculed in London. To quiet the outcry, the charter was changed (1612). The council in London was abolished, and the stockholders were given power to regulate the affairs of the company themselves.

**The Marriage of Pocahontas (1613).**—The little Indian girl had now grown to womanhood. John Rolfe, a young English planter, had won her love and wished to marry her. In the little church at Jamestown, rough almost as an Indian's wigwam, she received Christian baptism, and, in broken English, stammered the marriage vows according to the service of the Church of England.

Three years after, with her husband, she visited London. The child-like simplicity and winning grace of Lady Rebecca, as she was called, attracted universal admiration. She was introduced at court and received every mark of attention. As she was about to return to her native land with her husband and infant son,\* she suddenly died.

**First Colonial Assembly.**—Governor Yeardley (yeerd'li) believed that the colonists should have "a hande in the governing of themselves". He accordingly called at Jamestown, July 30, 1619, THE FIRST LEGISLATIVE BODY THAT EVER ASSEMBLED IN AMERICA. It consisted of the governor, council, and deputies, or "burgesses", as they were called, chosen from the various plantations, or "boroughs". Its laws had to be

was entirely in accord with Indian usage, while it does not seem wise to drop out of our early history such a characteristic and beautiful legend.

\* This son became a man of distinction. Many of the leading families of Virginia have been proud to say that the blood of Pocahontas coursed through their veins.

ratified by the company in England ; but, in turn, the orders from London were not binding unless ratified by the colonial assembly. These privileges were afterward (1621) embodied in a WRITTEN CONSTITUTION—the first of the kind in America. A measure of freedom was thus granted the young colony, and Jamestown became a nursery of liberty.

**Prosperity of the Colony.**—The old famine troubles had now all passed. The attempt to work in common had been given up, and each man tilled his own land and received the avails. Tobacco was an article of export. The colonists were so eager in its cultivation that, at one time, they planted it even in the streets of Jamestown. Gold-hunting had ceased,\* and many of the former servants of the company owned plantations. Settlements lined both banks of the James for 140 miles. Best of all, young women of good character were brought over by the company. These sold readily as wives to the settlers. The price, at first, was fixed at the cost of the passage—100 pounds of tobacco—but wives were in such demand that it soon went up to 150 pounds. Domestic ties were formed. The colonists, having homes, now became Virginians. All freemen had the right to vote. Religious toleration was enjoyed. Virginia became almost an independent republic.

**Slavery Introduced.**—In 1619, the captain of a Dutch trading vessel sold to the colonists twenty negroes.† They were employed in cultivating tobacco. As their labor was found profitable, large numbers were afterward imported.

**Indian Troubles.**—After the death of Powhatan, the firm

\* In the early life of this colony, particles of mica glittering in the brook were mistaken for gold dust. "There was no talk, no hope, but dig gold, wash gold, refine gold, load gold." Newport carried to England a ship-load of the worthless stuff. Smith remonstrated in vain against this folly.

† From this circumstance, small as it seemed at the time, the most momentous consequences ensued,—consequences that, long after, rent the republic with strife, and moistened its soil with blood.

friend of the English, the Indians formed a plan for the extermination of the colony. So secretly was this managed that on the very morning of the massacre (March 22, 1622), they visited the houses and sat at the tables of those whose murder they were plotting. At a preconcerted moment, they attacked the colonists on all their widely-scattered plantations. Over three hundred men, women, and children fell in one day. Fortunately, a converted Indian had informed a friend whom he wished to save, and thus Jamestown and the settlements near by were prepared. A merciless war ensued, during which the colony was reduced from 4,000 to 2,500; but the Indians were so severely punished that they remained quiet for twenty years. Then came a fearful massacre of five hundred settlers (1644), which ended in the natives being expelled from the region.

**Virginia a Royal Province.**—The majority of the stockholders gladly granted to the infant colony those rights for which they were struggling at home. King James, becoming jealous of the company, because of its republican sentiments, took away the charter (1624), and made Virginia a royal province. Henceforth, the king appointed the governor and council, though the colony still retained its assembly.

**A Period of Oppression.**—The British Parliament enforced the Navigation Act (1660), which ordered that the commerce of the colony should be carried on in English vessels, and that their tobacco should be shipped to England. Besides this, their own assembly was composed mainly of royalists, who levied exorbitant taxes, refused to go out of office when their term had expired, fixed their salary at about \$9 per day (equal to \$36 at the present time), restricted the right of voting to "freeholders and housekeepers", and imposed on Quakers a monthly fine of one hundred dollars for absence from worship in the English Church. Two parties

gradually sprung up in their midst: one, the aristocratic party, was composed of the rich planters and the office-holders; the other comprised the liberty-loving portion of the people, who felt themselves deprived of their rights.\*

**Bacon's Rebellion.**—These difficulties came to a crisis in 1676—a century before Independence Day—when Governor Berkeley failed to provide for the defense of the settlements against the Indians. At this juncture, Nathaniel Bacon, a patriotic young lawyer, rallied a company, defeated the Indians, and then turned to meet the governor, who had denounced him as a traitor. During the contest which followed, Berkeley was driven out of Jamestown and the village itself burned.† In the midst of this success, Bacon died. No leader could be found worthy to take his place, and the people

\* It is a curious fact that the royalists who fled from England in Cromwell's time took refuge in Virginia, and were hospitably entertained, while the "regicides" (the judges who condemned Charles I.) fled to Massachusetts and were concealed from their pursuers.

† Going up the James River, just before reaching City Point, one sees on the right-hand bank the ruins of an old church. The crumbling tower, with its arched doorways, is almost hidden by the profusion of shrubbery which surrounds it. Its moss-covered walls, entwined with ivy planted by loving hands which have since crumbled into dust, look desolately out upon the old church-yard at its back. Here, pushing aside the rank vines and tangled bushes which conceal them, one finds a few weather-beaten tombstones. A huge button-wood-tree, taking root below, has burst apart one of these



THE RUINS AT JAMESTOWN.

old slabs, and now, with its many fellows, spreads its lofty branches high over the solitary dead. And this is all that remains of that Jamestown whose struggles we have here recorded.

dispersed. Berkeley revenged himself with terrible severity. On hearing of the facts, Charles II. impatiently declared, "He has taken more lives in that naked country than I did for the murder of my father."

## II.—MASSACHUSETTS.

The Plymouth Company made several attempts to explore North Virginia. Captain John Smith, already so famous in South Virginia, examined the coast from Penobscot to Cape Cod, drew a map of it, and called the country NEW ENGLAND. The company, stirred to action by his glowing accounts, obtained a new patent (1620) under the name of the Council for New England. This authorized them to make settlements and laws, and to carry on trade through a region reaching from the Atlantic to the Pacific and comprising over a million square miles. New England, however, was settled with no consent of king or council.

### 1. PLYMOUTH COLONY.

**Settlement.**—*Landing of the Pilgrims.*\*—One stormy day in the autumn of 1620, the Mayflower, with a band of

\* They were called *Pilgrims* because of their wanderings. About seventy years before this time the state religion of England had been changed from Catholic to Protestant; but a large number of the clergy and people were dissatisfied with what they thought to be a half-way policy on the part of the new church, and called for a more complete purification from old observances and doctrines. For this, they were called Puritans. They still believed in a state church, *i.e.*, that the *nation* of England was the *church* of England; and that the queen, as the head of both, could appoint church officers and prescribe the form of religious worship. They, however, wanted a change, and desired the government to make it to suit them. The government not only refused, but punished the Puritan clergy for not using the prescribed form of worship. This led some of them to question the authority of the government in religious matters. They came to believe that any body of Christians might declare itself a church, choose its own officers, and be independent of all external authority. When they began to form these local churches, they separated themselves from the Church of England, and for this reason are called *Separatists* and *Independents*. One of these churches of *SEPARATISTS* was at Scrooby, in the east of England. Not being allowed to worship in peace, they fled to Holland (1608), where they lived twelve

a hundred pilgrims, came to anchor in Cape Cod harbor. The little company,\* gathering in the cabin, drew up a compact, in which they agreed to enact just and equal laws, which all should obey. One of their exploring parties landed at Plymouth,† as it was called on Smith's chart, December 21.‡ Finding the location suitable for a settlement, they all came ashore and, amid a storm of snow and sleet, commenced building their rude huts.

**The Character** of the Pilgrim settlers was well suited to the rugged, stormy land which they sought to subdue. They had come into the wilderness with their families in search of a home where they could educate their children and worship God as they pleased. They were earnest, sober-minded men, actuated in all things by deep religious principle, and never disloyal to their convictions of duty.

**Their Sufferings** during the winter were severe. At one time, there were only seven well persons to take care of the sick. Half of the little band died. Yet when spring came, not one of the company thought of returning to England.

**The Indians**, fortunately, did not disturb them. A pestilence had destroyed the tribe inhabiting the place where they landed. They were startled, however, one day in early spring

years. But evil influences surrounded their children, and they longed for a land where they might worship God in their own way, and save their families from worldly follies. America offered such a home. They came, resolved to brave every danger, trusting to God to shape their destinies.

\* The exact number of the pilgrims was 102.

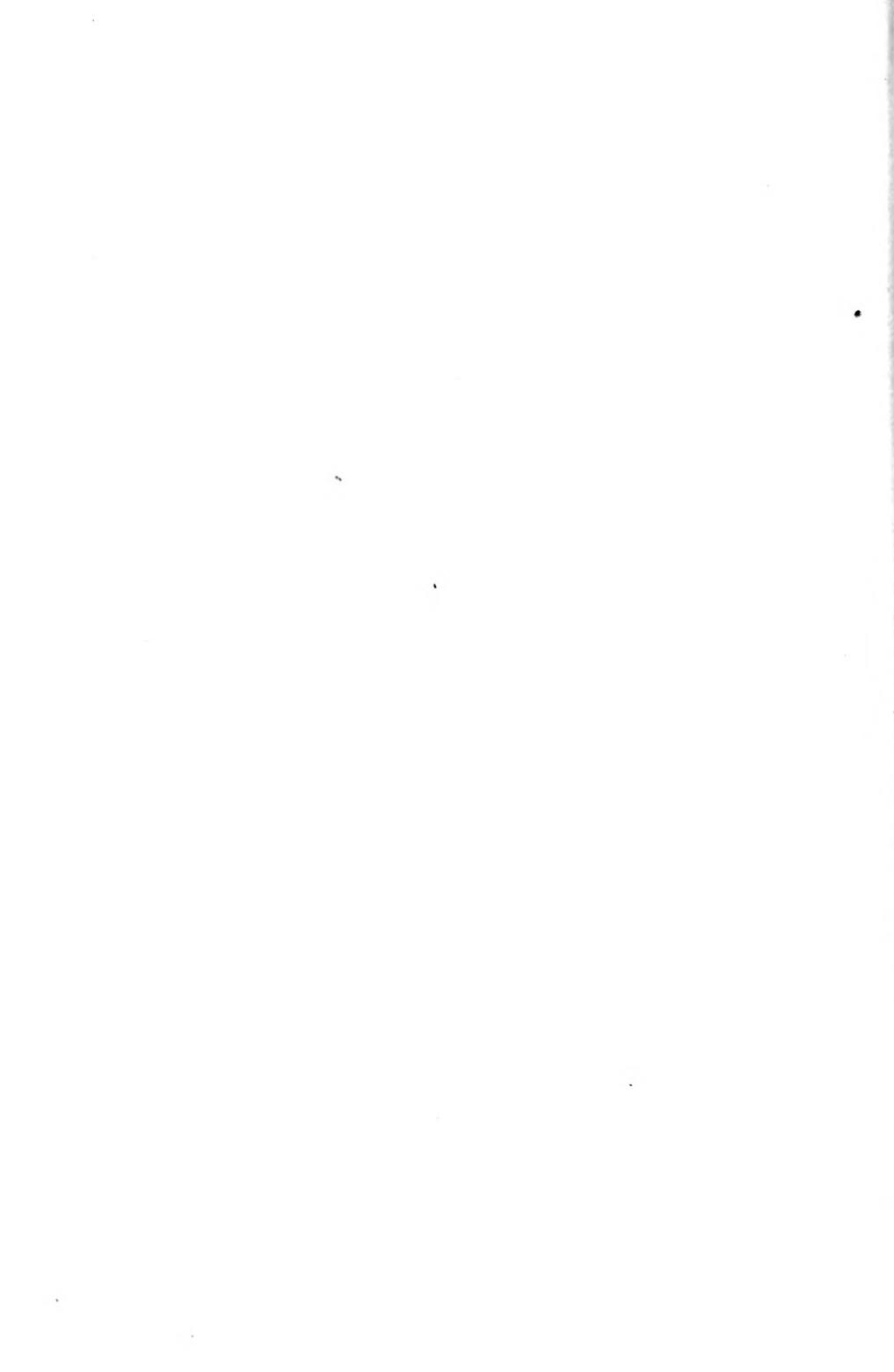
† The little shallop sent out to reconnoiter before landing, lost, in a furious storm, its rudder, mast, and sail. Late at night, the party sought shelter under the lee of a small island. They spent the next day in cleaning their rusty weapons and drying their wet garments. Every hour was precious, as the season was late and their companions in the Mayflower were waiting their return; but "being ye last day of ye week, they prepared there to keepe ye Sabbath". No wonder that the influence of such a people has been felt throughout the country, and that "Forefathers' Rock", on which they first stepped, is yet held in grateful remembrance.

‡ This was Dec. 11, Old Style. In 1752, eleven days were added to correct an error in the calendar, thus making this date the 22d. Only 10 days should be allowed for 1620, and the correct date is the 21st, New Style. (Steele's Astronomy, p. 269.)



### Puritans Going to Church.

"Thanks be to God for winter time! That bore the Mayflower up,  
To pour amid New England snows the treasures of its cup,  
To fold them in its icy arms, those sturdy Pilgrim sires,  
And weld an iron brotherhood around their Christmas fires."—B. F. TAYLOR.



by a voice in their village crying in broken English, "Welcome!" It was the salutation of Sam'o set, an Indian, whose chief, Mas'sa soit, soon after visited them. The treaty then made lasted for fifty years. Ca non'i cus, a Narragansett chief, once sent a bundle of arrows, wrapped in a rattlesnake skin, as a token of defiance. Governor Brad-



CANONICUS RECEIVING THE POWDER AND SHOT SENT BY GOVERNOR BRADFORD.

ford returned the skin filled with powder and shot. This significant hint was effectual.

**The Progress of the Colony** was slow. Their harvests were insufficient to feed themselves and the new-comers. During the "famine of 1623", the best dish they could set before their friends was a bit of fish and a cup of water.\* After four years they numbered only 184. The plan of working in common having failed here as at Jamestown,

\* As an illustration of their pious content, it is said that Elder Brewster was wont, over a meal consisting only of clams, to return thanks to God, who "had given them to suck the abundance of the seas, and of the treasures hid in the sands".

land was assigned to each settler. Abundance ensued. The colony was never organized by royal charter; therefore they elected their own governor and made their own laws. In 1692, Plymouth was united with Massachusetts Bay Colony, under the name of Massachusetts.

## 2. MASSACHUSETTS BAY COLONY.

**Settlement.**—John Endicott and five associates obtained a grant of land about Massachusetts Bay (1628). Having secured from King Charles I. a charter giving authority to make laws and govern the territory, the company afterward transferred all its rights to the colony. This was a popular measure, and many prominent Puritan families flocked to the land of liberty. Some gathered around Governor Endicott, who had already started Salem and Charlestown, some established colonies at Dorchester and Watertown, and one thousand under Governor Winthrop founded Boston (1630).

**Religious Disturbances.**—The people of Massachusetts Bay, while in England, were Puritans, but not Separatists. Having come to America to establish a Puritan Church, they were unwilling to receive persons holding opinions differing from their own, lest their purpose should be defeated. They accordingly sent back to England those who persisted in using the forms of the Established Church, and allowed only members of their own church to vote in civil affairs.

*Roger Williams*, an eloquent and pious young minister, taught that each person should think for himself in all religious matters, and be responsible to his own conscience alone. He declared that the magistrates had, therefore, no right to punish blasphemy, perjury, or Sabbath-breaking. The clergy and magistrates were alarmed at what they considered a doctrine dangerous to the peace of the colony, and he was ordered (1636) to be sent to England. It was in the

depth of winter, yet he fled to the forest where he found refuge among the Indians. Canonicus, the Narragansett sachem, gave him land to found a settlement, which he gratefully named PROVIDENCE.

*Mrs. Anne Hutchinson.* during the same year, aroused a violent and bitter controversy. She claimed to be favored with special revelations of God's will. These she expounded to crowded congregations of women, greatly to the scandal of the clergy and people. Finally she, also, was banished.

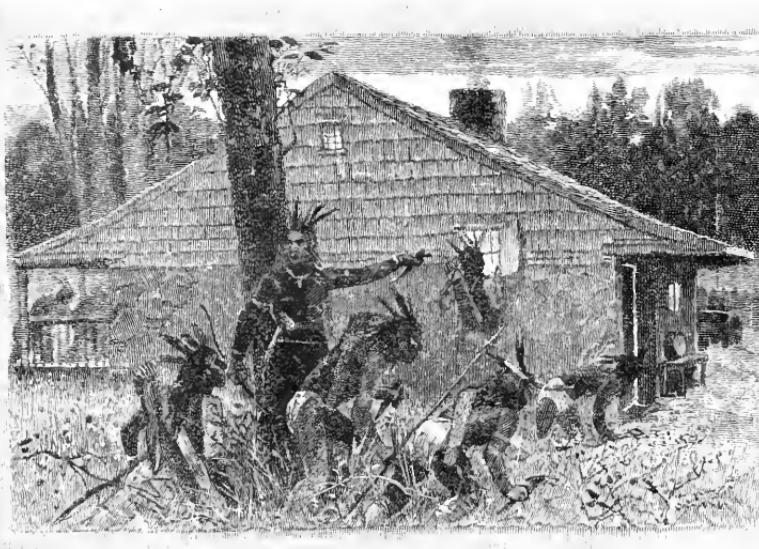
*The Quakers.* about twenty years after these summary measures, created fresh trouble by their peculiar views. They were fined, whipped, imprisoned, and sent out of the colony; yet they as constantly returned, glorying in their sufferings. At last, four were executed. The people beginning to consider them as martyrs, the persecution gradually relaxed.

**A Union of the Colonies** of Massachusetts Bay, Plymouth, New Haven, and Connecticut, was formed (1643) under the title of THE UNITED COLONIES OF NEW ENGLAND. This was a famous league in colonial times. The object was a common protection against the Indians, and the encroachments of the Dutch and French settlers.

**King Philip's War.**—During the life of Massasoit, Plymouth enjoyed peace with the Indians, as did Jamestown during that of Powhatan. After Massasoit's death, his son, Philip, brooded with a jealous eye over the encroachments of the whites. With profound sagacity, he planned a confederation of the Indian tribes against the intruders. The first blow fell on the people of Swansea, as they were quietly going home from church on Sunday (July 4, 1675). The settlers flew to arms, but Philip escaped, and soon excited the savages to fall upon the settlements high up the Connecticut valley.\*

\* At Hadley, the Indians surprised the people during a religious service. Seizing their muskets at the sound of the savage war-whoop, the men rushed out of the

The colonists fortified their houses with palisades, carried their arms with them into the fields when at work, and



EARLY MORNING ATTACK BY INDIANS.

stacked them at the door when at church. The Narragansett Indians favored Philip, and seemed on the point of joining

meeting-house to fall into line. But the foe was on every side. Confused and bewildered, the settlers seemed about to give way, when suddenly a strange old man with long white beard and ancient garb appeared among them. Ringing out a quick, sharp word of command, he recalled them to their senses. Following their mysterious leader, they drove the enemy headlong before them. The danger passed, they looked around for their deliverer. But he had disappeared as mysteriously as he had come. The good people believed that God had sent an angel to their rescue. But history reveals the secret. It was the regicide, Colonel Goffe. Fleeing from the vengeance of Charles II., with a price set upon his head, he had for years wandered about, living in mills, clefts of rocks, and forest caves. At last, he had found an asylum with the Hadley minister. From his window he had seen the stealthy Indians coming down the hill. Fired with desire to do one more good deed for God's people, he rushed from his hiding-place, led them on to victory, and then returned to his retreat, never more to reappear.—One learns with regret that recent research throws doubt over the truth of this thrilling story. It is curious to notice, also, that there is no proof that Philip possessed any eloquence or was even present in any fight, though all these statements have hitherto been made by reliable historians.

his alliance. They had gathered their winter's provisions, and fortified themselves in the midst of an almost inaccessible swamp. Fifteen hundred of the colonists accordingly attacked them in this stronghold. The Indian wigwams and supplies were burned, and one thousand warriors perished. In the spring, the war broke out anew along a frontier of three hundred miles, and to within twenty miles of Boston. Nowhere fighting in the open field, but by ambuscade and skulking, the Indians kept the whole country in terror. Driven to desperation by their atrocities, the settlers hunted down the savages like wild beasts. Philip was chased from one hiding-place to another. His family being captured at last, he fled, broken-hearted, to his old home on Mt. Hope, near Bristol, R. I., where he was shot by a faithless Indian.

**New England a Royal Province.**—The Navigation Act (p. 51), which we have seen so unpopular in Virginia, was exceedingly oppressive in Massachusetts, which possessed a thriving commerce. In spite of the decree, the colony opened a trade with the West Indies. The royalists in England determined that this bold republican spirit should be quelled. The colony, stoutly insisting upon its rights under the charter, resisted the officer sent over to enforce the Navigation Act and the authority of the king; whereupon, the charter was annulled, and Massachusetts made a ROYAL PROVINCE (1684). Charles II. died before his plan was completed, but James II. sent over Sir Edmund Andros, as first royal governor of New England (1686). He carried things with a high hand. The colonies endured his oppression for three years, when, learning that his royal master was de-throned,\* they rose against their petty tyrant and put him in jail. With true Puritan sobriety, they then quietly resumed their old form of government. This, also, lasted for

\* The "English Revolution of 1688." (See Barnes' General History, p. 510.)

three years, when Sir William Phipps came as royal governor over a province embracing Massachusetts, Maine, and Nova Scotia. From this time till the Revolution, Massachusetts remained a royal province.

**Salem Witchcraft (1692).**—A strange delusion known as the Salem witchcraft,\* produced an intense excitement. The children of Mr. Parris, a minister near Salem, performed pranks which could be explained only by supposing that they were under Satanic influence. Every effort was made to discover who had bewitched them. An Indian servant was flogged until she admitted herself to be guilty. Soon others were affected, and the terrible mania spread rapidly. Committees of examination were appointed and courts of trial convened. The most improbable stories were credited. To express a doubt of witchcraft, was to indicate one's own alliance with the evil spirit. Persons of the highest respectability, clergymen, magistrates, and even the governor's wife, were implicated. At last, after fifty-five persons had been tortured and twenty hung, the people awoke to their folly.

### III.—MAINE AND NEW HAMPSHIRE.

**These Colonies** were so intimately associated with Massachusetts that they have almost a common history. Gorges (gôr' jéz) and Mason, about two years after the landing of the

\* A belief in witchcraft was at that time universal. Sir Matthew Hale, one of the most enlightened judges of England, repeatedly tried and condemned persons accused of witchcraft. Blackstone himself, at a later day, declared that to deny witchcraft was to deny Revelation. Cotton Mather, the most prominent minister of the colony, was active in the rooting out of this supposed crime. He published a book full of the most ridiculous witch stories. One judge, who engaged in this persecution, was afterward so deeply penitent that he observed a day of fasting in each year, and on the day of general fast rose in his place in the Old South Church at Boston, and in the presence of the congregation handed to the pulpit a written confession acknowledging his error and praying for forgiveness.

Pilgrims, obtained from the Council for New England the grant of a large tract of land which lay between the Merrimac and Kennebec rivers. They established some small fishing stations near Portsmouth and at Dover. This patent being afterward dissolved, Mason took the country lying west of the Piscataqua, and named it New Hampshire; Gorges took that lying east, and called it the province of Maine.\* Massachusetts, however, claimed this territory, and, to secure it, paid about six thousand dollars to the heirs of Gorges. Maine was not separated from Massachusetts till 1820. The feeble settlements of New Hampshire also placed themselves under the protection of Massachusetts. "Three times, either by their own consent or by royal authority, they were joined in one colony and as often separated," until 1741, when New Hampshire became a royal province and so remained until the Revolution.

#### IV.—CONNECTICUT.

**Settlement.**—About eleven years after the landing of the Pilgrims, Lord Say-and-Seal and Lord Brooke obtained from the Earl of Warwick a transfer of the grant of the Connecticut† valley, which he had secured from the Council for New England. The Dutch claimed the territory, and, before the English could take possession, built a fort at Hartford, and commenced traffic with the Indians. Some traders from Plymouth sailing up the river were stopped by the Dutch, who threatened to fire upon them. But they kept on and

\* To distinguish it from the islands along the coast, this country had been called the Mayne (main) land, which perhaps gave rise to its present name. New Hampshire was so called from Hampshire in England, Mason's home. The settlers of New Hampshire were long vexed with suits brought by the men into whose hands Mason's grant had fallen.

† This State is named from its principal river—Connecticut being the Indian word for *Long River*.

established a post at Windsor (wɪn' zer). Many people from Boston, allured by the rich meadow lands, settled near. In the autumn of 1635, John Steele, one of the proprietors of Cambridge, led a pioneer company "out west," as it was then called, and laid the foundations of Hartford. The next year, the main band, with their pastor—Thomas Hooker, an eloquent and estimable man—came, driving their flocks before them through the wilderness. In the meantime, John Winthrop\* established a fort at the mouth of the river, and thus shut out the Dutch. Here he planted a colony, named Saybrook, in honor of the proprietors.

**The Pequod War.**—The colonists had no sooner become settled in their new home than the Pequod Indians endeavored to persuade the Narragansetts to join them in a general attack upon the whites. Roger Williams hearing of this and forgetting all the injuries he had received, on a stormy night set out in his canoe for the Indian village. Though the Pequod messengers were present, he prevailed upon the old Narragansett chief to remain at home. So the Pequods lost their ally and were forced to fight alone. They commenced by murdering thirty colonists. Captain Mason, therefore, resolved to attack their stronghold on the Mystic River. His party approached the fort at day-break (June 5, 1637). Aroused by the barking of a dog, the sleepy sentinel shouted "Owanux! Owanux!" (the Englishmen!) but it was too late. The troops were already within the palisades. The Indians, rallying, made a fierce resistance, when Captain Mason, seizing a fire-brand, hurled it among the wigwams. The

\* John Winthrop appears in history without blemish. Highly educated and accomplished, he was no less upright and generous. In the bloom of life, he left his brilliant prospects in the old world to follow the fortunes of the new. When his father had made himself poor in nurturing the Massachusetts colony, this noble son gave up voluntarily his own large inheritance to "further the good work". It was through his personal influence and popularity at court that the liberal charter was procured from Charles II, which guaranteed freedom to Connecticut.

flames quickly swept through the encampment. The English themselves barely escaped. The few Indians who fled to the swamps were hunted down. The tribe perished in a day.

**The Three Colonies.**—1. The NEW HAVEN COLONY was founded (1638) by a number of wealthy London families. They took the Bible for law, and only church members could vote. 2. The CONNECTICUT COLONY, proper, comprising Hartford, Wethersfield, and Windsor, adopted a written constitution in which it was agreed to give to all freemen the right to vote. This was THE FIRST INSTANCE IN HISTORY OF A WRITTEN CONSTITUTION FRAMED BY THE PEOPLE FOR THE PEOPLE. 3. The SAYBROOK COLONY was at first governed by the proprietors, but was afterward sold to the Connecticut Colony. This reduced the three colonies to two.

**A Royal Charter** was obtained (1662) which united both these colonies and guaranteed to all the rights upon which the Connecticut colonists

had agreed. This was a precious document, since it gave them almost independence, and was the most favorable yet granted to any colony. Twenty-five years after, Governor Andros marching from Boston over the route where the pious

Hooker had led his little flock fifty years before, came "glittering with scarlet and lace" into the assembly at Hartford, and demanded the charter. A protracted debate ensued. Tradition loves to relate that, as the people crowded around to take a last look at this guarantee of their liberties, suddenly the lights were extinguished: on



THE CHARTER OAK.

their being relighted, the charter was gone; William Wadsworth had seized it, escaped through the crowd and hidden it in the hollow of a tree, famous ever after as the Charter Oak. However, Andros pronounced the charter government at an end. “Finis” was written at the close of the minutes of their last meeting.

When the governor was so summarily deposed in Boston, the people brought the charter from its hiding-place, the general court reassembled, and the “finis” disappeared.\*

## V.—RHODE ISLAND.

**Settlement.**—Roger Williams† settled Providence Plantation in 1636, the year in which Hooker came to Hartford. Other exiles from Massachusetts followed,‡ among them the celebrated Mrs. Hutchinson. A party of these purchased§ the island of Aquiday and established the Rhode Island Plantation. Roger Williams stamped upon these colonies his

\* Another attempt to infringe upon charter rights occurred in 1693. Governor Fletcher ordered the militia placed under his own command. Having called them out to listen to his royal commission, he began to read. Immediately, Captain Wadsworth ordered the drums to be beaten. Fletcher commanded silence, and began again. “Drum, drum!” cried Wadsworth. “Silence!” shouted the governor. “Drum, drum, I say!” repeated the captain; and then turning to Fletcher, with a meaning look, he added: “If I am interrupted again, I will make the sun shine through you.” The governor did not press the matter.—The story of the Charter Oak is denied by some, who claim that contemporary history does not mention it, and that probably Andros seized the charter, while the colonists had previously made a copy.

† William Blackstone, being as dissatisfied with the yoke of the “lords brethren” in Boston as with that of the “lords bishops” in England, some time before this removed to the banks of what is now called the Blackstone, near Providence. He, however, acknowledged the jurisdiction of Massachusetts.

‡ Persecuted refugees from every quarter flocked to Providence; and Williams shared equally with all the lands he had obtained, reserving to himself only two small fields which, on his first arrival, he had planted with his own hands.

§ An island of a reddish appearance was observed lying in the bay. This was known to the Dutch as Rood or Red Island. Hence the name of the island and State of Rhode Island. (*Brothhead.*) The price paid was 40 fathoms of white wampum, 20 hoes, and 10 coats.

favorite idea of religious toleration, *i. e.*, that the civil power has no right to interfere with the religious opinions of men.

**A Charter.**—The colonists wished to join the New England Union, but were refused on the ostensible plea that they had no charter.\* Williams accordingly visited England and obtained a charter uniting the two plantations. On his return, the people met, elected their officers, and (1647) agreed on a set of laws guaranteeing freedom of faith and worship to all,—“the first legal declaration of liberty of conscience ever adopted in Europe or America.”

## VI.—NEW YORK.

**Settlement.**—Soon after the discovery of the Hudson, Dutch ships began to visit the river to traffic in furs with the Indians. Afterward, the West India Company obtained a grant of New Netherland, and under its patronage permanent settlements were made at New Amsterdam† and at Fort Orange (Albany). The company allowed persons who should plant a colony of fifty settlers to select and buy land of the Indians, which it was agreed should descend to their heirs forever. These persons were called “patroons” (patrons) of the manor.‡

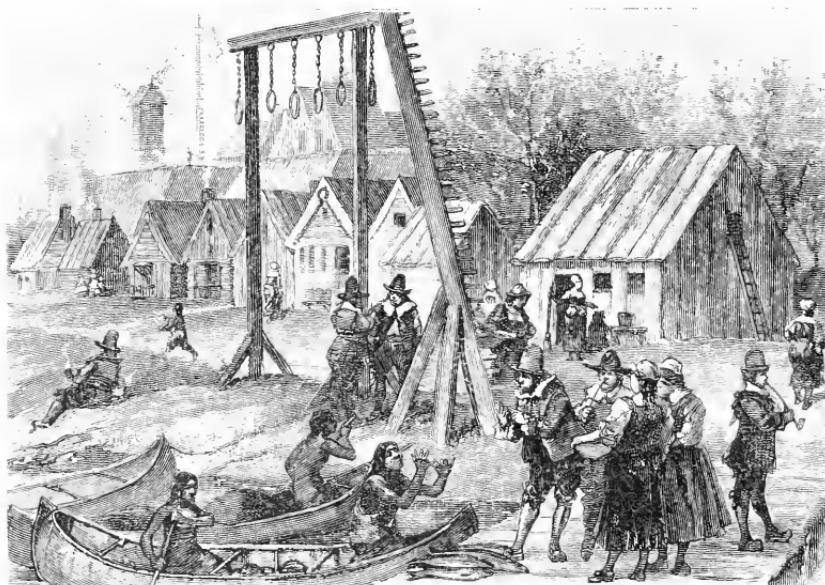
**The Four Dutch Governors (1626-'64).**—The early his-

\* Plymouth, in virtue of its charter, claimed to have “jurisdiction over the Rhode Island territory”.

† Some huts were built by Dutch traders on Manhattan Island in 1613, and a trading-post was established in 1615. In the latter year, Fort Nassau was completed, south of the present site of Albany. In 1624, a party of Walloons (Belgian Protestants) was brought over by the company. About the same time, Fort Orange was erected, and eighteen families built their bark huts under its protection. In 1626, Minuit, the first governor, arrived in New Amsterdam, and purchased Manhattan Island of the Indians for about \$24, nearly 1 mill per acre.

‡ Some of the old Dutch manors remain to this day. The famous anti-rent difficulties (p. 182) grew out of such titles.

tory of New York is only an account of Indian butcheries, varied by difficulties with the Swedes on the Delaware, and the English on the Connecticut.\* These disturbances are monotonous enough in the recital, but doubtless thrilled the blood of the early Knickerbockers. Peter Stuyvesant was the last and ablest of the four Dutch governors. He agreed with Connecticut upon the boundary line (1650), and taking an



THE DUTCH TRADING WITH THE INDIANS AT NEW YORK.

armed force, marched upon the Swedes, who at once submitted to him. But the old governor hated democratic institutions, and was terribly vexed in this wise. There were some English in the colony, and they longed for the rights of self-government which the Connecticut people enjoyed. They kept demanding these privileges and talking of them to their Dutch neighbors. At this juncture, an English fleet

\* These disputes arose from the fact that the Dutch claimed the territory lying between the Delaware and the Connecticut.

came to anchor in the harbor, and demanded the surrender of the town in the name of the Duke of York. Stout-hearted old Peter pleaded with his council to fight. But in vain. They rather liked the idea of English rule. The surrender was signed, and at last the reluctant governor attached his name. In September, 1664, the English flag floated over Manhattan Island. The colony was named New York in honor of the proprietor.

**The English Governors** disappointed the people by not granting them their coveted rights. A remonstrance against being taxed without representation was burned by the hang-man. So that when, after nine years of English rule, a Dutch fleet appeared in the harbor, the people went back quietly under their old rulers. But the next year, peace being restored between England and Holland, New Amsterdam became New York again. Thus ended the Dutch rule in the colonies. Andros, who twelve years after played the tyrant in New England, was the next governor; but he ruled so arbitrarily that he was called home. Under his successor, Dongan, an assembly of the representatives of the people was called, by permission of the Duke of York (1683). This was but a transient gleam of civil freedom, for two years after, when the Duke of York became James II., King of England, he forgot all his promises, forbade legislative assemblies, prohibited printing-presses, and annexed the colony to New England. When, however, Andros was driven from Boston, Nicholson, his lieutenant and apt tool of tyranny in New York, fled at once. Captain Leisler (lis'ler), supported by the democracy but bitterly opposed by the aristocracy, therupon administered affairs until the arrival of Governor Sloughter (slaw'ter), who arrested him on the absurd charge of treason. Sloughter was unwilling to execute him, but Leisler's enemies, at a dinner party, made the governor

drunk, obtained his signature, and before he became sober enough to repent, Leisler was no more.\*

From this time till the Revolution, the struggles of the people with the royal governors for their rights, developed the spirit of liberty and paved the way for that eventful crisis.

## VII.—NEW JERSEY.

**Settlement.**—The present State of New Jersey was embraced in the territory of New Netherland, and the Dutch seem to have had a trading-post at Bergen as early as 1618. Soon after New Netherland passed into the hands of the Duke of York, he gave the land † between the Hudson and the Delaware to Lord Berkeley and Sir George Carteret. In 1664, a company from Long Island and New England settled at Elizabethtown, which they named after Carteret's wife. This was the first permanent English settlement in the State.

**East and West Jersey.**—Lord Berkeley sold his share to some English Quakers. This part was called WEST JERSEY. A company of Quakers soon settled at Burlington. Others followed, and thus West Jersey became a Quaker colony. Sir George Carteret's portion was called EAST JERSEY. After

\* For many years, the Atlantic Ocean was infested by pirates. A little after the events narrated above, William Kidd, a New York ship-master, was sent out to cruise against these sea-robbers. He turned pirate himself and became the most noted of them all. Returning from his cruise, he was at length captured while boldly walking in the streets of Boston. He was carried to England, tried, and hanged. His name and deeds have been woven into popular romance, and the song "My name is Captain Kidd, as I sailed, as I sailed", is well known. He is believed to have buried his ill-gotten riches on the coast of Long Island or the banks of the Hudson, and these localities have been oftentimes searched by credulous persons seeking for Kidd's treasure.

† This tract was called New Jersey in honor of Carteret, who had been governor of Jersey Island in the English Channel.

his death, it was sold to William Penn and eleven other Quakers.\*

**New Jersey United.**—Constant disputes arose out of the land titles. Among so many proprietors, the tenants hardly knew from whom to obtain their titles for land. The proprietors finally (1702) surrendered their rights of government to the English crown, and the whole of New Jersey was united with New York under one governor, but with a separate assembly. Thirty-six years after, at the earnest request of the people, New Jersey was set apart as a distinct royal province.

## VIII., IX.—PENNSYLVANIA AND DELAWARE.

**Settlement.**—The first permanent settlement in Delaware was made near Wilmington (1638), by the Swedes, on a tract which they called New Sweden. They also established the first settlement in Pennsylvania, a few miles below Philadelphia. The Dutch subsequently conquered these settlements, but they continued to prosper long after the Swedish and the Dutch rule had yielded to the constantly-growing English power.

*William Penn*, the founder of Pennsylvania, was a celebrated English Quaker.† He obtained from Charles II. a grant of the land lying west of the Delaware. This tract

\* It was settled, however, largely by Puritans and Scotch Presbyterians. The latter having refused to accept the English form of religion, had been bitterly persecuted. Fleeing their native country, they found an asylum in this favored land.

† The Quakers, avoiding unmeaning forms, aim to lead purely spiritual lives. Their usual worship is conducted in solemn silence, each soul for itself. They take no oath, make no compliments, remove not the hat to king or ruler, and "thee" and "thou" both friend and foe. Every day is to them a holy day, and the Sabbath simply a day of rest. We can readily see how this must have scandalized the Puritans.

William Penn became a Quaker while in college at Oxford. Refusing to wear the customary student's surplice, he with others violently assaulted some fellow-students

Penn named Sylvania, but the king insisted upon calling it Pennsylvania\* (Penn's woods). The Duke of York added to this grant the present State of Delaware, which soon came to be termed the "Three lower counties on the Delaware". Penn wished to form a refuge for his Quaker brethren, who were bitterly persecuted in England. He at once sent over large numbers, as many as two thousand in a single year. In 1682, he came himself, and was received by the settlers with the greatest cordiality and respect.

**Philadelphia Founded.**—The year following (1683), Penn purchased land of the Swedes and laid out a city which he named Philadelphia, signifying BROTHERLY LOVE. It was in the midst of the forest, and the startled deer bounded past the settler who came to survey his new home. Yet within a year, it contained one hundred houses; in two years, it numbered over two thousand inhabitants; and in three years, it gained more than New York had in half a century.

**The Great Law** was a code agreed upon by the legislative body which Penn called from among the settlers soon after his arrival. It made faith in Christ a necessary qualification for voting and office-holding; but also provided that no one believing in "Almighty God" should be molested in his religious views. The Quakers, having been persecuted themselves, did not celebrate their liberty by persecuting

and stripped them of their robes. For this he was expelled. His father would not allow him to return home. Afterward relenting, he sent him to Paris, Cork, and other cities, to soften his Quaker peculiarities. After several unhappy quarrels, his father proposed to overlook all else if he would only consent to doff his hat to the king, the Duke of York, and himself. Penn still refusing, he was again turned out of doors. He was several times imprisoned for his religious extremes. On the death of his father, to whom he had once more been reconciled, he became heir to quite a fortune. He took the territory which forms Pennsylvania in payment of a debt of £16,000 due his father from the crown.

\* Penn offered the secretary who drew up the charter twenty guineas to leave off the prefix "Penn". This request being denied, the king was appealed to, who commanded the tract to be called Pennsylvania, in honor of William Penn's father.

others. Penn, himself, surrendered the most of his power to the people. His highest ambition seemed to be to advance their interests. He often declared that if he knew any thing more that could make them happier, he would freely grant it.

**Penn's Treaty with the Indians**\* possesses a romantic interest. He met them under a large elm-tree† near Philadelphia. The savages were touched by his gentle words and kindly bearing. "We will live in love with William Penn and his children," said they, "as long as the sun and moon shall shine."‡

**Penn's Return.**—Penn returned to England (1684), leaving the colony fairly established. His benevolent spirit shone forth in his parting words, "Dear friends, my love salutes you all."

**Delaware.**—"The three lower counties on the Delaware"

\* "We meet," said Penn, "on the broad pathway of good faith and good will; no advantage shall be taken on either side, but all shall be openness and love. The friendship between you and me I will not compare to a chain; for that the rains might rust or the falling tree might break. We are the same as if one man's body were to be divided into two parts; we are all one flesh and blood."

† This tree was carefully preserved until 1810, when it was blown down. A monument now marks the spot.

‡ The simple-minded natives kept the history of this treaty by means of strings of wampum, and they would often count over the shells on a clean piece of bark and rehearse its provisions. "It was the only treaty never sworn to, and the only one never broken." On every hand the Indians waged relentless war with the colonies, but they never shed a drop of Quaker blood.



WILLIAM PENN.

being greatly offended by the action of the council which Penn had left to govern in his absence, set up for themselves. Penn "sorrowfully" consented to their action, appointed a deputy governor over them and afterward granted them an assembly. Pennsylvania and Delaware, however, remained under one governor until the Revolution.

**Penn's Heirs**, after his death (1718), became proprietors of the flourishing colony he had established. It was ruled by deputies whom they appointed, until (1779) the State of Pennsylvania bought out their claims by the payment of about half a million of dollars.\*

## X.—MARYLAND.

**Settlement.**—Lord Baltimore† (Cecil Calvert), a Catholic, was anxious to secure for the friends of his church a refuge from the persecutions which they were then suffering in England.‡ He accordingly obtained from King Charles a grant of land lying north of the Potomac. The first settlement was made (1634) by his brother, at an Indian village which he called St. Mary's, near the mouth of the Potomac.

**The Charter** was very different from that granted to Vir-

\* A difficulty having arisen with Maryland about boundaries, it was settled by two surveyors named Mason and Dixon, who ran the line in 1763-'67. This "Mason and Dixon's Line" afterward became famous as the division between the slave and the free States.

† His father, George Calvert, the first Lord Baltimore, with this same design had attempted to plant a colony in Newfoundland. But having failed on account of the severity of the climate, he visited Virginia. When he found that the Catholics were there treated with great harshness, he returned to England, took out a grant of land, and bestowed upon it, in honor of the queen, the name Mary's land (*Terra Mariae*). Ere the patent had received the great seal of the king, Lord Baltimore died. His son, inheriting the father's noble and benevolent views, secured the grant himself, and carried out the philanthropic scheme.

‡ It is curious to observe how largely this country was peopled in its earlier days by refugees for religious faith. The Huguenots, the Puritans, the Walloons, the Quakers, the Presbyterians, the Catholics, the persecuted of every sect and creed, all flocked to this "home of the free".

ginia, since it gave to all freemen a voice in making the laws. An Assembly, called in accordance with this provision, passed (1649) the celebrated TOLERATION ACT, which secured to all Christians liberty to worship God according to the dictates of their own conscience. Maryland, like Rhode Island,\* became an asylum for the persecuted.

**Civil Wars.**—1. *Clayborne's Rebellion* (1635).—The Virginia colony claimed that Lord Baltimore's grant covered territory belonging to them. Clayborne, a member of the Jamestown council, was especially obstinate in the matter. He had already established two trading posts in Maryland, which he prepared to defend by force of arms. A bloody skirmish ensued, in which his party was beaten. He, himself, had fled to Virginia, on the eve of battle; but, being accused of treason, was sent to England for trial. He was, however, acquitted of this charge. About ten years afterward, he came back, raised a rebellion and drove Calvert, then governor of Maryland, out of the colony. The governor returned at last with a strong force, and Clayborne fled. This ended the contest.

2. *The Protestants and the Catholics.*—The Protestants, having obtained a majority in the Assembly, made a most ungrateful use of their power. They refused to acknowledge the hereditary rights of the proprietor, assailed his religion, excluded Catholics from the Assembly, and even declared them outside the protection of the law. Civil war ensued. For years, the victory alternated. At one time, two governments, one Protestant, the other Catholic, were sustained. In 1691, Lord Baltimore was entirely deprived of his rights as proprietor, and Maryland became a royal province. The

\* Two years before, Rhode Island had passed an act protecting every kind of religious faith and worship. Maryland extended protection to all forms of Christianity alone.

Church of England was established, and the Catholics were again disfranchised in the very province they had planted. In 1715, the fourth Lord Baltimore recovered the government, and religious toleration was restored. Maryland remained under this administration until the Revolution.

## XI., XII.—THE CAROLINAS.

**Settlement.**—Lord Clarendon and several other noblemen obtained (1663) from Charles II.\* a grant of a vast tract south of Virginia, which was called in honor of the king, Carolina. Two permanent settlements were soon made. 1. The ALBEMARLE† COLONY. This was a name given to a plantation already settled by people who had pushed through the wilderness from Virginia. A governor from their own number was appointed over them. They were then left in quiet to enjoy their liberties and forget the world.‡ 2. The CARTERET COLONY was established (1670) by English immigrants. They first sailed into the well-known waters where Ribaut anchored and the fort of Carolina was erected so long before. Landing, they began a settlement on the banks of the Ashley, but afterward removed to the “ancient groves covered with yellow jessamine”, which marked the site of the present city of Charleston. The growth of this colony was rapid from the first. Thither came ship-loads of Dutch from New York, dissatisfied with the English rule and attracted by the genial climate. The Huguenots (French Protest-

\* This in Latin is Carolus II.; hence the name Carolina. It was the same that Ribaut (p. 31) gave his fort, in honor of Charles IX. of France.

† Both colonies were named after prominent proprietors of the grant.

‡ Except when rent day came. Then they were called upon to pay to the English proprietors a half-penny per acre.

-ants), hunted from their homes, here found a southern welcome.\*

**The Grand Model** was a form of government for the colonies prepared by Lord Shaftesbury and the celebrated philosopher, John Locke. It was a magnificent scheme. The wilderness was to be divided into vast estates, with which hereditary titles were to be granted. But the model was aristocratic, while the people were democratic. It granted no rights of self-government, while the settlers came into the wilderness for the love of liberty. This was not the soil on which vain titles and empty pomp could flourish. To make the Grand Model a success, it would have been necessary to transform the log-cabin into a baronial castle, and the independent settlers into armed retainers. The attempt to introduce the scheme arousing violent opposition, it was at length abandoned.

**North and South Carolina Separated.**—The two colonies,—the northern, or ALBEMARLE, and the southern, or CARTERET,—being so remote from each other, had from the beginning separate governors, though they remained one province. There was constant friction between the settlers and the proprietors. The people were jealous. The proprietors were arbitrary. Rents, taxes, and rights were plentiful sources of irritation. Things kept on in this unsettled way until (1729) the discouraged proprietors ceded to the crown their right of government and seven eighths of the soil. The two col-

\* In Charleston alone there were at one time as many as 16,000 Huguenots. They added whole streets to the city. Their severe morality, marked charity, elegant manners, and thrifty habits made them a most desirable acquisition. They brought the mulberry and olive, and established magnificent plantations on the banks of the Cooper. They also introduced many choice varieties of pears, which still bear illustrious Huguenot names. Their descendants are eminently honorable, and have borne a proud part in the establishment of our Republic. "Of seven presidents who were at the head of the Congress of Philadelphia during the Revolution, three were of Huguenot parentage."

onies were separated, and they remained royal provinces until the Revolution.

### XIII.—GEORGIA.

**Settlement.**—The same year in which Washington was born (1732), this last colony of the famous thirteen which were to fight for independence under him, was planned. James O'glethorpe, a warm-hearted English officer, having conceived the idea of founding a refuge for debtors burdened by the severe laws of that time, naturally turned to America, even then the home of the oppressed. George II. granted him “in trust for the poor”, a tract of land which, in honor of the king, was called Georgia. Oglethorpe settled at Savannah in 1733.\*

A general interest was excited in England, and many charitable people gave liberally to promote the enterprise. More emigrants followed, including, as in the other colonies, many who sought religious or civil liberty.† The trustees limited the size of a man's farm, did not allow women to

\* He made peace with the Indians, conciliating them by presents and by his kindly disposition. One of the chiefs gave him in return a buffalo's skin with the head and feathers of an eagle painted on the inside of it. “The eagle,” said the chief, “signifies swiftness; and the buffalo, strength. The English are swift as a bird to fly over the vast seas, and as strong as a beast before their enemies. The eagle's feathers are soft and signify love; the buffalo's skin is warm and means protection; therefore love and protect our families.”

† The gentle Moravians and sturdy Scotch Highlanders were among the number, and proved a valuable acquisition to the colony. The former had fled hither from Austria, for “conscience sake.” Lutheran Salzburgers founded a colony in the pine forests and named it Ebenezer,—taking as their motto “Hitherto hath the Lord helped us.” When John Wesley, the founder of Methodism, came to America as a missionary with his brother Charles, he was greatly charmed with the fervent piety of this simple people. The celebrated George Whitfield afterward founded at Savannah an orphan asylum, which he supported by contributions from the immense audiences which his wonderful eloquence attracted. On one occasion sixty thousand were gathered to hear him, and his open-air meetings were often attended by from twenty thousand to forty thousand people.

inherit land, and forbade the importation of rum,\* or of slaves. These restrictions were irksome, and great discontent prevailed. At last, the trustees, wearied by the frequent complaints of the colonists, surrendered their charter to the crown. Georgia remained a royal province until the Revolution.

### INTER-COLONIAL WARS.

#### 1. KING WILLIAM'S WAR (1689-'97)

**Cause.**—War having broken out in Europe between England and France, their colonies in America took up the quarrel. The Indians of Canada and Maine aided the French, and the Iroquois assisted the English.

**Attacks upon the Colonists.**—In the depth of winter, war parties of the French and Indians, coming down on their snow-shoes from Canada through the forest, fell upon the exposed settlements of New York and New England, and committed horrible barbarities. Schenectady, unsuspecting† and defenseless, was attacked at midnight. Men, women, and children were dragged from their beds and tomahawked. The few who escaped, half-naked, made their way through the snow of that fearful night to Albany.‡

\* Rum was obtained in exchange for lumber in the West Indies. Hence this law prevented that trade and cut off a valuable source of profit.

† The garrison felt so secure that it is said they had placed at the gate two snow images for sentinels.

‡ The histories of the time abound in thrilling stories of Indian adventure. One day in March, 1697, Haverhill, Mass., was attacked. Mr. Dustin was at work in the field. Hurrying to his house, he brought out his seven children, and bidding them "run ahead", slowly retreated, keeping the Indians back with his gun. He thus brought off his little flock in safety. His wife, who was unable to escape with him, was dragged into captivity. The party who had captured Mrs. Dustin marched many days through the forest, and at length reached an island in the Merrimac. Here she resolved to escape. A white boy, who had been taken prisoner before, found out from his master, at Mrs. Dustin's request, how to strike a blow that would produce

**Attacks by the Colonists.**—Aroused by these scenes of savage ferocity, the colonists organized two expeditions; one under Phipps (soon after, Governor of Massachusetts, p. 60), against Port Royal, Acadia; and the other, a combined land and naval attack on Canada. The former was successful,



MR. DUSTIN DEFENDING HIS CHILDREN FROM THE SAVAGES.

and secured, it is said, plunder enough to pay the expenses of the expedition. The latter was a disastrous failure.

**Peace.**—The war lasted eight years. It was ended by the treaty of Ryswick (riz'wɪk), according to which, each party held the territory it had at the beginning of the struggle.

instant death, and how to take off a scalp. Having learned these facts, in the night she awoke the boy and her nurse, and arranged their parts. The task was soon done. Seizing each a tomahawk, they killed ten of the sleeping Indians; only one escaped. She then scalped the dead bodies, in order to prove her story when she should reach home, and hastened to the bank, where, finding a canoe, they descended the river and soon rejoined her family.

## 2. QUEEN ANNE'S WAR (1702-'13).

**Cause.**—England having declared war against France and Spain, hostilities broke out between their colonies. The Five Nations had made a treaty with the French, and so took no part in the contest. Their neutrality protected New York from invasion. Consequently, the brunt of the war fell on New England.

**Attacks upon the Colonists.**—The New England frontier was again desolated.\* Remote settlements were abandoned. The people betook themselves to palisaded houses, and worked their farms with their guns always at hand.

**Attacks by the Colonists.**—1. *It the South.*—South Carolina made a fruitless expedition against her old enemies at St. Augustine (1702).†

2. *It the North.*—Port Royal was again wrested from the French by a combined force of English and colonial troops.

\* On the last night of February, 1704, a party of about three hundred and fifty French and Indians reached a pine forest near Deerfield, Mass. The snow lay four feet deep on the level, but it was covered by a thick crust, while the drifts reached nearly to the top of the palisades of the town. The stealthy invaders, watching an opportunity, skulked about till the unfaithful sentinels deserted the morning watch, when they rushed upon the defenseless slumberers, who awoke from their dreams to death or captivity. Leaving the blazing village with forty-seven dead bodies to be consumed amid the wreck, they then started back with their train of one hundred and twelve captives. The horrors of that march through the wilderness can never be told. The groan of helpless exhaustion, or the wail of suffering childhood, was instantly stilled by the pitiless tomahawk. Mrs. Williams, the feeble wife of the minister, had remembered her Bible in the midst of surprise and comforted herself with its promises, till, her strength failing, she commended her five captive children to God, and bent to the savage blow of the war-ax. One of her daughters grew up in captivity, embraced the Catholic faith, and became the wife of a chief. Years after, she visited her friends in Deerfield. The whole village joined in a fast for her deliverance, but her heart loved best her own Mohawk children, and she went back to the fires of her Indian wigwam.

† Four years after, the French and Spanish in Havana sent a fleet against Charleston. The people, however, valiantly defended themselves, and soon drove off their assailants.

In honor of the queen, its name was changed to Annapolis. Another expedition sailed against Quebec, but many of the ships were dashed upon the rocks in the St. Lawrence, and nearly one thousand men perished. Thus ended the second attempt to conquer Canada.

**Peace.**—The war lasted eleven years. It was ended by the treaty of Utrecht (ū'trĕkt), according to which, Acadia was ceded to England.

### 3. KING GEORGE'S WAR\* (1744-'48).

**Capture of Louisburg.**—War having again broken out between England and France, the flame was soon kindled in the new world. The only event of importance was the capture of Louisburg† on the island of Cape Breton, by a combined force of English and colonial troops. The latter did most of the fighting, but the former took the glory and the

\* This war was preceded by what is known as the "SPANISH WAR", which grew out of difficulties then existing between England and Spain. It was marked by no important event in the colonies. Governor Oglethorpe invested (1740) St. Augustine with a force of two thousand men, but the strength of the Spanish garrison, and the loss by sickness, caused the attempt to be abandoned. The Spaniards, in their turn, sent (1742) an expedition against Georgia. By means of a letter which Governor Oglethorpe caused to fall into the hands of the Spaniards, they were made to believe that he expected large reinforcements. Being frightened, they burned the fort they had captured, and fled in haste. The colonies, also, furnished about four thousand men for an expedition against the Spanish settlements in the West Indies; but only a few hundred returned from this disastrous enterprise.

† Louisburg was called the "Gibraltar of America". Its fortifications were extensive, and cost upward of \$5,000,000. The siege was conducted in the most unscientific way, the colonial troops laughing at military terms and discipline. When the place was captured, they were themselves astonished at what they had done. The achievement called forth great rejoicing over the country, especially in New England, and had an influence on the Revolutionary War, thirty years after. Colonel Gridley, who planned General Pepperell's batteries in the siege, laid out the American intrenchments on Bunker Hill. The same old drums that beat the triumphal entrance of the New Englanders into Louisburg, June 17, 1745, beat at Bunker Hill, June 17, 1775. "When General Gage was erecting intrenchments on Boston Neck, the provincials sneeringly remarked that his mud walls were nothing compared to the stone walls of old Louisburg."

booty. Peace being made in 1748 by the treaty of Aix-la-Chapelle (äks lä shä pĕl'), England gave back Louisburg to the French. The boundaries between the French and English colonies were left undecided, and so the germ of a new war remained.

#### 4. FRENCH AND INDIAN WAR (1754-63).

**Cause.**—The English occupied at this time a narrow strip along the coast, one thousand miles in length. It was like a string to the great bow of the French territory which reached around from Quebec to New Orleans. Both nations claimed the region west of the Alleghany Mountains, along the Ohio River. The three previous inter-colonial wars had engendered bitter hatred, and occasions of quarrel were abundant. The French had over sixty military posts guarding the long line of their possessions. They seized the English surveyors along the Ohio.\* They broke up a British post on the Miami (mĕ á' mĕ).† They built a fort at Presque Isle (preskĕl'), near the present town of Erie, Penn.; another, Fort le Bœuf (lĕh bĕf'), at the present town of Waterford; and a third, Fort Venango (vĕ năng'gō), about twelve miles south, on French Creek. These encroachments awakened the liveliest solicitude on the part of the colonists.

**Washington's Journey.**—Dinwiddie, Lieutenant-Governor of Virginia, accordingly sent a message by George Washington, then a young man of twenty-one, to the French commander of these forts, asking their removal. Washington, the very day he received his credentials, set out on his

\* The claims of the real proprietors, the Indians, were overlooked by both the English and the French. The Indians, feeling this, sent to the agent of the Ohio Company the pertinent query, "Where is the Indian's land? The English claim all on one side of the river, the French all on the other. Where does our land lie?"

† The Indian allies of the French having captured the Miami chief who defended his English friends, killed and ate him, in true savage style.

perilous journey through the wilderness from Williamsburg to Lake Erie. He found the French officer at Fort Venango loud and boastful. At Fort le Bœuf, the com man dânt', St. Pierre (săñ pe êr'), treated him with great respect; but, like a true soldier, refused to discuss theories, and declared



AN INCIDENT OF WASHINGTON'S RETURN.

himself under orders which he should obey. It was clear that France was determined to hold the territory explored by the heroic La Salle and Marquette. The shore in front of the fort was even then lined with canoes ready for an intended expedition down the river. Washington's return through the wilderness, a distance of four hundred miles, was full of peril.\* At last, he reached home unharmed, and delivered St. Pierre's reply.

\* The streams were swollen. The snow was falling and freezing as it fell. The horses gave out, and he was forced to proceed on foot. With only one companion, he quitted the usual path, and, with the compass as his guide, struck boldly out through the forest. An Indian, lying in wait, fired at him only a few paces off, but

**War Opens.**—Early the next spring, the French, at the fork of the Monongahela and the Alleghany, drove off a party of English traders and erected a fort, which was called Duquesne (du kān'). Soon, among the blackened stumps, corn and barley were growing on the present site of Pittsburgh. In the meantime, a regiment of Virginia troops, under Colonel Frye, Washington being second in command, had been sent to occupy this important point. Learning that the French had anticipated them, Washington hastened forward with a reconnoitering party. Jumonville (zhōō mōn vēl'), who was hiding among the rocks with a company of French troops, waiting an opportunity to attack him, was himself surprised and defeated.\* On the death of Colonel Frye, soon after, Washington assumed command and collected the troops at the Great Meadows, behind a rude stockade, aptly named FORT NECESSITY. Here he was attacked by a large force of French and Indians, and, after a severe conflict, was compelled to capitulate.

**The Five Objective Points of the War.**—1. FORT DUCESNE was the key to the region west of the Alleghanies, and so long as the French held it, Virginia and Pennsylvania were exposed to Indian attacks. 2. The possession of LOUISBURG and ACADIA threatened New England, while it gave control over the Newfoundland fisheries. French privateers harbored there, darted out and captured English ships, and then returned where they were safe from pursuit. 3. CROWN POINT and TICONDEROGA controlled the route to

missing, was captured. Attempting to cross the Alleghany on a rude raft, they were caught between large masses of ice floating down the rapid current of the mid-channel. Washington thrust out his pole to check the speed, but was jerked into the foaming water. Swimming to an island, he barely saved his life. Fortunately, in the morning the river was frozen over, and he escaped on the ice.

\* Washington's word of command to "fire!" upon that skulking foe (May 28, 1754), was the opening of the campaign. Washington himself, it is said, fired the first gun of that long and bloody war.

Canada by the way of Lake George and Lake Champlain, and also offered a safe starting-point for French expeditions against New York and New England. 4. NIAGARA lay on the portage between Lake Erie and Lake Ontario, and thus protected the great fur trade of the upper lakes and the West. 5. QUÉBEC being the strongest fortification in Canada, gave control of the St. Lawrence, and largely decided the possession of that province.

We thus see why these points were so persistently attacked by the English, and so obstinately defended by the French. We shall speak of them in order.

1. **Fort Duquesne.**—*The First Expedition* (1755) was commanded by General Braddock, Washington acting as an aid-de-camp. The general was a British officer, proud and conceited. Washington warned him of the dangers of savage warfare, but his suggestions were received with contempt.\* The column arrived within ten miles of the fort, marching along the Monongahela in regular array, drums beating and colors flying. Suddenly, in ascending a little slope, with a deep ravine and thick underbrush on each side, they came upon the Indians lying in ambush. The terrible war-whoop resounded on every hand. The British regulars huddled together, and, frightened, fired by platoons, at random, against rocks and trees. The Virginia troops alone sprung into the forest and fought the savages in Indian style. Washington seemed every-where present. An Indian chief with his braves specially singled him out.† Four balls passed through his clothes. Two horses were shot under him. Braddock was mortally wounded and borne from the

\* "The Indians," said Braddock, "may frighten continental troops, but they can make no impression on the king's regulars!"

† Fifteen years after, this old Indian chief came "a long way" to see the Virginia officer at whom he fired a rifle fifteen times without hitting him, during the Monongahela fight. Washington never received a wound in battle.

field. At last, when the colonial troops were nearly all killed, the regulars turned and fled disgracefully, abandoning every thing to the foe. Washington covered their flight and saved the wreck of the army from pursuit.

*Second Expedition (1758).*—General Forbes led the second expedition, Washington commanding the Virginia troops. The general lost so much time in building roads that, in November, he was fifty miles from the fort. A council of war decided to give up the attempt. But Washington receiving news of the weakness of the French garrison, urged a forward movement. He himself led the advance guard, and by his vigilance dispelled all danger of Indian surprise. The French fired the fort, and fled at his approach. As the flag of England floated out over the ruined ramparts, this gateway of the West was named Pittsburgh.\*

**2. Acadia and Louisburg.**—1. *Acadia.*—Scarcely had the war commenced, when an attack was made on Acadia. The French forts at the head of the Bay of Fundy were quickly taken, and the entire region east of the Penobscot fell into the hands of the English.†

2. *Louisburg (1757).*—General Loudoun collected an army at Halifax for an attack on Louisburg. After spending all summer in drilling his troops, “he gave up the attempt on

\* This was in honor of William Pitt, prime minister of England, whose true friendship for the colonies was warmly appreciated in America. He came into power in 1758, and from that time the war took on a different aspect. (Barnes' Gen. Hist. p. 534.)

† This victory was disgraced by an act of heartless cruelty. The Acadians were a simple-minded, rural people. They readily gave up their arms and meekly submitted to their conquerors. But the English authorities, knowing their sympathy with the French, drove old and young on board the ships at the point of the bayonet, and distributed them among the colonies. Families were broken up, their homes burned, and the broken-hearted Acadians met every-where only insult and abuse. Longfellow's “Evangeline” pathetically describes the misfortunes of these exiles. (Barnes' Popular History, p. 78.) Parkman, in Harper's Magazine, Nov., 1884, gives another version, and claims that the expulsion was justified on the part of the English and the colonists.

learning that the French fleet contained one more ship than his own!" The next year, Generals Amherst and Wolfe captured the city after a severe bombardment, and took possession of the entire island.\*

**3. Crown Point and Ticonderoga.**—1. *Battle of Lake George.*—About the time of Braddock's expedition, another was made against Crown Point. The French under Dieskau † (dēs'kow) were met near the head of Lake George.‡ Fortunately, General Johnson, being slightly wounded, early in the action retired to his tent, whereupon, General Lyman, with his provincial troops, regained the battle then nearly lost. This victory following closely on the heels of Braddock's disaster, excited great joy. Johnson was given a baronetcy and \$25,000; Lyman, the real victor, received nothing. This battle ended the attempt to take Crown Point. Johnson loitered away the summer in building a fort near by, which he called William Henry.§ In the fall, he returned to Albany and disbanded his troops.

2. *Attack on Ticonderoga.*—On a calm Sunday morning, about four months before the fall of FORT DUQUESNE, a thousand boats full of soldiers, with waving flags and strains

\* Abandoning Louisburg, the English made Halifax, as it is to-day, their rendezvous in that region.

† The brave Dieskau was severely wounded. In the pursuit, a soldier found him leaning against a stump. As he fumbled for his watch to propitiate his enemy, the soldier, thinking him to be searching for his pistol, shot him.

‡ Johnson, the English commander, received word of the approach of the enemy, and sent out Colonel Williams with twelve hundred men to stop them. In the skirmish, Williams was killed. He was the real founder of Williams College, having by his will, made while on his way to battle, bequeathed a sum to found a free school for Western Massachusetts.

§ Two years after, Montcalm, the new French general, swept down from Canada and captured this fort with its garrison, although Webb was at Fort Edward, fourteen miles below, with six thousand men lying idly in camp. The victory is noted for an illustration of savage treachery. The English had been guaranteed a safe escort to Fort Edward. But they had scarcely left the fort when the Indians fell upon them to plunder and to slaughter. In vain did the French officers peril their lives to save their captives from the lawless tomahawk. "Kill me," cried Montcalm,

of martial music, swept down Lake George to attack Ticonderoga. General Abercrombie ordered an assault before his artillery came up, and while the battle raged lay hid away in the rear. A disastrous repulse was the result.\*

3. *Capture of both Forts.*—The next year (1759), at the approach of General Amherst with a large army, both Ticonderoga and Crown Point were evacuated.

4. **Niagara.**—1. About the time of Braddock's expedition, General Shirley marched to capture Niagara. But reaching Oswego and learning of that disastrous defeat, he was discouraged. He simply built a fort and came home.†

2. Nothing further was done toward the capture of this important post for four years, when it was invested by General Prideaux (prid'ō).‡ In spite of desperate attempts made to relieve the garrison, it was at last compelled to surrender (1759). New York was thus extended to Niagara River, and the West was secured to the English.

5. **Quebec (1759).**—The same summer in which Niagara, Crown Point, and Ticonderoga§ were occupied by the English, General Wolfe anchored with a large fleet and eight thousand land troops in front of Quebec. Opposed to him was the vigilant French general, Montcalm, with a command

in desperation, "but spare the English, who are under my protection." The Indian fury, however, was implacable, and the march of the prisoners to Fort Edward became a flight for life.

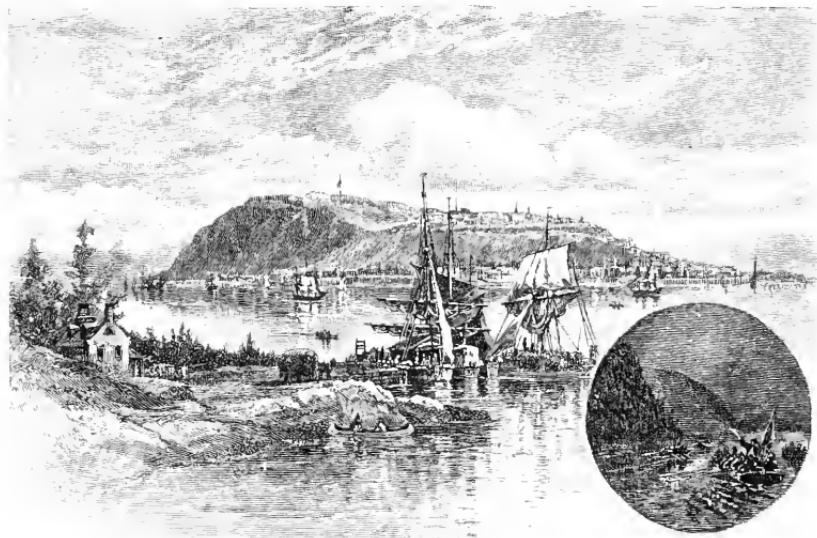
\* While the main army was delaying after this failure, Colonel Bradstreet obtained permission to go against Fort Frontenac, on the present site of Kingston. Crossing the lake, he captured the fort and a large quantity of stores intended for Fort Duquesne. The loss disheartened the garrison of the latter place, frightened off their Indian allies, and did much to cause its evacuation on the approach of the English.

† The next year that indefatigable general, Montcalm, crossed the lake from Canada and captured this fort with its garrison and a large amount of public stores.

‡ Prideaux was accidentally killed during the siege, but his successor, Johnson, satisfactorily carried out his plans.

§ It was expected that the two armies engaged in the capture of these forts would join Wolfe in the attack on Quebec; but, for various reasons, they made no attempt to do so, and Wolfe was left to perform his task alone.

equal to his own. The English cannon easily destroyed the lower city next the river, but the citadel being on higher ground, was far out of their reach. The bank of the river,



QUEBEC IN EARLY TIMES.

for miles a high craggy wall, bristled with cannon at every landing-place. For months, Wolfe lingered before the city, vainly seeking some feasible point of attack. Carefully reconnoitering the precipitous bluff above the city, his sharp eyes at length discovered a narrow path winding among the rocks to the top, and he determined to lead his army up this ascent.\* To distract the enemy's attention, he took his men several miles up the river. Thence dropping down silently

\* General Wolfe was a great admirer of the poet Gray. As he went the rounds for final inspection on the beautiful starlight evening before the attack, he remarked to those in the boat with him, "I would rather be the author of 'The Elegy in a Country Church-yard', than to have the glory of beating the French to-morrow"; and amid the rippling of the water and the dashing of the oars, he repeated:

"The boast of heraldry, the pomp of power,  
And all that beauty, all that wealth e'er gave,  
Await alike the inevitable hour;  
The paths of glory lead but to the grave."

by night with the ebb-tide, they landed, clambered up the steep cliff,\* quickly dispersed the guard, and, at day-break, stood arrayed in order of battle on the Plains of Abraham. Montcalm, astonished at the audacity of the attempt, could scarcely believe it possible. When convinced of its truth, he at once made an impetuous attack. Wolfe's veterans held their fire until the French were close at hand, then poured upon them rapid, steady volleys. The enemy soon wavered. Wolfe, placing himself at the head, now ordered a bayonet charge. Already twice wounded, he still pushed forward. A third ball struck him. He was carried to the rear. "They run! They run!" exclaimed the officer on whom he leaned. "Who run?" he faintly gasped. "The French," was the reply. "Now God be praised, I die happy," murmured the expiring hero. Montcalm, too, was fatally wounded as he was vainly trying to rally the fugitives. On being told by the surgeon that he could not live more than twelve hours, he answered, "So much the better. I shall not see the surrender of Quebec."

Five days afterward (September 18, 1759), the city and garrison capitulated.

**Close of the War.† Peace.**—The next year, an attempt was made to re-capture Quebec. But a powerful fleet arrived from England in time to raise the siege. A large army marched upon Montreal, and Canada soon submitted. The English flag now waved over the continent, from the Arctic Ocean to the Mississippi. Peace was made at Paris in 1763. Spain ceded Florida to England. France gave up to En-

\* Although Wolfe rose from a sick-bed to lead his troops, he was the first man to land. The shore was lined with French sentinels. A captain who understood French and had been assigned this duty, answered the challenge of the sentinel near the landing, and thus warded off the first danger of alarm.

† The five points which were especially sought by the English were now all captured. Canada itself, worn out, impoverished, and almost in famine, because of the long war, was ready for peace.

gland all her territory east of the Mississippi, except two small islands south of Newfoundland, retained as fishing stations; while, to Spain she ceded New Orleans, and all her territory west of the Mississippi.

**Pontiac's War.**—The French traders and missionaries had won the hearts of the Indians. When the more haughty English came to take possession of the western forts, great discontent was aroused. Pön'ti ac, a chief of the Ottawas, Philip-like, formed a confederation of the tribes against the common foe. It was secretly agreed to fall upon all the British posts at once. Eight forts were thus surprised and captured.\* Thousands of persons fled from their homes to avoid the scalping-knife. At last, the Indians, disagreeing among themselves, deserted the alliance, and a treaty was signed. Pontiac, still revengeful, fled to the hunting-grounds of the Illinois. There he was murdered by a Peorian Indian, while endeavoring to incite another attack.

**Effects of the French and Indian War.**—During this war, the colonists spent \$16,000,000, and England repaid only \$5,000,000. The Americans lost thirty thousand men, and suffered the untold horrors of Indian barbarity. The taxes sometimes equaled two thirds the income of the tax-payer;

\* Various stratagems were employed to accomplish their designs. At Maumee, a squaw lured forth the commander by imploring aid for an Indian woman dying outside the fort. Once without, he was at the mercy of the ambushed savages. At Mackinaw, hundreds of Indians had gathered. Commencing a game at ball, one party drove the other, as if by accident, toward the fort. The soldiers were attracted to watch the game. At length, the ball was thrown over the pickets, and the Indians jumping after it, began the terrible butchery. The commander, Major Henry, writing in his room, heard the war-cry and the shrieks of the victims, and, rushing to his window, beheld the savage work of the tomahawk and the scalping-knife. Amid untold perils, he himself escaped. At Detroit, the plot was betrayed by a squaw, and when the chiefs were admitted to their proposed council for "brightening the chain of friendship", they found themselves surrounded by an armed garrison. Pontiac was allowed to escape. Two days after, he commenced a siege which lasted several months. In payment of the supplies for his army, he issued birch-bark notes signed with the figure of an otter. These primitive "government bonds" were promptly paid when due.

yet they were levied by their own representatives, and they did not murmur. The men of different colonies and diverse ideas fought shoulder to shoulder, and many sectional jealousies were allayed. They learned to think and act independently of the mother country, and thus came to know their strength. Democratic ideas had taken root, legislative bodies had been called, troops raised, and supplies voted, not by England, but by themselves. They had become fond of liberty. They knew their rights and dared maintain them. When they voted money, they kept the purse in their own hands.

The treatment of the British officers also helped to unite the colonists. They made sport of the awkward provincial soldiers. The best American officers were often thrust aside to make place for young British subalterns. But, in spite of sneers, Washington, Gates, Montgomery, Stark, Arnold, Morgan, Putnam, all received their training, and learned how, when the time came, to fight even British regulars.

## 15. COLONIAL CIVILIZATION.\*

There were now thirteen colonies. They numbered nearly 2,000,000 people. The largest city was Philadelphia, which contained about twenty-five thousand inhabitants. There were slaves in all the colonies, those at the North being chiefly house servants. Three forms of government existed—charter, proprietary, and royal. Massachusetts, Rhode Island, and Connecticut had charter governments. Maryland and Pennsylvania (with Delaware) were proprietary—that is, their proprietors governed them. Georgia, Virginia, New Hampshire, New York, New Jersey, and the Carolinas were directly subject to the crown. The colonies were all Protestant. The intolerant religious spirit of early days had moderated, and there had been a gradual assimilation of manners and customs. The people had become Americans.

In accordance with the customs of the age, the laws were severe. Thus in New England, at one time, there were twelve, and in Virginia seventeen, offenses punishable by death. The affairs of private life were regulated by law in a manner that would not now be endured. At Hartford, for example, the ringing of the watchman's bell in the morning was the signal for every one to rise; and in Massachusetts a scold was sometimes gagged and placed near her door, while for other minor offenses the stocks and pillory were used.

\* Read Barnes' Popular History of the United States, Chap. 4, Colonial Life.

Social prejudices brought over from England still survived. Even in New England, official positions were monopolized by a few leading families, and often descended from father to son. The catalogues of Harvard and Yale were long arranged according to the family rank of the students.



A SCOLD GAGGED.

Several colleges had been established,—Harvard (1636), William and Mary (1693), Yale (1700), Princeton (1746), University of Pennsylvania (1749), Columbia (1754), Brown University (1764), Dartmouth (1769), and Rutgers (1770). Educational interests, however, were not fostered by the English government. Only one donation was given to found a college in the colonies—that of William and Mary, an institution named in honor of these sovereigns.

Agriculture was the main dependence of the people, though manufactures, even at this early period, received much attention at the north. Hats, paper, shoes, household furniture, farming utensils, and the coarser kinds of cutlery were made to some extent. Cloth weaving had been introduced, though most thrifty people dressed in homespun. It is said of Mrs. Washington that she kept sixteen spinning-wheels

running. Commerce had steadily increased—principally, however, as coast trade, in consequence of the oppressive laws of Great Britain. The daring fishermen of New England already pushed their whaling crafts far into the icy regions of the north. Money was very scarce. In 1635, musket-bullets were made to pass in place of farthings, the law providing that not more than twelve should be given in one payment. Trade was generally by barter.

The first printing-press was set up at Cambridge, in 1639. Most of the books of that day were collections of sermons. The first permanent newspaper, *The Boston News Letter*, was published in 1704. In 1750, there were only seven newspapers. *The Federal Orrery*, the first daily paper, was not issued till 1792. There was a public Library in New York, from which books were loaned at four and a half pence per week.

The usual mode of travel was on foot or horseback. People journeyed largely by means of coasting sloops. The trip from New York to Philadelphia occupied three days if the wind was fair. There was a wagon running bi-weekly from New York across New Jersey. Conveyances were put on in 1766, which made the unprecedented time of two days from New York to Philadelphia. They were, therefore, termed "flying machines".

The first stage route was between Providence and Boston, taking two days for the trip. A post-office system had been effected by the combination of the colonies, which united the whole country. Benjamin Franklin was one of the early postmasters-general. He made a grand tour of the country in his chaise, perfecting and maturing the plan. His daughter Sally accompanied him, riding sometimes by his side in the chaise, and sometimes on the extra horse which he had with him. It took five months to make the rounds which could now be performed in as many days. A mail was started in 1672, between New York and Boston, by way of Hartford, according to the contract the round trip being made monthly. (See p. 304.)

**Manners and Customs.**—The colonists had brought with them the ideas and tastes of the mother country, and these long survived in spite of the leveling tendencies and the free spirit of the new world. Distinctions of dress, to mark the higher and the lower ranks of society, as in Europe, were sedulously preserved throughout even democratic New England. Calf-skin shoes, up to the time of the Revolution, were the exclusive property of the gentry; the servants wore coarse "neat's leather". Farmers, mechanics, laborers, and working-men generally were clothed in red or green baize jackets, leather or striped ticking breeches, and a leather apron. On Sundays and holidays, a white shirt took the place of the checked one; the stiff, hard leather breeches were greased and blacked, and the heavy cow-hide shoes, home-made, were set off by huge brass buckles. The common laborer, even after independence was achieved, received only about "two shillings" per day, and, in rare cases, "two-and-six-pence".

Hired women wore short gowns of green baize and petticoats of linsey-woolsey. Their yearly wages never exceeded "ten pounds".

The colonial gentleman, however, was gay in his morning costume of silk or velvet cap and dressing-gown, and his evening attire of blue, green, or purple flowered silk or handsomely embroidered velvet, enriched with gold or silver lace, buttons, and knee-buckles. Wide lace ruffles fell over his hands; his street cloak glittered with gold-lace; while a gold-headed cane, and a gold or silver snuff-box were indispensable signs of his social position.

*The New England* people were strict in morals. Governor Winthrop prohibited cards and gaming-tables. A man was whipped for shooting fowl on Sunday. No

man was allowed to keep tavern who did not bear an excellent character and possess property. The names of drunkards were posted up in the ale-houses, and the keepers forbidden to sell them liquor. By order of the colony of Connecticut, no person under twenty years of age could use any tobacco without a physician's order; and no one was allowed to use it oftener than once a day, and then not within ten miles of any house.

All conduct was shaped by a literal interpretation of the Scriptures. The ministers had, at first, almost entire control. A church reproof was the heaviest



NEW ENGLAND KITCHEN SCENE.

punishment, and knotty points in theology caused the bitterest discussions. Articles of dress were limited or regulated by law. No person whose estate did not exceed £200, could wear "gold or silver lace, or any lace above 2s. per yard". The "select-men" were required to take note of the "apparel" of the people, especially their "ribbands and great boots". Only the gentry, including ministers and their wives, received the prefix *Mr.* and *Mrs.* to their names. Others, above the rank of servant, were called *Groomman* and *Goodwife*.

In the early Plymouth days, every house opened on Sunday morning at the tap of the drum. The men and the women, the former armed to the teeth, assembled in front of the captain's house. Three abreast, they marched to the meeting-house, where every man set down his musket within easy reach. The elders

and deacons took their seats in front of the preacher's desk, facing the congregation. The old men, the young men, and the young women each had their separate place. The boys were perched on the pulpit-stair or in the galleries, and were kept in order by a constable. The light came straggling through the little diamond-shaped window-panes, weirdly gilding the wolf-heads which hung upon the walls—trophies of the year's conquests. The services began with the long prayer, and was followed by reading and expounding of the Scriptures, a psalm—lined by one of the ruling elders—and the sermon. Instrumental music was absolutely proscribed, as condemned by Amos v. 23. The sermon was often three or four hours long, and at the end of each hour the sexton turned the hour-glass which stood upon the desk. Woe to the youngster whose eyelids drooped in slumber! The ever-vigilant constables, with their wands tipped on one extremity with the foot, and on the other with the tail of a hare, brought the heavier end down on the nodding head. The care-worn matron who was betrayed into a like offense, was gently reminded of her duty by a touch on the forehead with the softer end of the same stick. After the sermon, came the weekly contribution; the congregation, marching to the front, and depositing their offerings in the money-box held by one of the elders. After dismissal, the people returned home in as orderly a way as they came.

*The Middle Colonies.*—The manners of the New York people were essentially Dutch. Many customs then inaugurated still remain in vogue. Among these is that of New Year's Day visiting, of which General Washington said, "New York will in process of years gradually change its ancient customs and manners, but whatever changes take place, never forget the cordial observance of New Year's Day." To the Dutch we owe our Christmas visit of Santa Claus, colored eggs at Easter, doughnuts, crullers, and New Year's cookies.

The Dutch mansion was built, usually, of brick. Its gable-end, receding in regular steps from the base of the roof to the summit, faced the street. The front-door was decorated with a huge brass knocker, burnished daily. While the Connecticut mistress spun, wove, and stored her household linens in crowded chests, the Dutch matron scrubbed and scoured her polished floor and wood-work. Every family had a cow that fed in a common pasture at the end of the town, and their tinkling bells, as they came and went, of their own accord, at night and morning, proclaimed the milking-hour. The happy burghers breakfasted at dawn, dined at eleven, and retired at sunset. On dark evenings, as a protection for belated wanderers, lighted candles were placed in the front windows.

Along the Hudson, the great patroons, supported by their immense estates and crowds of tenants, kept up the customs of the best European society of the day.

Philadelphia was not only the largest city in the United States, but it was famous for its flagged side-walks—then a rare luxury in any city, the regularity of its streets, and the elegance of its brick and stone residences. The trees bordering the carriage-ways and the gardens and orchards about the houses made it just such a "fair Greene country town" as Penn wished it to be.

*The Southern Colonists* differed widely from the northern in habits and style of living. In place of thickly-settled towns and villages, they had large plantations, and were surrounded by a numerous household of servants. The negro quarters formed a hamlet apart, with its gardens and poultry yards. An estate in those days was a little empire. The planter had among his slaves men of every trade, and they made most of the articles needed for common use upon the plantation.

There were large sheds for curing tobacco, and mills for grinding corn and wheat. The tobacco was put up and consigned directly to England. The flour of the Mount Vernon estate was packed under the eye of Washington himself, and we are told that barrels of flour bearing his brand, passed in the West India market without inspection.

Up the Ashley and the Cooper, there were remains of the only *bona fide* nobility ever established on our soil. There the descendants of the landgraves, who received their titles in accordance with the Grand Model (p. 75), occupied their manorial dwellings. Along the banks of the James and the Rappahannock, the plantation often passed from father to son, according to the law of entail.

The heads of these great southern families lived like lords, keeping their packs of choice hunting dogs, and their stables of blooded horses, and rolling to church or town in their coach and six, with outriders on horseback. Their spacious mansions were sometimes built of imported brick. Within, the grand staircases, the mantels, and the wainscot reaching in a quaint fashion from floor to ceiling, were of solid mahogany, elaborately carved and paneled. The sideboards shone with gold and silver plate, and the tables were loaded with the luxuries of the old world. Negro servants thronged about, ready to perform every task. All labor was done by slaves, it being considered degrading for a white man to work. Even the superintendence of the plantation and slaves was generally committed to overseers, while the master dispensed a generous hospitality, and occupied himself with social and political life.

**Education.**—1. *The Eastern Colonies.*—Next to their religion, the Puritans prized education. When Boston was but six years old, \$2,000 were appropriated to the seminary at Cambridge, now known as Harvard University. Some years after, each family gave a peck of corn or a shilling in cash for its support. Common schools had already been provided, and in 1647, every town was ordered to have a free school, and, if it contained over one hundred families, a grammar school. In Connecticut, any town that did not keep a school for three months in the year was liable to a fine. In 1700, ten ministers, having previously so agreed, brought together a number of books, each saying as he laid down his gift, "I give these books for founding a college in Connecticut." This was the beginning of Yale College—named from Governor Yale, who befriended it most generously. It was first established at Saybrook, but in 1716 was removed to New Haven.

The "town-meetings", as they were styled, were of inestimable value in cultivating democratic ideas. The young and old, rich and poor, here met on a perfect equality for the discussion of all local questions. In Hartford, every freeman who neglected to attend the town-meeting was fined sixpence, unless he had a good excuse.

2. *The Middle Colonies* already had many schools scattered through the towns. In New York, during the Dutch period, it was customary for the school-master, in order to increase his earnings, to ring the church-bell, dig graves, and act as chorister and town-clerk. In the English period, some of the schools were kept by Dutch masters, who taught English as an accomplishment. As early as 1702, an act was passed for the "Encouragement of a Grammar Free School in the City of New York". In 1795, George Clinton laid the foundation of the common-school system of the State, and within three years nearly 60,000 children were receiving instruction. At Lewiston, Del., is said to have been established the first girls' school in the colonies. The first school in Pennsylvania was started about 1683, where "reading, writing, and casting accounts" were taught for eight English shillings per annum. The Orrery

invented by Dr. Rittenhouse, in 1768, is still preserved in Princeton College. No European institution had its equal.

Churches were established by the various denominations. The Swedes had a meeting-house erected even before the landing of Penn. Ministers' salaries were met in different ways, generally with produce—wheat, corn, beans, bacon, wood, etc. In New York, the Dutch dominie was paid sometimes in wampum. The dominie of Albany on one occasion received one hundred and fifty beaver skins.

3. *The Southern Colonies* met with great difficulties in their efforts to establish schools. Though Virginia boasts of the second oldest college, yet her English governors bitterly opposed the progress of education. Governor Berkeley, of whose haughty spirit we have already heard, said, "I thank God there are no free schools nor printing-presses here, and I hope we shall not have them these hundred years." The restrictions upon the press were so great that no newspaper was published in Virginia until 1736, and that was controlled by the government. Free schools were established in Maryland in 1696, and a free school in Charleston in 1712. Private schools were early established by the colonists in every neighborhood.

A farm of one hundred acres was set apart by law for each clergyman, and also a portion of the "best and first gathered corn" and tobacco. Absence from church was fined. In Georgia, masters were compelled to send their slaves to church, under a penalty of £5.

#### CONTEMPORARY EUROPEAN SOVEREIGNS.

ENGLAND.	FRANCE.	GERMANY.	SPAIN.
James I.....1603			Philip III.....1598
Charles I.....1625	Louis XIII ...1610	Matthias.....1612	Philip IV.....1621
Com'nwealth .1649	Louis XIV....1643	Ferdinand II..1619	
Charles II.....1660		Ferdinand III,1637	
James II.....1685		Leopold I.....1658	Charles II.....1665
William and Mary.....1689			
Anne.....1702		Joseph I... ....1705	Frederick I....1701
George I.....1714	Louis XV.. .1715	Charles VI....1711	William I.... 1713
George II.....1727			
George III.....1760		Charles VII...1742	Frederick II ..1740
		Franeis I.....1745	
	Louis XVI....1774	Joseph II.....1765	
		Leopold II....1790	William II .. 1786
	Republie... ....1793	Francis II.....1792	William III...1797

#### CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

	PAGE
1607. Jamestown founded by the London Company. First permanent English settlement in America, May 23 . . . . .	38, 46
1609. Virginia received its second charter, June 2 . . . . .	48
1610. "Starving Time" in Virginia . . . . .	48
1612. Virginia received its third charter, March 22 . . . . .	49

	PAGE
1613. Pocahontas married Rolfe, April . . . . .	49
Settlement of New York by the Dutch . . . . .	65
1614. Smith explored the New England Coast . . . . .	53
1615. Culture of tobacco commenced in Virginia . . . . .	50
1619. First Colonial Assembly, July 30 . . . . .	49
Slavery introduced in the English colony at Jamestown . . . . .	50
1620. Pilgrims landed at Plymouth. First permanent English settlement in New England, December 21 . . . . .	53
1622. Indian massacre in Virginia, March 22 . . . . .	51
New Hampshire granted to Gorges and Mason, August 10 . . . . .	60
1623. New Hampshire settled at Dover and Portsmouth . . . . .	61
1629. Charter granted to Massachusetts Bay Colony, March 4 . . . . .	56
New patent for New Hampshire granted to Mason, November 7 . . . . .	61
1630. First house built in Boston, under Governor Winthrop, July . . . . .	56
1632. Maryland granted to Lord Baltimore, June 20 . . . . .	72
1634. Maryland settled at St. Mary's . . . . .	72
1633-'36. Connecticut settled at Windsor, Hartford, and Wethersfield . . . . .	61
1635. Clayborne's rebellion in Virginia and Maryland . . . . .	73
1636. Rhode Island settled at Providence, June . . . . .	64
1637. Pequod War . . . . .	62
1638. New Haven Colony founded . . . . .	63
Delaware settled near Wilmington by the Swedes, April . . . . .	69
1641. New Hampshire united to Massachusetts . . . . .	61
1643. Union of the New England Colonies, May 29 . . . . .	57
1644. Second Indian massacre in Virginia, April 18 . . . . .	51
Charter granted to Rhode Island.—Providence and Rhode Island plantations united, March 14 . . . . .	65
1655. Civil War in Maryland . . . . .	73
New Sweden conquered by the Dutch, October . . . . .	66
1660. Navigation Act, passed in 1651, now enforced . . . . .	51
1662. Charter granted to Connecticut, April 20 . . . . .	63
1663. Albemarle Colony formed, March 24 . . . . .	74
1664. New Netherland conquered by the English and called New York, September . . . . .	67
New Jersey settled at Elizabethtown . . . . .	68
1670. South Carolina settled on the Ashley River . . . . .	74
1675-'76. King Philip's War . . . . .	57
1676. Bacon's rebellion, April . . . . .	52
1679. New Hampshire made a royal province . . . . .	61
1680. Charleston, S. C., founded . . . . .	74
1682. Pennsylvania settled . . . . .	69
Delaware granted to William Penn by the Duke of York, Aug. 31 .	70
1683. Philadelphia founded by William Penn, February . . . . .	70
1686. Andros arrived in Boston as governor of New England, Dec. 20 .	59
1689. King William's War . . . . .	77
Andros deposed . . . . .	59
1690. Schenectady burned by the Indians and the French . . . . .	77
1692. Salem witchcraft . . . . .	60
1697. Peace of Ryswick terminated King William's War . . . . .	78

	PAGE
1702. Queen Anne's War commenced . . . . .	79
Delaware secured a separate legislative assembly . . . . .	72
1710. Port Royal, N. S., captured by the English and named Annapolis . . . . .	79
1713. Queen Anne's War closed by the treaty of Utrecht . . . . .	80
1732. Washington born, February 22 . . . . .	76
1733. Georgia settled by Oglethorpe at Savannah, February 12 . . . . .	76
1739. The Spanish War began . . . . .	80
1744. King George's War began . . . . .	80
1745. Louisburg captured by the English, June 17 . . . . .	80
1748. King George's War ended by the treaty of Aix la Chapelle . . . . .	81
1753. Washington sent with a letter by Dinwiddie to St. Pierre, Oct. 31 . . . . .	81
1754. Battle at Great Meadows,—Fort Necessity captured by French . . . . .	83
1755. The French driven from Acadia, June—December . . . . .	85
Braddock defeated in the battle of Monongahela, July 9 . . . . .	84
The British defeated Dieskau at Lake George, September 8 . . . . .	86
1756. War first formally declared by the English against the French . . . . .	83
French under Montcalm captured Fort Oswego, August 14 . . . . .	87
1757. Fort William Henry surrendered to Montcalm, August 9 . . . . .	86
1758. Abercrombie repulsed at Fort Ticonderoga, July 8 . . . . .	87
Louisburg taken by Amherst and Wolfe, July 27 . . . . .	86
Fort Frontenac captured by the colonists, August 27 . . . . .	87
Fort Duquesne taken by the English, November 25 . . . . .	85
1759. Ticonderoga and Crown Point abandoned by the French . . . . .	87
Niagara surrendered to England, July 25 . . . . .	87
Battle of Plains of Abraham,—Quebec surrendered . . . . .	89
1760. Montreal surrendered to the English, September 8 . . . . .	89
1761. William Pitt, the "Great Commoner", resigned . . . . .	89
1763. Peace of Paris . . . . .	89
Pontiac's War . . . . .	90

## REFERENCES FOR READING.

*Palfrey's History of New England.*—*Parkman's Conspiracy of Pontiac.*—*Neal's History of the Puritans.*—*Holmes' Robinson of Leyden (Poem).*—*Mrs. Hemans' Landing of the Pilgrims (Poem).*—*Martyn's Pilgrim Fathers of New England.*—*Elliot's History of New England.*—*Hopkins' Youth of the Old Dominion.*—*Simms' Smith and Pocahontas.*—*Mrs. Stourhead's Pocahontas (Poem).*—*Longfellow's Courtship of Miles Standish, and Evangeline (Poems).*—*Holland's Bay Path.*—*Iring's Knickerbocker's History of New York, and King Philip's War (Sketch Book).*—*Cooper's Last of the Mohicans.*—*James' Ticonderoga.*—*Hubbard's History of Indian Wars in New England.*—*Hall's Puritans and their Principles.*—*Randall's School History of New York.*—*Paullding's Ode to Jamestown (Poem), and his Dutchman's Fire-Side (a novel).*—*Street's Frontenac (a romance).*—*Mrs. Childs' Hobomok (a novel).*—*Margaret Smith's Journal (by Whittier).*—*Harper's Magazine, Vol. 52, Up the Ashley and Cooper (Life in Colony of S. C.); Vol. 66, Maryland and the Far South, The Middle Colonies, New England in Colonial Period, and The French Voyageurs.*—*Sanborn's History of New Hampshire.*—*Holland's History of Western Massachusetts.*—*Greene's History of Rhode Island.*—*Hollister's History of Connecticut.*—*Cooke's Stories of the Old Dominion.*—*Egglesston's Pocahontas, The "American Commonwealths" Series.*—*Towle's Raleigh, Vasco da Gama, etc.*

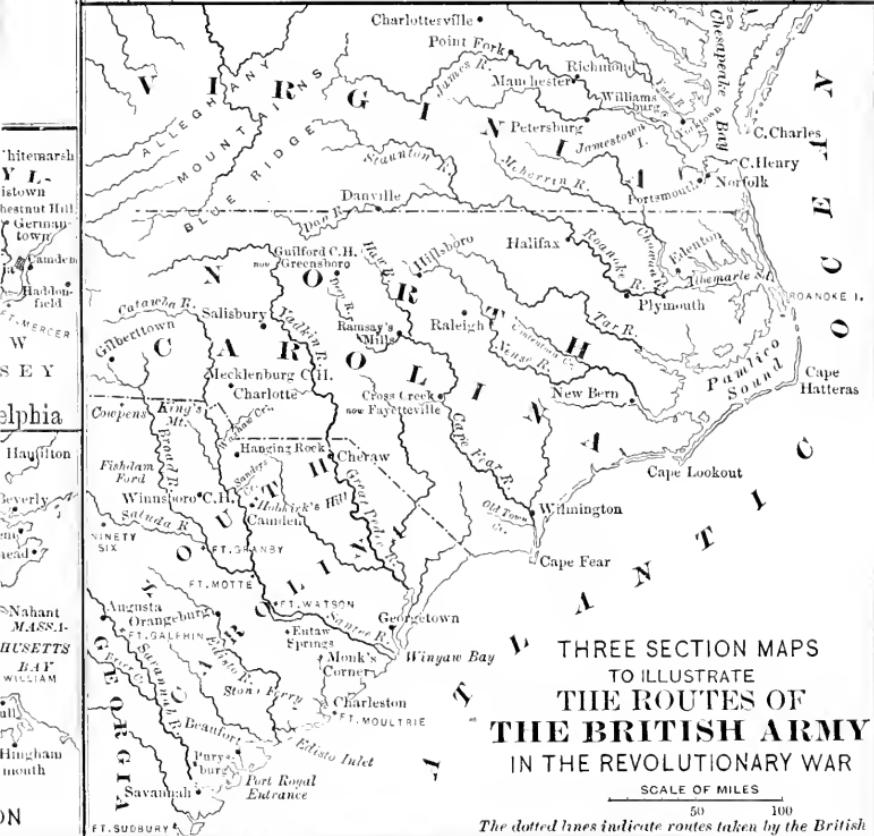
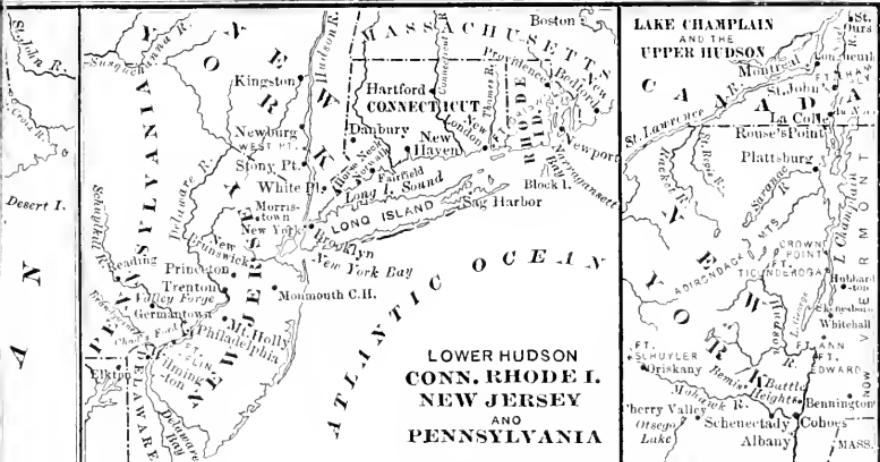
## BLACKBOARD ANALYSIS.

## EPOCH II. DEVELOPMENT OF THE ENGLISH COLONIES.

Introduction.	What is told in this Epoch?
1. Virginia.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Character of the Colonists.</li> <li>John Smith. { a. His services. b. His adventures.</li> <li>The Second Charter.</li> <li>The "Starving Time".</li> <li>The Third Charter.</li> <li>Marriage of Pocahontas.</li> <li>First Colonial Assembly.</li> <li>Prosperity of the Colony.</li> <li>Slavery Introduced (1619).</li> <li>Indian Troubles.</li> <li>Virginia Becomes a Royal Province.</li> <li>Period of Oppression.</li> <li>Bacon's Rebellion.</li> </ol>
2. Massachusetts.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Plymouth Colony.</li> <li>Mass. Bay Colony.</li> </ol> <ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Landing of Pilgrims.</li> <li>Character of Pilgrims.</li> <li>Sufferings of Pilgrims.</li> <li>The Indians.</li> <li>Progress of Colony.</li> <li>Settlement.</li> <li>Religious Disturbances.</li> <li>Union of Colonies.</li> <li>King Philip's War.</li> <li>N. E. a Royal Province.</li> <li>Salem Witchcraft.</li> </ol>
3. Maine and New Hampshire.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Settlement.</li> <li>Pequod War.</li> <li>Three Colonies.</li> <li>Royal Charter.</li> <li>Settlement.</li> <li>A Charter.</li> <li>Settlement.</li> <li>Four Dutch Governors.</li> <li>The English Governors.</li> <li>Settlement.</li> <li>East and West Jersey.</li> <li>Jersey United.</li> <li>Settlement. { a. Swedes and Dutch. b. William Penn.</li> <li>Philadelphia Founded.</li> <li>The Great Law.</li> <li>Penn's Treaty.</li> <li>Penn's Return to England.</li> <li>Delaware.</li> <li>Penn's Heirs.</li> <li>Settlement.</li> <li>The Charter.</li> <li>Civil Wars.</li> <li>Settlement.</li> <li>The Grand Model.</li> <li>North and South Carolina Separated.</li> <li>Settlement.</li> <li>The Trustees.</li> </ol>
8, 9. Pennsylvania and Delaware.	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>King William's War. { a. Cause. b. Attacks upon the Colonists. c. Attacks by the Colonists. d. Peace.</li> <li>Queen Anne's War. { a. Cause. b. Attacks upon the Colonists. c. Attacks by the Colonists. d. Peace.</li> <li>King George's War. { a. Capture of Louisburg. b. Peace.</li> <li>French and Indian War. { a. Cause. b. Washington's Journey. c. War Opens. d. Five Objective Points. e. Peace. f. Pontiac's War. g. Effects.</li> </ol>
14. Inter-Colonial Wars. (1689-1763.)	<ol style="list-style-type: none"> <li>Colonial Civilization.</li> </ol>







The dotted lines indicate routes taken by the British

SCALE OF MILES

50 100





### Remote Causes.—En-

gland treated the settlers as an inferior class of people. Her intention was to make and keep the colonies dependent. The laws were framed to favor the English manufacturer and merchant at the expense of the colonist. The Navigation Acts compelled the American farmer to send his products across the ocean to England, and to buy his goods in British markets. American manufactures were prohibited. Iron works were denounced

*Questions on the Geography of the Third Epoch.*—Locate Boston, Portsmouth, Newport, Philadelphia, Salem, Concord, Lexington, Whitehall, Cambridge, New London, Charleston, Charlestown, Brooklyn, New York, White Plains, North Castle, Cherry Valley, Elizabethtown, Trenton, Princeton, Germantown, Albany, Oriskany, Bennington, Yorktown, Monmouth C. H., Quebec, Danbury, Savannah, Augusta, Norfolk, Norwalk, Fairfield, New Haven, Elmira, Camden, Hanging Rock, Cowpens, Guilford C. H., Wilmington, Eutaw Springs,

Locate Crown Point, Fort Ticonderoga, Fort Edward, Fort Griswold, Fort Moultrie (Fort Sullivan), Fort Washington, West Point, Fort Schuyler (Fort Stanwix), Stony Point, Fort Lee, Fort Mifflin, Fort Mercer.

Describe the Brandywine Creek, Mohawk River, Waxhaw Creek, Catawba River, Yadkin River, Dan River, Delaware River.

Locate Valley Forge, Ninety Six, Dorchester Heights, Morristown, King's Mountain, Bemis' Heights, Wyoming.

as "common nuisances". Even William Pitt, the friend of America, declared that she had no right to manufacture even a nail for a horseshoe, except by permission of Parliament.\*

**The Direct Cause** was an attempt to tax the colonies in order to raise money to defray the expenses of the recent war. As the colonists were not represented in Parliament, they resisted this measure, declaring that **TAXATION WITHOUT REPRESENTATION IS TYRANNY**. The British government, however, was obstinate, and began first to enforce the odious laws against trade. Smuggling had become very common, and the English officers were granted

*Writs of Assistance*, as they were called, or warrants authorizing them to search for smuggled goods. Under this pretext, any petty custom-house official could enter a man's house or store at his pleasure. The colonists believed that "every man's house is his castle", and resisted such search as a violation of their rights.†

*The Stamp Act* (1765), which ordered that stamps bought of the British government, should be put on all legal documents, newspapers, pamphlets, etc., thoroughly aroused the colonists.‡ The houses of British officials were mobbed. Prominent loyalists were hung in effigy. Stamps were seized.

\* The exportation of hats from one colony to another was prohibited, and no hatter was allowed to have more than two apprentices at a time. The importation of sugar, rum, and molasses, was burdened with exorbitant duties; and the Carolinians were forbidden to cut down the pine-trees of their vast forests, in order to convert the wood into staves, or the juice into turpentine and tar for commercial purposes. "To print an English Bible would have been an act of piracy."

† The matter was brought before a general court, held in Boston, where James Otis, advocate-general, coming out boldly on the side of the people, exclaimed, "To my dying day I will oppose, with all the powers and faculties God has given me, all such instruments of slavery on the one hand and villainy on the other." "Then and there", said John Adams, "the trumpet of the Revolution was sounded."

‡ The assembly of Virginia was the first to make public opposition to this odious law. Patrick Henry, a brilliant young lawyer, introduced a resolution denying the right of Parliament to tax America. He boldly asserted that the king had played the tyrant; and, alluding to the fate of other tyrants, exclaimed, "Cæsar had his Brutus, Charles I. his Cromwell, and George III."—here pausing till the cry of "Treason!"

The agents were forced to resign. People agreed not to use any article of British manufacture.\* Associations, called the "Sons of Liberty",† were formed to resist the law. Delegates from nine of the colonies met at New York and framed a Declaration of Rights, and a petition to the king and Parliament. The 1st of November, appointed for the law to go into effect, was observed as a day of mourning. Bells were tolled, flags raised at half-mast, and business was suspended.‡ Samuel and John Adams, Patrick Henry, and James Otis, by their stirring and patriotic speeches, aroused the people over the whole land.

Alarmed by these demonstrations, the English government repealed the Stamp Act (1766), but still declared its right to tax the colonies. Soon, new duties were laid upon tea, glass, paper, etc., and a Board of Trade was established at Boston to act independently of the colonial assemblies.

*Mutiny Act.*—Anticipating bitter opposition, troops were sent to enforce the laws. The "Mutiny Act", as it was called,

Treason!" from several parts of the house had ended, he deliberately added—"may profit by their examples. If this be treason, make the most of it."—John Ashe, speaker of the North Carolina Assembly, declared to Governor Tryon, "This law will be resisted to blood and to death."

\* The newspapers of the day mention many wealthy people who conformed to this agreement. On one occasion, forty or fifty young ladies, who called themselves "Daughters of Liberty", brought their spinning-wheels to the house of Rev. Mr. Morehead, in Boston, and during the day spun two hundred and thirty-two skeins of yarn, which they presented to their pastor. "Within eighteen months", wrote a gentleman at Newport, R. I., "four hundred and eighty-seven yards of cloth and thirty-six pairs of stockings have been spun and knit in the family of James Nixon, of this town." In Newport and Boston, the ladies, at their tea-drinkings, used, instead of imported tea, the dried leaves of the raspberry. The class of 1770, at Cambridge, took their diplomas in homespun suits.

† This name was assumed from the celebrated speech of Barré on the Stamp Act, in which he spoke of the colonists as "Sons of Liberty". (Bancroft's U. S., III., 100.)

‡ At Portsmouth, N. H., a coffin inscribed "LIBERTY, aged CXLV years", was borne to an open grave. With muffled drums and solemn tread, the procession moved from the State House. Minute guns were fired until the grave was reached, when a funeral oration was pronounced and the coffin lowered. Suddenly it was proclaimed that there were signs of life. The coffin was raised, and the inscription "Liberty Revived" added. Bells rang, trumpets sounded, men shouted, and a jubilee ensued.

ordered that the colonies should provide these soldiers with quarters and necessary supplies. This evident attempt to enslave the Americans aroused burning indignation. To be taxed was bad enough, but to shelter and feed their oppressors was unendurable. The New York assembly, having refused to comply, was forbidden to pass any legislative acts. The Massachusetts assembly sent a circular to the other colonies urging a union for redress of grievances. Parliament, in the name of the king, ordered the assembly to rescind its action; but it almost unanimously refused. In the meantime, the assemblies of nearly all the colonies had declared that Parliament had no right to tax them without their consent. Thereupon, they were warned not to imitate the disobedient conduct of Massachusetts.

*Boston Massacre.*—Boston being considered the hot-bed of the rebellion, General Gage was ordered to send thither two regiments of troops. They entered on a quiet Sunday morning, and marched as through a conquered city, with drums beating and flags flying. Quarters were refused, but the Sons of Liberty allowed a part to sleep in Faneuil Hall, while the rest encamped on the Common. Cannon were planted, sentries posted, and citizens challenged. Frequent quarrels took place between the people and the soldiers. One day (March 5, 1770), a crowd of men and boys, maddened by its presence, insulted the city guard. A fight ensued, in which three citizens were killed and eight wounded. The bells were rung; the country people rushed in to help the city; and it was with difficulty that quiet was restored.\*

*Boston Tea Party* (Dec. 16, 1773).—The government, alarmed by the turn events had taken, rescinded the taxes,

\* The soldiers were tried for murder. John Adams and Josiah Quincy, who stood foremost in opposition to British aggression, defended them. All were acquitted except two, who were found guilty of manslaughter.

except that on tea—which was left to maintain the principle. An arrangement was made whereby tea was furnished at so low a price, that, with the tax included, it was cheaper in America than in England. This subterfuge exasperated the patriots. They were fighting for a great principle, not against a paltry tax. At Charleston, the tea was stored in damp cellars, where it soon spoiled. The tea-ships at New York and Philadelphia were sent home. The British authorities refused to let the tea-ships at Boston return. Upon this, an immense public meeting was held at Faneuil Hall,\* and it was decided that the tea should never be brought ashore. A party of men, disguised as Indians, boarded the vessels and emptied three hundred and forty-two chests of tea into the water.†

*The Climax Reached.*—Retaliatory measures were at once adopted by the English government.‡ General Gage was appointed governor of Massachusetts. The port of Boston being closed§ by act of Parliament, business was stopped and distress ensued. The Virginia assembly protested against this measure, and was dissolved by the governor.

\* Faneuil Hall was the rendezvous of the Revolutionary spirits of that time—hence it has been called the “Cradle of Liberty”.

† On their way home from the “Boston Tea Party”, the men passed a house at which Admiral Montague was spending the evening. The officer raised the window and cried out, “Well, boys, you’ve had a fine night for your Indian caper. But, mind, you’ve got to pay the fiddler yet.” “O, never mind”, replied one of the leaders, “never mind, squire! Just come out here, if you please, and we’ll settle the bill in two minutes.” The admiral thought it best to let the bill stand, and quickly shut the window.

‡ The public feeling in England was generally against the colonies. “Every man”, wrote Dr. Franklin, “seems to consider himself as a piece of a sovereign over America; seems to jostle himself into the throne with the king, and talks of *our* subjects in the colonies.”

§ Marblehead and Salem, refusing to profit by the ruin of their rival, offered the use of their wharves to the Boston merchants. Aid and sympathy were received from all sides. Schoharie, N. Y., sent 525 bushels of wheat. The people of Georgia donated 63 barrels of rice and \$720 in money.—Paul Revere rode on horseback to New York and Philadelphia, scattering copies of the port-bill printed on mourning paper.

Party lines were drawn. Those opposed to royalty were termed Whigs, and those supporting it, Tories. Every-where were repeated the thrilling words of Patrick Henry, "Give me liberty or give me death." Companies of soldiers, termed "Minute men", were formed. The idea of a continental union became popular. Gage, being alarmed, fortified Boston Neck, and seized powder wherever he could find it. A rumor having been circulated that the British ships were firing on Boston, in two days thirty thousand minute men were on their way to the city. A spark only was needed to kindle the slumbering hatred into the flames of war.

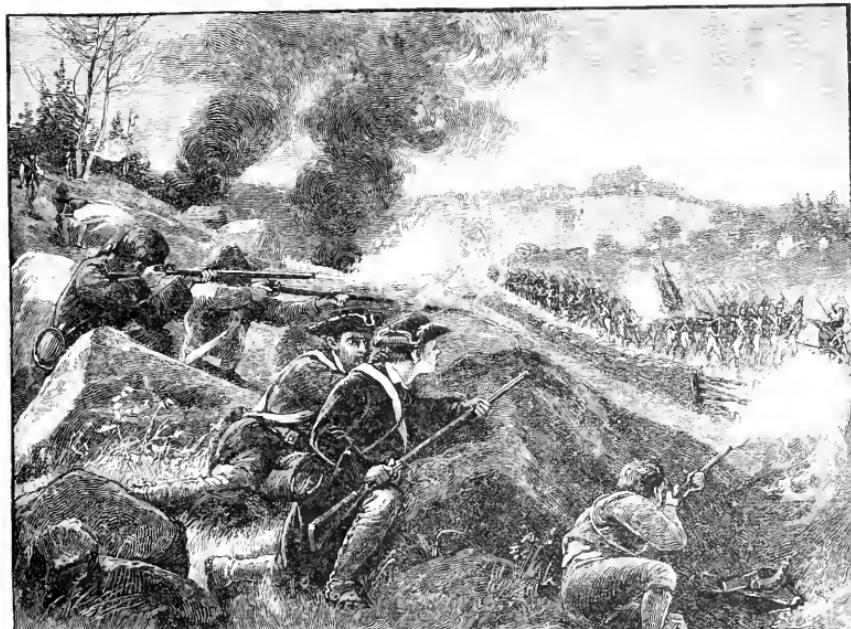
**The First Continental Congress** (Sept. 5, 1774) was held in Philadelphia. It consisted of men of influence, and represented every colony except Georgia. As yet, few members had any idea of independence. The Congress simply voted that obedience was not due to any of the recent acts of Parliament, and sustained Massachusetts in her resistance. It issued a protest against standing armies being kept in the colonies without the consent of the people, and agreed to hold no intercourse with Great Britain.

### 1775.

**Battle of Lexington** (April 19).—General Gage, learning that the people were gathering military stores at Concord, sent about eight hundred men, under Colonel Smith and Major Pitcairn, to destroy them. The patriots of Boston, however, were on the alert, and hurried out messengers to alarm the country.\* When the redcoats, as the British soldiers were called, reached Lexington, they found a company

\* Paul Revere caused two lights to be hung up in the steeple of Christ Church. They were seen in Charlestown; messengers set out, and he soon followed on his famous midnight ride. (Read Longfellow's poem.)

minute men gathering on the village green. Riding up, Pitcairn shouted, "Disperse, you rebels; lay down your arms!" They hesitated. A skirmish ensued, in which



THE BRITISH RETREATING FROM LEXINGTON.

seven Americans—the first martyrs of the Revolution—were killed.

The British pushed on and destroyed the stores. But alarmed by the gathering militia, they hastily retreated. It was none too soon. The whole region flew to arms. Every boy old enough to use a rifle hurried to avenge the death of his countrymen. From behind trees, fences, buildings, and rocks, in front, flank, and rear, so galling a fire was poured, that but for reinforcements from Boston, none of the British would have reached the city alive. As it was, they lost nearly three hundred men.

*Effects of the Battle.*—The news that American blood had been spilled flew like wild-fire. Patriots came pouring in from all sides. Putnam\* left his cattle yoked in the field, and without changing his working clothes, mounted his fastest horse and hurried to Boston. Soon, twenty thousand men were at work building intrenchments to shut up the British in the city. Congresses were formed in all the colonies. Committees of safety were appointed to call out the troops and provide for any emergency. The power of the royal governors was broken from Massachusetts to Georgia.

**Battle of Bunker Hill** (June 17).—The patriot leader, General Ward, having learned that the British intended to fortify Bunker Hill, determined to anticipate them. A body of men, under Colonel Prescott, were accordingly assembled at Cambridge, and, after prayer by the president of Harvard University, marched to Charlestown Neck. Breed's Hill was then chosen as a more commanding site than Bunker Hill. It was bright moonlight, and they were so near Boston that the sentinel's "All's well", was distinctly heard. Yet so quietly did they work that there was no alarm. At daylight, the British officers were startled by seeing the redoubt which had been constructed. Resolved to drive the Americans from

\* Israel Putnam, familiarly known as "Old Put", was born in Salem, Mass., 1718. Many stories are told of his great courage and presence of mind. His descent into the wolf's den, shooting the animal by the light of her own glaring eyes, showed his love of bold adventure; his noble generosity was displayed in the rescue of a comrade scout at Crown Point, at the imminent peril of his own life. He came out of one encounter with fourteen bullet-holes in his blanket. At Fort Edward, when all others fled, he alone fought back the fire from a magazine in which were stored three hundred barrels of gunpowder, protected by only a thin partition. "His face, his hands, and almost his whole body, were blistered; and in removing the mittens from his hands, the skin was torn off with them." In 1758, a party of Indians took him prisoner, bound him to a stake, and made ready to torture him with fire. The flames were already scorching his limbs, and death seemed certain, when a French officer burst through the crowd and saved his life. The British offered him money and the rank of major-general if he would desert the American cause; but he could neither be daunted by toil and danger, nor bribed by gold and honors.

their position, Howe crossed the river with three thousand men, and formed them at the landing. The roofs and steeples of Boston were crowded with spectators, intently watching



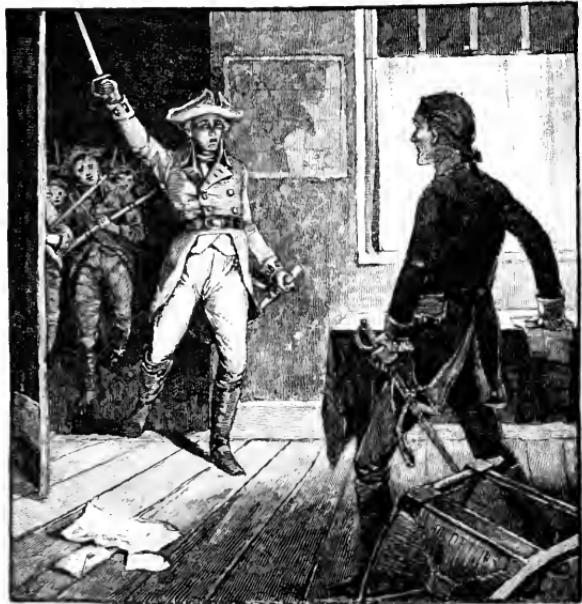
THE PRAYER BEFORE THE BATTLE OF BUNKER HILL.

the troops as they slowly ascended the hill. The patriot ranks lay quietly behind their earth-works until the redcoats were within ten rods, when Prescott shouted "Fire!" A blaze of light shot from the redoubt, and whole platoons of the British fell. The survivors, unable to endure the terrible slaughter, broke and fled. They were rallied under cover of the smoke of Charlestown, which had been wantonly fired by Gage. Again they were met by that deadly discharge, and again they fled. Reinforcements being received, the third time they advanced. Only one volley smote them, and then the firing ceased. The American ammunition was exhausted. The British charged over the ramparts with fixed bayonets.

The patriots gallantly resisted with clubbed muskets, but were soon driven from the field.\*

*The effect* upon the Americans of this first regular battle was that of a victory. Their untrained farmer soldiers had put to flight the British veterans. All felt encouraged, and the determination to fight for liberty was intensified.

**Capture of Ticonderoga** (May 10).—Ethan Allen† and Benedict Arnold led a small company of volunteers to surprise this fortress. As Allen rushed into the sally-port, a sentinel snapped his gun at him and fled. Making his way to the commander's quarters, Allen, in a voice of thunder, ordered him to surrender. "By whose authority?" exclaimed the frightened officer. "In the name of the Great Jehovah and the Continental Congress!" shouted Allen. No resistance was attempted.



CAPTURE OF FORT TICONDEROGA.

\* General Warren was among the last to leave. As he was trying to rally the troops, a British officer, who knew him, seized a musket and shot him. Warren had just received his commission as major-general, but had crossed Charles-town Neck in the midst of flying balls, reached the redoubt, and offered himself as a volunteer. He was buried near the spot where he died. By his death, America lost one of her truest sons. Gage said that his fall was worth that of five hundred ordinary rebels.

† Ethan Allen was a

native of Connecticut. With several of his brothers, he emigrated to what is now known as Vermont. At that time a dispute had arisen between the colony

Large stores of cannon and ammunition, just then so much needed by the troops at Boston, fell into the hands of the Americans, without the loss of a man. Crown Point was soon after as easily taken. (Map opp. p. 120.)

**The Second Continental Congress** (May 10) met at Philadelphia in the midst of these stirring events. It voted to raise 20,000 men, and appointed General Washington Commander-in-Chief. A petition to King George III. was prepared, which he refused to receive. This destroyed all hope of reconciliation.

**Condition of the Army.**—On Washington's arrival before Boston, the army numbered but 14,000 men.\* Few of them were drilled; many were unfit for service; some had left their farms at the first impulse, and were already weary of the hardships of war; all were badly clothed and poorly armed, and there were less than nine cartridges to each

of New York, on the one hand, and the colonies of New Hampshire, Massachusetts, and Connecticut, on the other, with reference to the territory. The governor of New Hampshire, regardless of the claims of New York, issued grants of land so extensively that the region became known as the *New Hampshire Grants*. New York having obtained a favorable decision of the courts, endeavored to eject the occupants of the land. Ethan Allen became conspicuous in the resistance that ensued. The "Green Mountain Boys" made him their colonel, and he kept a watchful eye on the officers from New York, who sought by form of law to dispossess the settlers of farms which had been bought and made valuable by their own labor. The Revolutionary War caused a lull in these hostilities, and the Green Mountain Boys turned their arms upon the common enemy. Allen subsequently aided Montgomery in his Canadian expedition, but, in a fool-hardy attempt upon Montreal, was taken prisoner and sent to England. After a long captivity he was released, and returned home. Generous and frank, a vigorous writer, loyal to his country and true to his friends, he exerted a powerful influence on the early history of Vermont.

\* At Cambridge (July 3), beneath the spreading elm, ever since famous in song and story, Washington assumed command. He was a tall, finely-formed, dignified man, with a noble air, and dressed, according to the fashion of the time, in a blue broadcloth coat, buff small clothes, silk stockings, and a cocked hat. As he wheeled his horse and drew his sword, a shout of joy went up from the crowd. Mrs. Adams wrote—"These lines of Dryden instantly recurred to me:

"Mark his majestic fabric! His a temple  
    Sacred by birth, and built by hands divine;  
His soul's the Deity that lodges there:  
    Nor is the pile unworthy of the God."

soldier. Washington made every exertion to relieve their wants, and, meanwhile, kept Gage penned up in Boston.

**Expedition against Canada.**—Late in the summer, General Montgomery, leading an army by way of Lake Champlain, captured St. John's and Montreal, and then appeared before Quebec. Here he was joined by Colonel Arnold with a crowd of half-famished men, who had ascended the Kennebec and then struck across the wilderness.

*Attack upon Quebec.*—Their united force was less than one thousand effective men. Having besieged the city for three weeks, it was decided to hazard an assault. In the midst of a terrible snow-storm, they led their forces to the attack. Montgomery advancing along the river, lifting at the huge blocks of ice, and struggling through the drifts, cheered on his men. As they rushed forward, a rude block-house appeared through the blinding snow. Charging upon it, Montgomery fell at the first fire, and his followers, disheartened, fled. Arnold, meanwhile, approached the opposite side of the city. While bravely fighting, he was severely wounded and borne to the rear. Morgan, his successor, pressed on the attack, but, unable either to retreat or advance against the tremendous odds, was forced to surrender. The remnant of the army, crouching behind mounds of snow and ice, blockaded the city until spring. At the approach of British reinforcements, the Americans were glad to escape, leaving Canada in the hands of England.

## 1776.

**Evacuation of Boston** (March 17).—Washington, in order to compel the British to fight or run, sent a force to fortify Dorchester Heights by night. In the morning, the English were once more astonished by seeing intrenchments which

overlooked the city. A storm prevented an immediate attack—a delay which was well improved by the provincials. General Howe, who was then in command, remembering the lesson of Bunker Hill, decided to leave, and accordingly set sail for Halifax with his army, fleet, and many loyalists. The next day, Washington entered Boston amid great rejoicing. For eleven months, the inhabitants had endured the horrors of a siege and the insolence of the enemy.\* Their houses had been pillaged, their shops rifled, and their churches profaned.

**Attack on Fort Moultrie** (June 28).—Early in the summer, an English fleet appeared off Charleston, and opened fire on Fort Moultrie.† So fearful was the response from Moultrie's guns, that, at one time, every man but Admiral Parker was swept from the deck of his vessel. General Clinton, who commanded the British land troops, tried to attack the fort in rear, but the fire of the riflemen was too severe. The fleet was so shattered that it sailed for New York. This victory delighted the colonists, as it was their first encounter with the boasted "Mistress of the Seas".

\* The boys in Boston were wont to amuse themselves in winter by building snow-houses and by skating on a pond in the Common. The soldiers having disturbed them in their sports, complaints were made to the officers, who only ridiculed their petition. At last, a number of the largest boys waited on General Gage. "What!" said Gage, "have your fathers sent you here to exhibit the rebellion they have been teaching you?" "Nobody sent us", answered the leader, with flashing eye; "we have never injured your troops, but they have trampled down our snow-hills and broken the ice of our skating-pond. We complained, and they called us young rebels, and told us to help ourselves if we could. We told the captain, and he laughed at us. Yesterday our works were destroyed for the third time, and we will bear it no longer." The British commander could not restrain his admiration. "The very children", said he, "draw in a love of liberty with the air they breathe. Go, my brave boys, and be assured, if my troops trouble you again, they shall be punished."

† Fort Sullivan, as it was first called, was christened Fort Moultrie, after its gallant defender. It was built of palmetto logs, which are so spongy that balls sink into them without splitting the wood. Here floated the first republican flag in the South. Early in the action, the staff was struck by a ball, and the flag fell outside the fort. Sergeant Jasper leaped over the breastwork, caught up the flag, tied it to a sponge-staff (an instrument for cleaning cannon), and hoisted it to its place. The next day,

**Declaration of Independence** (July 4).—During the session of Congress this summer, Richard Henry Lee, of Virginia, moved that “The United Colonies are, and ought to be, free and independent States”; John Adams, of Massachusetts, seconded the resolution. This was passed (July 2), and a committee appointed to draw up a DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.\* Its report was adopted, July 4.†

**Campaign near New York.**—General Howe, after evacuating Boston, went to Halifax, but soon set sail for New York. Thither, also, came Admiral Howe,‡ his brother, with reinforcements from England, and General Clinton from the defeat at Fort Moultrie. The British army was thirty thousand strong. Washington, divining Howe’s plans, now gathered his forces at New York to protect that city. He had, however, only about seven thousand men fit for duty.

*Battle of Long Island* (Aug. 27).—The British army landed on the south-west shore of Long Island. General

Governor Rutledge offered him a lieutenant’s commission. He refused, saying, “I am not fit for the company of officers; I am only a sergeant.”

\* Thomas Jefferson, John Adams, Benjamin Franklin, Roger Sherman, and Robert R. Livingston composed this committee.

† During the day, the streets of Philadelphia were crowded with people anxious to learn the decision. In the steeple of the old State House, was a bell on which, by a happy coincidence, was inscribed, “Proclaim liberty throughout all the land unto all the inhabitants thereof.” In the morning, when Congress assembled, the bell-ringer went to his post, having placed his boy below to announce when the Declaration was adopted, that his bell might be the first to peal forth the glad tidings. Long he waited, while the deliberations went on. Impatiently the old man shook his head and repeated, “They will never do it! They will never do it!” Suddenly he heard his boy clapping his hands and shouting, “Ring! Ring!” Grasping the iron tongue, he swung it to and fro, proclaiming the glad news of liberty to all the land. The crowded streets caught up the sound. Every steeple re-echoed it. All that night, by shouts, and illuminations, and booming of cannon, the people declared their joy.

‡ Parliament authorized the Howes to treat with the insurgents. By proclamation they offered pardon to all who would return to their allegiance. This document was published by direction of Congress, that the people might see what England demanded.—An officer was sent to the American camp with a letter addressed to “George Washington, Esq.” Washington refused to receive it. The address was then changed to “George Washington, &c.” But Washington declined all communications which did not recognize his position as commander of the American army.

Putnam, with about eight thousand men, held a fort at Brooklyn and defenses on a range of hills south of the city. The English advanced in three divisions. Two of these attacked the defenses in front, while General Clinton, by a circuitous route, gained the rear. The patriots were fighting gallantly, when, to their dismay, they heard firing behind them. They attempted to escape, but it was too late. Out of about four thousand Americans engaged, one thousand were lost.\* (Map opposite p. 120.)

Had Howe attacked the fort at Brooklyn immediately, the Americans would have been destroyed. Fortunately, he delayed for the fleet to arrive. For two days, the patriots lay helpless, awaiting the assault. On the second night after the battle, there was a dense fog on the Brooklyn side, while in New York the weather was clear. At midnight, the Americans moved silently down to the shore and crossed the river.† In the morning, when the sun scattered the fog, Howe was chagrined to find his prey escaped.

*Washington's Retreat.*—The British, crossing to New York,‡ moved to attack Washington, who had taken post on

\* Many of the captives were consigned to the Sugar House on Liberty Street, and the prison-ships in Wallabout Bay. Their hard lot made the fate of those who perished in battle to be envied. During the course of the war, over 11,000 American prisoners died in these loathsome hulks. Their bodies were buried in the beach, whence, for years after, they were washed out from the sand by every tide. In 1808, the remains of these martyrs were interred with suitable ceremonies near the Navy Yard, Brooklyn; and, in 1873, they were finally placed in a vault at Washington Park.

† The Americans embarked at a place near the present Fulton Ferry. A woman sent her negro servant to the British to inform them of the movements of the Americans. He was captured by the *Hessians*, who were Germans from Hesse Cassel, hired to fight by the British government. These, not being able to understand a word of English, detained him until the morning. His message was then too late.

‡ Washington desiring to gain some knowledge of Howe's movements, sent Captain Nathan Hale to visit the English camps on Long Island. He passed the lines safely, but on his way back was recognized and arrested by a tory relative. Being taken to Howe's head-quarters, he was tried, and executed as a spy. No clergyman was allowed to visit him; even a Bible was denied him, and his farewell letters to his mother and sister were destroyed. His last words were, "I regret only that I have but one life to give to my country."

HLLEH HEIGHTS. Finding the American position too strong, Howe moved up the Sound in order to gain the rear. Washington then withdrew to WHITE PLAINS. Here Howe came up and defeated a part of his army. Washington next retired into a fortified camp at NORTH CASTLE. Howe, not daring to attack him, returned to New York and sent the Hessians to take FORT WASHINGTON, which they captured after a fierce resistance (Nov. 16).

*Flight through New Jersey.*—Washington had now retired into New Jersey in order to prevent the British from marching against Philadelphia. Cornwallis, with six thousand men, hurried after him, and for three weeks pursued the flying Americans. Many of the patriots had no shoes, and left their blood-stained foot-prints on the frozen ground. Oftentimes, the van of the pursuing army was in sight of the American rear-guard. At last, Washington reached the Delaware, and, all the boats having been secured, crossed into Pennsylvania.\* Howe resolved to wait until the river should freeze over, and then capture Philadelphia, meanwhile quartering his troops in the neighboring villages.

**Condition of the Country.**—It was a time of deep despondency. The patriot army was a mere handful of ragged, disheartened fugitives. Many people of wealth and influence went over to the enemy. New York and Newport—the second city in size in New England—were already in the hands of the British, and they were likely soon to seize Philadelphia.

**Battle of Trenton.**—Washington thought it time to

\* During this retreat, Washington repeatedly sent orders to General Lee, who was then at North Castle, to join him. Lee hesitated, and at last moved very slowly. Five days after this, while quartered in a small tavern at Baskingridge, remote from his troops, he was taken prisoner by the English cavalry. His capture was considered a great misfortune by the Americans, who thought him the best officer in the army. The British were rejoiced, and declared they had taken the "American Palladium."

strike a daring blow. On Christmas night, in a driving storm of sleet, amid drifting ice, that threatened every moment to crush the boats, he crossed the Delaware with twenty-four hundred picked men, fell upon the



SURRENDER OF RALL AT TRENTON.

Hessians at Trenton, in the midst of their festivities,\* captured one thousand prisoners, slew their leader,† and

\* Hunt, a trader with friends and foes, a neutral, had invited Rall, the Hessian commander, to a Christmas supper. Card-playing and wine-drinking were kept up all night long. A messenger came in haste, at early dawn, with a note to the colonel. It was sent by a tory to give warning of the approach of the American forces. The negro servant refused admittance to the bearer. Knowing its importance, he bade the negro to take the note directly to the officer. The servant obeyed, but the colonel, excited by wine and the play, thrust it unopened into his pocket. Soon after daylight, the roll of drums was heard, and before the pleasure-loving officer could reach his quarters the Americans were in pursuit of his fleeing soldiers.

† Before leaving Trenton, Washington and Greene visited the dying Hessian. It had been a time of splendid triumph to the American commander, but as he stood by the bedside, the soldier was lost in the Christian, and the victorious general showed himself in that hour only a sympathizing friend.

safely escaped back to camp, with the loss of only four men—two killed and two frozen to death. (Map opposite p. 120.)

*The effect* of this brilliant feat was electrical. The fires of patriotism were kindled afresh. New recruits were received, and the troops whose term of enlistment was expiring, agreed to remain. Howe was alarmed, and ordered Cornwallis, who was just setting sail for England, to return and prepare for a winter's campaign.

## 1777.

**Battle of Princeton** (Jan. 3).—Washington soon crossed the Delaware again, and took post at Trenton. Just before sunset, Cornwallis came up. His first onset being repulsed, he decided to wait till morning. Washington's situation was now most critical. Before him was a powerful army; behind him, a river full of floating ice. That night,\* leaving his camp-fires burning to deceive the enemy, he swept by country roads around the British, fell upon the troops near Princeton, routed them, took over two hundred prisoners, and by rapid marches reached Morristown Heights in safety. Cornwallis heard the firing and hurried to the rescue, but he was too late. The victory was gained, and the victors were beyond pursuit.

\* Washington had forty cannon. At night-fall, the ground was so soft that he could not move them; but, while the council was in session, the wind changed, and in two hours the roads were as hard as pavement. Erskine urged Cornwallis to attack the Americans that night, but he said he could "catch the fox in the morning". On the morrow, the fires were still burning, but the army was gone. None knew whither the patriots had fled. But at sunrise there was a sound of firing in the direction of Princeton. The report of the cannon through the keen frosty air could be distinctly heard, but Cornwallis believed it to be distant thunder. Erskine, however, exclaimed, "To arms, general! Washington has outgeneraled us. Let us fly to the rescue at Princeton!"

These exploits won for Washington universal praise,\* and he was declared to be the saver of his country.

**Campaign in Pennsylvania.**—Howe, having spent the next summer at New York, where he was closely watched by Washington, finally took the field, and maneuvered to force the patriot army to a general fight. Finding the "American Fabius" too wary for him, he suddenly embarked eighteen thousand men on his brother's fleet, and set sail. Washington hurried south to meet him. The patriot army numbered only 11,000, but when Washington learned that the British had arrived in the Chesapeake, he resolved to hazard a battle for the defense of Philadelphia.

*Battle of Brandywine* (Sept. 11).—The Americans took position at Chad's Ford, on the Brandywine. Here they were attacked in front, while Cornwallis stole around to the rear, as Clinton had done in the battle of Long Island. Sullivan, Stirling, La Fayette,† Wayne, and Count Pulaski, in



MARQUIS DE LA FAYETTE.

\* Frederick the Great of Prussia is said to have declared that the achievements of Washington and his little band, during the six weeks following Christmas, were the most brilliant recorded on the pages of military history.

† La Fayette's full name was Marie Jean Paul Roch Yves Gilbert Motier Marquis de la Fayette. At a banquet in honor of the brother of the English king, he first heard the Declaration of Independence. He was won by its arguments, and from that time joined his hopes and sympathies to the American cause. Yet, how was he to aid it? The French nobility, though disliking England, did not indorse the action of her colonies. He was not yet twenty years of age; he had just married a woman whom he tenderly loved; his prospects at home for honor and happiness were bright; to join the patriot army would take him from his native land, his wife, and all his covetous ambitions, and lead him into a struggle that seemed as hopeless as its cause was just. Yet his zeal for America overcame all these obstacles. Other difficulties now arose. His family objected; the British minister protested; the French king with-

vain performed prodigies of valor. The patriots were routed, Philadelphia was taken, and the British army went into quarters there and at Germantown.\*

*Battle of Germantown* (Oct. 4).—Washington would not let the enemies of his country rest in peace. A few weeks after they had settled down for the winter, he made a night march, and at sunrise fell upon their troops at Germantown. At first, the attack was successful, but a few companies of British desperately defending a stone house caused delay. The co-operation of the different divisions was prevented by a dense fog, which also hid the confusion of the enemy, so that the Americans retreated just at the moment of victory.

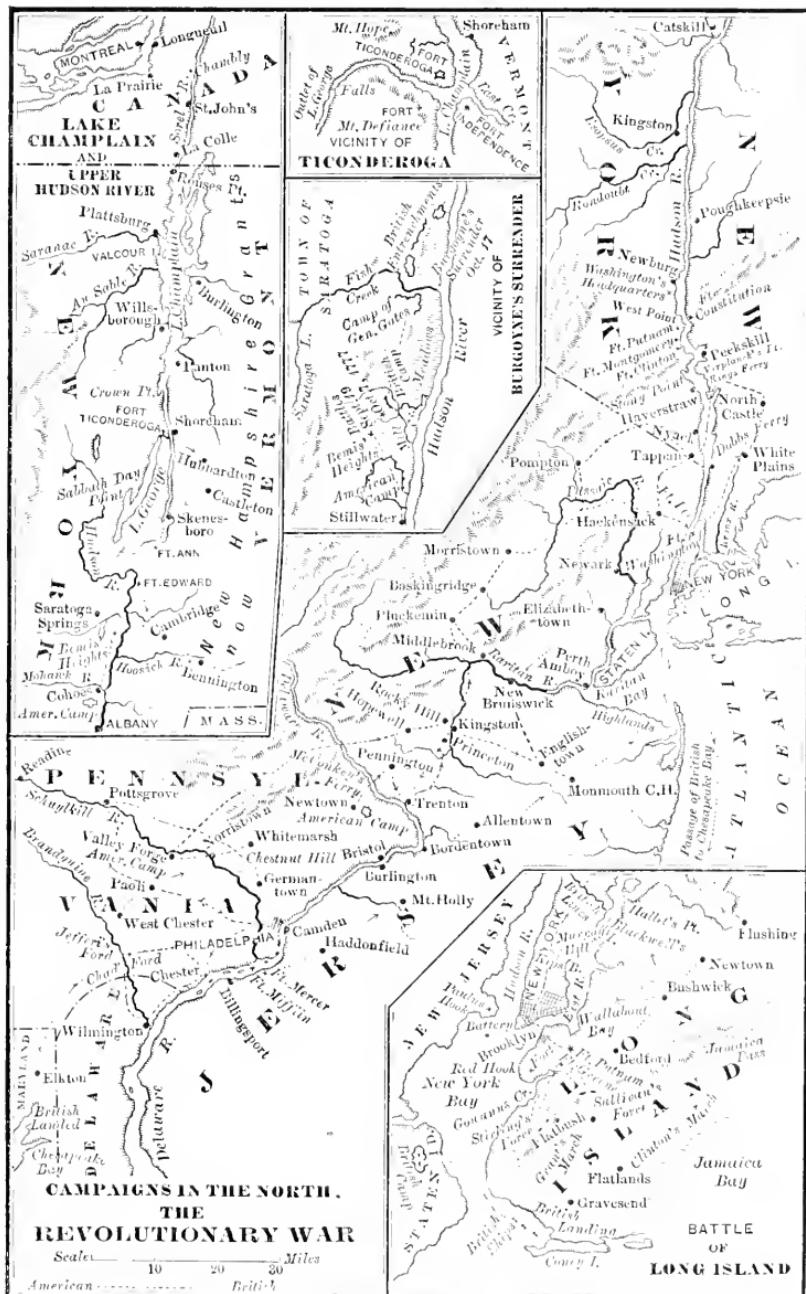
*Conclusion of the Campaign in Pennsylvania*.—After these battles, Howe turned his attention to the forts on the Delaware, which prevented his bringing supplies up to Philadelphia. The gallant defenders were soon forced by a severe bombardment to evacuate. Washington now retired to Valley Forge for winter quarters.

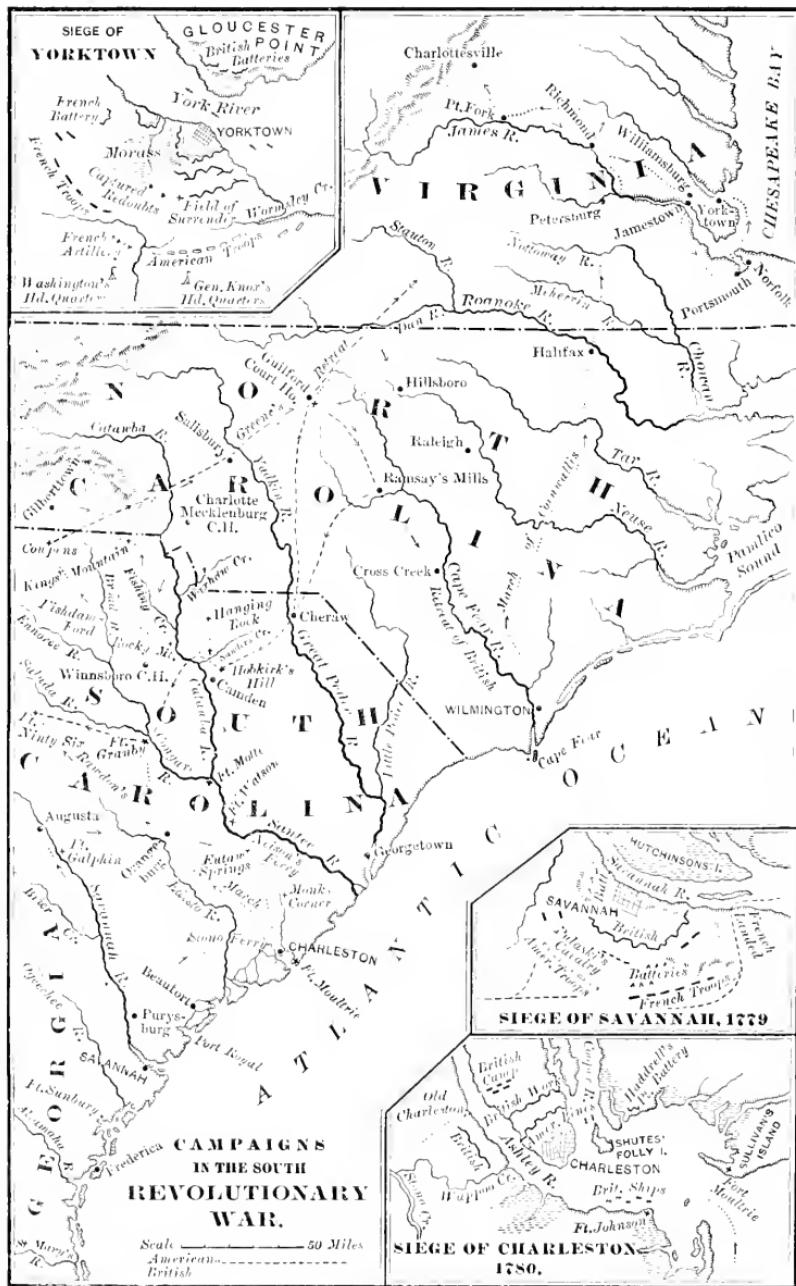
**Campaign at the North.**—While the British had been thus successful in Pennsylvania, their victories were more than counterbalanced by defeats at the North. An attempt to cut off New England from New York by an expedition along the old traveled French and Indian war route up Lake Champlain, ended in disaster.†

held his permission. Still undaunted, he purchased a vessel, fitted it out at his own expense, and, escaping the officers sent to detain him, crossed the ocean. As soon as he reached Charleston, he hastened to Philadelphia, and offering himself to Congress asked permission to serve as a volunteer without pay. A few days after, his acquaintance with Washington began, and it soon ripened into a tender and intimate friendship. His valor won for him a commission as major-general before he was twenty-one.

\* The British army was sadly demoralized by the festivities of their winter quarters. Franklin wittily said, "Howe has not taken Philadelphia so much as Philadelphia has taken Howe."

† Besides the capture of Burgoyne's army (p. 125), several minor events occurred during the year, which served to encourage the people.—(1.) Howe sent General Tryon with two thousand men to destroy the American stores at Danbury, Conn. Having accomplished his work, and set fire to the town, he began his retreat, plundering the





*Burgoyne's Invasion.*—In June, Burgoyne marched south from Canada with an army of over eight thousand British and Indians. Forts Crown Point, Ticonderoga, and Edward, and the supplies at Whitehall, successively fell into his hands. General Schuyler, having but a small force, could only obstruct his path through the wilderness, by felling trees across the road and breaking down bridges. The loss of so many strongholds caused general alarm. Lincoln—with the Massachusetts troops, Arnold—noted for his headlong valor, and Morgan—with his famous riflemen, were sent to check Burgoyne's advance. Militiamen gathered from the neighboring States,\* and an army was rapidly collected and drilled. So much dissatisfaction, however, arose with Schuyler that

people and devastating the country on his way. But the militiamen under Wooster, Arnold, and Silliman, handled his forces so roughly that they were glad to reach their boats. General Wooster, who was mortally wounded in the pursuit, was nearly seventy years of age, but fought with the vigor of youth. Two horses were shot under Arnold, and he received the fire of a whole platoon at a distance of thirty yards, yet escaped uninjured.—(2.) Colonel Meigs avenged the burning of Danbury. With about two hundred men he crossed in whale-boats to Long Island, destroyed a great quantity of stores, including twelve ships at Sag Harbor, took ninety prisoners, and escaped without losing a man.—(3.) The Americans were anxious to offset the capture of General Lee. General Prescott, who then held command in Rhode Island, finding himself surrounded by ships and a superior British force, became very negligent. Accordingly, Colonel Barton formed a plan to capture him. Dexterously avoiding the enemy's vessels, he rowed ten miles in whale-boats and with about forty militia landed near Prescott's quarters. Seizing the astonished sentinel who guarded his door, they hurried off the half-dressed general. A soldier escaping from the house gave the alarm, but the laughing guard assured him he had seen a ghost. They soon, however, found it to be no jesting matter, and vainly pursued the exultant Barton. This capture was very annoying to Prescott, as he had just offered a price for Arnold's head, and his tyrannical conduct had made him obnoxious to the people. General Howe readily parted with Lee in exchange for Prescott.

\* The outrages of the Indians along the route led many to join the army. None of their bloody acts caused more general execration than the murder of Jane McCrea. This young lady was the betrothed of a Captain Jones, of the British army. She lived near Fort Edward, in the family of her brother, who, being a whig, started for Albany on Burgoyne's approach. But she, hoping to meet her lover, lingered at the house of a Mrs. McNeil, a stanch loyalist, and a cousin of the British general, Fraser. Early one morning, the house was surprised by Indians, who dragged out the inmates and hurried them away toward Burgoyne's camp. Mrs. McNeil arrived there in safety. Soon, another party came in with fresh scalps, among which she recognized the long

he was superseded by Gates just as he was ready to reap the result of his well-laid schemes. With noble-minded patriotism, he made known to Gates all his plans and generously assisted him in their execution. The army was now stationed at Bemis' Heights, where fortifications were thrown up under the direction of Kosciusko\* (kōs s̄i ūs' ko).

*Burgoyne's Difficulties.*—In the meantime, before Gates took command, two events occurred which materially deranged the plans of Burgoyne.

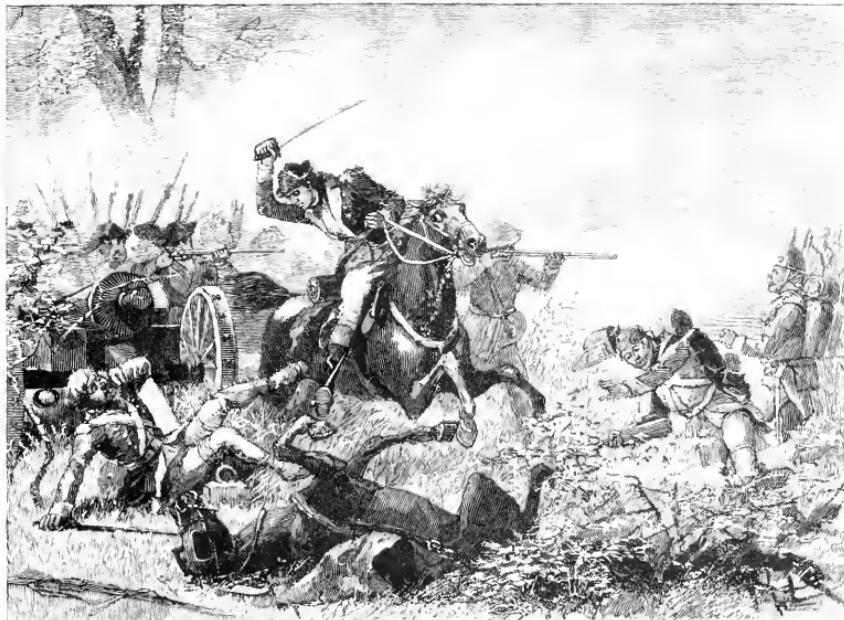
1. St. Leger had been sent to take Fort Schuyler,† thence to ravage the Mohawk Valley and join Burgoyne's army at Albany. General Arnold being dispatched to relieve that fort, accomplished it by stratagem. A half-witted tory boy who had been taken prisoner, was promised his freedom, if he would spread the report among St. Leger's troops that a large body of Americans was close at hand. The boy, having cut holes in his clothes, ran breathless into the camp of the besiegers, showing the bullet-holes and describing his narrow escape from the enemy. When asked their number, he mysteriously pointed upward to the leaves on the trees. The Indians and British were so frightened that they fled precipitately, leaving their tents and artillery behind them.

glossy hair of her friend. The savages declared that she had been killed by a chance shot from a pursuing party; whereupon they had scalped her to secure the bounty. The precise truth has never been known. Captain Jones secured the sad memento of his betrothed, and resigned. The government refusing his resignation, he deserted, and for over fifty years lived remote from society, a heart-broken man.

\* This general was a Pole of noble birth. While in France he formed the acquaintance of Franklin, who recommended him to Washington. He came to America and offered himself "to fight as a volunteer for American independence". "What can you do?" asked the commander. "Try me", was Kosciusko's laconic reply. Washington was greatly pleased with him, and made him his aid. He became a colonel in the engineer corps, and superintended the construction of the works at West Point. After the war, he returned home and led the Poles in their struggles for independence. At Cracow is a mound of earth, 150 feet high, raised in his memory. It is composed of soil brought from the battle-fields on which the Poles fought for liberty. In the new world, his name is perpetuated by a monument at West Point.

† Fort Stanwix, on the site of Rome, N. Y., in 1776 was named after Gen. Schuyler.

2. Burgoyne sent a detachment under Colonel Baum to seize the supplies the Americans had collected at Bennington, Vt. General Stark with the militia met him there. As Stark saw the British lines forming for the attack, he exclaimed, "There are the redcoats; we must



ARNOLD AT SARATOGA.

beat them to-day, or Betty Stark is a widow." His patriotism and bravery so inspired his raw troops that they defeated the British regulars and took over six hundred prisoners.\*

*The Two Battles of Saratoga* (Sept. 19 and Oct. 7).—Disappointed in his expectation of supplies and reinforcements from both these directions, Burgoyne now moved south-

\* One old man had five sons in the patriot army at Bennington. A neighbor, just from the field, told him that one had been unfortunate. "Has he proved a coward or a traitor?" asked the father. "Worse than that", was the answer; "he has fallen, but while bravely fighting." "Ah", said the father, "then I am satisfied."

ward and attacked Gates' army at Bemis' Heights near Saratoga. The armies surged to and fro through the day, like the ebbing and flowing of the tide. The strife did not cease until darkness closed over the battle-field. For two weeks afterward, both armies lay in camp fortifying their positions, and each watching for an opportunity to take the other at a disadvantage.\* Burgoyne, finding that his provisions were low and that he must either fight or fly, again moved out to attack the Americans. Arnold, who had been unjustly deprived of his command since the last battle, maddened by the sight of the conflict, rushed into the thickest of the fight.† Gates, fearing that he might win fresh laurels, ordered Major Armstrong to recall him, but he was already out of reach. He had no authority to fight, much less to direct; but, dashing to the head of his old command, where he was received with cheers, he ordered a charge on the British line. Urging on the fight, leading every onset, delivering his orders in person where the bullets flew thickest, he forced the British ‡ to their camp. Here the Hessians, dismayed by these terrific attacks, fired one volley and fled. Arnold, having forced an entrance, was wounded in the same leg as at Quebec (p. 112),

\* The British camp was kept in continual alarm. Officers and soldiers were constantly dressed and ready for action. One night, twenty young farmers residing near the camp, resolved to capture the enemy's advance picket-guard. Armed with fowling-pieces, they marched silently through the woods until they were within a few yards of the picket. They then rushed out from the bushes, the captain blowing an old horse-trumpet and the men yelling. There was no time for the sentinel's hail. "Ground your arms, or you are all dead men!" cried the patriot captain. Thinking that a large force had fallen upon them, the picket obeyed. The young farmers, with all the parade of regulars, led to the American camp over thirty British soldiers.

† So fierce was the battle, that a single cannon was taken and retaken five times. Finally, Colonel Cilly leaped upon it, waved his sword, and "dedicating the gun to the American cause", opened it upon the enemy with their own ammunition.

‡ General Fraser was the mind and soul of the British army. Morgan soon saw that this brave man alone stood between the Americans and victory. Calling to him some of his best men, he said, "That gallant officer is General Fraser. I admire and honor him; but he must die. Stand among those bushes and do your duty." In five minutes Fraser fell, mortally wounded.

and borne from the field, but not until he had won a victory while Gates stayed in his tent.

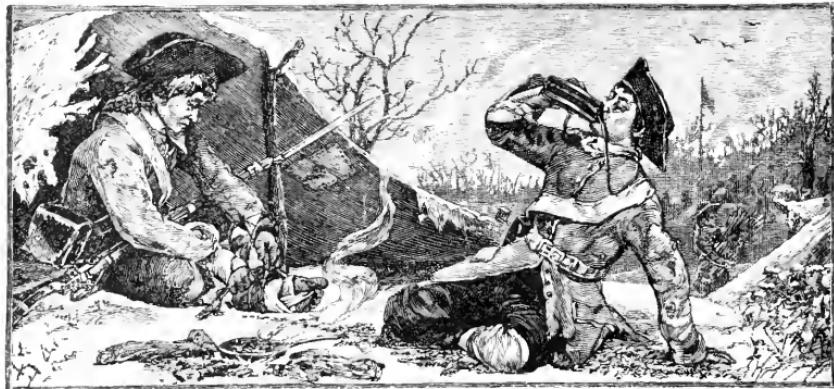
*Effects of these Battles.*—Burgoyne now fell back to Saratoga. Hemmed in on all sides, there was no hope of escape. Indians and tories were constantly deserting. Provisions were low and water was scarce, as no one, except the women, dared go to the river for it. The American batteries commanded the British camp. While a council of war, held in Burgoyne's tent, was considering the question of surrender, an 18-lb. cannon-ball passed over the table around which the officers sat. Under these circumstances, the decision was quickly made. The entire army, nearly six thousand strong, laid down their arms, and an American detachment marched into their camp, to the tune of *Yankee Doodle*. General Burgoyne handed his sword to General Gates, who promptly returned it.

A shout of joy went up all over the land at the news of this victory. From the despair caused by the defeats of Brandywine and Germantown, the nation now rose to the highest pitch of confidence.

## 1778.

**‘Winter in Valley Forge (1777-'78).**—The winter passed in Valley Forge was the gloomiest period of the war. The continental paper money was so depreciated in value that an officer's pay would not keep him in clothes. Many, having spent their fortune in the war, were compelled to resign, in order to get a living. The men were encamped in cold, comfortless huts, with little food or clothing. Barefooted, they left on the frozen ground their tracks in blood. Few had blankets, and straw could not be obtained. Soldiers, who were enfeebled by hunger and benumbed by cold, slept on

the bare earth. Sickness followed. With no change of clothing, no suitable food, and no medicines, death was the only relief. Amid this terrible suffering, the fires of patriotism burned brightly. Washington felt that his cause was just, and inspired all around him with his sublime faith.\*



IN CAMP AT VALLEY FORGE.

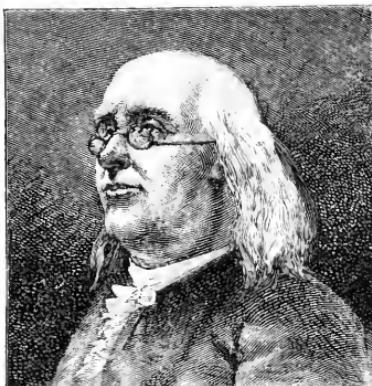
**Aid from France.**—In the spring, the hearts of all were gladdened by the news that, through the efforts of Frank-

\* During this winter, Washington was quartered at the house of Isaac Potts. One day, while Potts was on his way up the creek near by, he heard a voice of prayer. Softly following its direction, he soon discovered the General upon his knees, his cheeks wet with tears. Narrating the incident to his wife, he added with much emotion, "If there is any one to whom the Lord will listen, it is George Washington, and under such a commander, our independence is certain."—Besides all the perils of want and famine which he shared with his soldiers, Washington was called upon to suffer from envy and calumny. General Conway, a cunning, restless intriguer, formed a cabal of officers against Washington. Their plan was to wound his feelings so that he would resign. In that event, Gates, whose reputation was very high, would succeed to the command. Pennsylvania sent to Congress a remonstrance censuring Washington. The same was done by members from Massachusetts. Fortunately, the army and the best citizens knew the inspiration of the movement to be jealousy, and their indignation was unbounded. Neither Conway nor Adams dared show himself among the soldiers, and the attack recoiled on the heads of its instigators.—Soon after this, England sent commissioners with liberal proposals, which, before the war commenced, would have been accepted; but that day was past. Next, bribery was tried. Among those approached was General Reed, of Pennsylvania. He was offered ten thousand guineas and high honors if he would exert his influence to effect a reconciliation. "I am not worth purchasing", said the honest patriot, "but such as I am, the king of Great Britain is not rich enough to buy me."

lin,\* France had acknowledged the Independence of the United States, and that a fleet was on its way to help them in their struggle.

**Battle of Monmouth** (June 28).—Howe having returned to England, Clinton succeeded him. The British government, alarmed by the sending of the French fleet, ordered Clinton to concentrate his forces at New York. Washington rapidly followed the English across New Jersey and

\* Benjamin Franklin was born in Boston, 1706; died in Philadelphia, 1790. His father was a soap and candle maker, with small means, and Benjamin, being the youngest of seventeen children, had little opportunity to gratify his desire for knowledge. By abstaining from meat, he managed to buy a few books, which he diligently studied. At seventeen years of age, he landed in Philadelphia with a silver dollar and a shilling in copper. As, with his extra shirts and stockings stuffed in his pockets, he walked along the streets, eating the roll of bread which served for his breakfast, his future wife stood at her father's door and smiled at his awkward appearance, little dreaming of his brilliant future, or of its interest to her. He soon obtained employment as a printer. Being induced by false representations to go to England, he found himself almost penniless in a strange land. With his usual industry, he went to work, and soon made friends and a living. Returning to Philadelphia, he established a newspaper, and in 1732 commenced to publish "Poor Richard's Almanac", which for twenty years was quite as popular in Europe as in America. Its common-sense proverbs and useful hints are household words to this day. Retiring from business with a fine fortune, he devoted himself chiefly to science. His discoveries in electricity are world-renowned. (See Steele's New Physics, pp. 228, 251.) Franklin was an unflinching patriot. While in England he defended the cause of liberty with great zeal and ability. He helped to draft the Declaration of Independence, and was one of its signers. Having been appointed ambassador to France, he first invested all his ready money, \$15,000, in the continental loan, a practical proof of his patriotism, since its repayment was extremely improbable. His influence at the French court was unbounded. He was revered for his wit, his genius, his dignity, and his charming conversation. He became to the American cause in the old world what Washington was in the new. On his return, he was elected president of Pennsylvania for three successive years. He gave the whole of his salary, \$30,000, to benevolent objects. In his eighty-second year, he was a member of the Constitutional Convention. At his death, twenty thousand persons assembled to do honor to his memory.



BENJAMIN FRANKLIN.

overtook them at Monmouth. General Lee,\* who conducted the attack, ordered a retreat. The men, entangled in a swamp, were becoming demoralized as they retired from the field, when Washington, riding up, bitterly rebuked Lee, by his personal presence rallied the men, and sent them back against the enemy. The fight lasted all that long sultry day.† In the darkness of night, Clinton stole away with his men to New York.

**Campaign in Rhode Island.**—A combined attack on Newport was arranged to be made by the French fleet under D'Estaing (dĕs tăng'), and the American army under General Sullivan. Soon after the French entered Narragansett Bay, Howe arrived off the harbor with the English fleet. D'Estaing went out to meet him. A storm came on, which so shattered both fleets that they were compelled to put back for repairs. General Sullivan, being thus deserted, retreated just in time to escape Clinton, who came from New York with reinforcements. The French gave no further aid during the year.

**The Wyoming Massacre.**—In July, a band of tories and Indians, under Butler, entered the beautiful valley of the Wyoming. Most of the able-bodied men had gone to the war. The old men and the boys armed for the defense. The women and children fled for refuge to a fort near the present site of Wilkesbarre. Taking counsel of their courage and their helpless mothers, wives, and children, a handful of

\* Charles Lee, for his conduct at Monmouth, and disrespectful letters to Washington, and to Congress, was dismissed the army. He retired to his estate in Virginia, where he lived, with his dogs, in a rude house whose partitions were chalk marks on the floor—an improvement upon walls on which he prided himself.

† During the day, an artilleryman was shot at his post. His wife, Mary Pitcher, while bringing water to her husband from a spring, saw him fall and heard the commander order the piece to be removed from the field. Instantly dropping the pail, she hastened to the cannon, seized the rammer, and with great skill and courage performed her husband's duty. The soldiers gave her the nickname of Major Molly. Congress voted her a sergeant's warrant with half-pay through life.

men sallied out to meet the invaders, but were quickly defeated. All that night, the Indians tortured their prisoners in every way that savage cruelty could devise. The fort having been surrendered on promise of safety, Butler did his best to restrain his savage allies, but in vain. By night, the whole valley was ablaze with burning dwellings, while the people fled for their lives through the wilderness.

### 1779.

**Campaign at the South.**—At the close of the preceding autumn, the war was transferred to Georgia, and the South became henceforth the principal seat of conflict. Savannah and Augusta were captured, and soon the entire state was conquered. The English governor being restored, England could once more boast of a royal province among the colonies. The British general, Prevost, next marched against Charleston. He had scarcely summoned the city when he heard that Lincoln, his dreaded foe, was after him with the militia, and he was glad to escape back to Savannah.

*French-American Attack on Savannah.*—In September, D'Estaing joined Lincoln in besieging that city. After a severe bombardment, an unsuccessful assault was made, in which a thousand lives were lost. Count Pulaski\* was mortally wounded. The simple-hearted Sergeant Jasper died grasping the banner presented to his regiment at Fort Moultrie. D'Estaing refused to give further aid; thus again deserting the Americans when help was most needed.

\* Count Pulaski was a Polish patriot who, having lost his father and brothers in the hopeless defense of his country, and being himself outlawed, came to fight for the freedom of America. At first, he served as a volunteer. He fought valiantly at the battle of Brandywine. During the second year, he commanded an independent corps, called "Pulaski's Legion". He was buried in the Savannah River. The cornerstone of a monument raised to his memory in Savannah, was laid by La Fayette while visiting that city during his triumphal progress through the United States.

**Campaign at the North.**—Clinton did little except to send out predatory parties. Norwalk, Fairfield, and New Haven, Conn. were either burned or plundered. Tryon, who commanded the Connecticut expedition,\* boasted of his clemency in leaving a single house standing on the New England coast.

*The Capture of Stony Point*, by General Wayne, was one of the most brilliant exploits of the war. The countersign, which, curiously enough, was "The fort is ours", was obtained from a negro who was in the habit of selling strawberries to the British. He guided the troops in the darkness to the causeway leading over the flooded marsh around the foot of the hill, on which the fort was situated. The unsuspecting sentinel, having received the countersign, was chatting with the negro, when he was suddenly seized and gagged. Wayne's men passed over the causeway and reached the base of the hill undiscovered. Forming in two divisions, with unloaded muskets and fixed bayonets, they commenced the ascent of the steep and narrow path which led to the top. They had nearly reached the picket before they were discovered. Fire was at once opened upon them. Wayne was wounded, but commanded his aids to carry him that he might die at the head of the column. The rush of his men was irresistible. An instant more, and a deafening shout told that the fort was won. The British lost in killed, wounded, and prisoners, about six hundred men.

*General Sullivan's Expedition.*—The atrocities of the Indians had kept the inhabitants of the Wyoming and Mohawk valleys in continued terror. In the summer, Gen-

\* General Putnam was at Horse Neck when Tryon was in the vicinity. Hastily gathering a few militia, he annoyed the British as long as possible, and then, compelled to flee before the enemy's overwhelming force, his men hid themselves in the adjacent swamp, while he, spurring his spirited horse over a precipice, descended a zigzag path, where the British dragoons did not dare to follow.

eral Sullivan led an expedition into the Genesee country. Near Elmira, N. Y., he fought a fierce battle with the Indians and their tory allies. The savages, being defeated, fled in dismay, while Sullivan marched to and fro through that beautiful region, laying waste their corn-fields, felling their orchards, and burning their houses.\*



CAPTURE OF STONY POINT BY WAYNE.

**Naval Exploits.**—No American successes caused more annoyance to the British than those of the navy. In 1775, Washington fitted out several vessels to cruise along the New England coast as privateers. In the same year, Congress established a naval department. Swift sailing vessels, manned by bold seamen, infested every avenue of commerce. Within three years they captured

\* The Indians, in the fertile country of the Cayugas and Senecas, had towns and villages regularly laid out; framed houses, some of them well finished, painted and having chimneys, and broad and productive fields, with orchards of apple, pear, and peach trees. (See note, p. 12.)

five hundred ships. They even cruised among the British Isles, and, entering harbors, seized and burned ships lying at English wharves.

*Paul Jones* is the most famous of these naval heroes. While cruising with a squadron of five vessels off the north-east coast of England, he met the *Serapis* and the *Countess of Scarborough* convoying a fleet of merchantmen. At half-past seven in the evening of September 23, he laid his own vessel, the *Bonhomme Richard*,\* alongside the *Serapis*, and a desperate struggle ensued. In the midst of the engagement, he lashed the ships together.† The crews then fought hand to hand. The *Richard* was old and rotten. Water poured into the hold. Three times both vessels were on fire. At ten o'clock the *Serapis* surrendered. Meanwhile, the *Pallas*, one of his companions, captured the *Countess of Scarborough*, but the other ships rendered him no aid. Indeed, the *Alliance*, Captain Landis, repeatedly fired into the *Richard*, hoping to force Jones to surrender, that Landis might then capture the *Serapis* and retake the *Richard*. As Jones' vessel was already in a sinking condition, he transferred his crew to the captured frigate, and sailed for the Texel.

## 1780.

**Campaign at the South.**—Georgia having been subdued, the war was now renewed in South Carolina. Charleston was attacked by land and sea. General Lincoln, after enduring a siege of forty days and a terrible bombardment,

\* Jones had given this name (Goodman Richard) to his ship in honor of Dr. Franklin, whose sayings as "Poor Richard" he warmly admired.

† At this point, the contest had been raging an hour, and the ships had twice fallen foul of each other. The first time, the *Serapis* hailed the *Richard*, asking if she had "struck her colors". "I have not yet begun to fight", was the reply of Jones.

was forced to surrender. Marauding expeditions\* were sent out which soon overran the whole State. Clinton returned to New York, leaving Cornwallis in command.

*Battle of Camden* (Aug. 16).—General Gates, “the conqueror of Burgoyne”, now taking command of the troops at the South,† marched to meet the enemy under Cornwallis near Camden. Singularly, both generals had appointed the same time to make a night attack. While marching for this purpose, the advance guards of the two armies unexpectedly encountered each other in the woods. After some sharp skirmishing, the armies waited for day. At dawn, Cornwallis ordered a charge. The militia, demoralized by the fighting in the night, fled at the first fire, but De Kalb, with the continental regulars, stood firm. At last, he fell, pierced with eleven wounds. His brave comrades for a time fought desperately over his body, but were overwhelmed by numbers. The army was so scattered that it could not be collected. A few of the officers met Gates eighty miles in the rear with no soldiers. All organized resistance to British rule now ceased in the South.

*Partisan Corps.*—The Carolinas were full of tories. Many of them joined the British army; others organized companies that mercilessly robbed and murdered their whig neighbors. On the other hand, there were patriot bands which rendezvoused (*ren'da wood*) in swamps, and sallied out as occasion offered. These partisan corps kept the

\* One of these, under the command of the brutal Tarleton, at *Waxhaw Creek*, overtook a body of four hundred Continental troops and a small party of cavalry, under Colonel Buford. The British gave no quarter, and after the Americans surrendered, mercilessly maimed and butchered the larger portion of them. “Tarleton’s Quarter” became, henceforth, a proverb at the South.

† Lee met Gates on his way to join the southern army. His well-worded caution, “Beware your northern laurels do not turn to southern willows”, seems almost prophetic of the Camden disaster.

country in continual terror. Marion,\* Sumter,† Pickens, and Lee were noted patriot leaders. Their bands were

strong enough to cut off British detachments, and even successfully attack small garrisons. The cruel treatment which the whigs received from the British‡ drove many to this partisan warfare. The issue of the contest at the South was mainly decided by these bold citizen soldiers.

**Continental Money** had now been issued by Congress to the



MARION.

\* A British officer sent to negotiate concerning an exchange of prisoners, dined with Marion. The dinner consisted of roasted potatoes, served on pieces of bark. Surprised at this meager diet, he made some inquiries, when he found that this was their customary fare; that the patriot general received no pay; and that this "Bayard of the South", as Marion was called, had then neither blanket nor hat. This devotion to liberty so affected the officer that he resigned his commission.

† At *Hanging Rock* (Aug. 6), Sumter gained a victory over a strong body of British and tories. He began the action with only two rounds of ammunition, but soon supplied himself from the fleeing tories. Frequently, in these contests, a portion of the bands would go into a battle without guns, arming themselves with the muskets of their comrades as they fell. At *King's Mountain* (Oct. 7), a large body of independent riflemen, each company under its own leader, attacked Ferguson, who had been sent out to rally the tories of the neighborhood. Ferguson and four hundred and fifty-six of his men were killed or severely wounded, and the rest taken prisoners.

‡ An event which occurred in Charleston aroused the bitterest resentment. When that city was captured by the British, Colonel Isaac Hayne, with others, was paroled, but was afterward ordered into the British ranks. At this time, his wife and several of his children lay at the point of death with small-pox. The choice was given him to become a British subject or to be placed in close confinement. Agonized by thoughts of his dying family, he signed a pledge of allegiance to England, with the assurance that he should never be required to fight against his countrymen. Being afterward summoned by Lord Rawdon to join the British army, he considered the pledge annulled, and raised a partisan band. He was captured, and without being allowed a trial, was condemned to death. The citizens of Charleston vainly implored pardon for him. Lord Rawdon allowed him forty-eight hours to take leave of his children, when he was hanged.

amount of \$200,000,000. At this time, it was so much depreciated that \$40 in bills were worth only \$1 in specie. A pair of boots cost \$600 in continental currency. A soldier's pay for a month would hardly buy him a dinner. To make the matter worse, the British flooded the country with counterfeits, which could not be told from the genuine. Many persons refused to take continental money. The sufferings of the soldiers and the difficulty of procuring supplies may readily be imagined.\* The Pennsylvania regiments in camp at Morristown, claiming that their time had expired, demanded their discharge. At last, 1,300 strong, they set out for Princeton to secure redress at the point of the bayonet, but a committee of Congress succeeded in satisfying them.†

**Arnold's Treason.**—The English did little at the North, and the condition of Washington's army prevented his making any movement. Meanwhile, the cause of liberty suffered a terrible blow from one who had been its gallant defender. General Arnold, whose bravery at Quebec and Saratoga had awakened universal admiration, was stationed at Philadelphia while his wound was healing. He there married a tory lady, and lived in great extravagance. By various acts of oppression, he rendered himself so odious that on one occasion he was publicly mobbed. Charges being preferred against him, he was convicted and sentenced to be reprimanded by the commander-in-chief. Washington performed the duty very gently and considerately; but Arnold, stung by the disgrace and desperate in fortune, resolved to gratify both his revenge and love of

\* In this crisis, Robert Morris, of Philadelphia, sent three million rations. Soldiers' relief associations were organized by the women of that city. They made twenty-two hundred shirts, each inscribed with the name of the lady who sewed it.

† Clinton's agents went among the troops and offered large rewards for desertion. The emissaries mistook their men, for the soldiers gave them up as spies.

money by betraying his country. He accordingly secured from Washington the command of West Point, at that time the most important post in America. He then proposed to Clinton, with whom he had previously corresponded, to surrender it to the British. The offer was accepted, and Major André appointed to confer with him. André ascended the Hudson, and on the night of September 21, went ashore from the English ship *Vulture* to meet the traitor. Morning dawned before they had completed their plans. In the meantime, fire having been opened on the *Vulture*, she had dropped down the river. André, now left within the American lines, was obliged to make his way back to New York by land. He had reached Tarrytown in safety, when, at a sudden turn in the road, his horse's reins were seized, and three men\* sprung before him. His manner awakening suspicion, they searched him, and, finding papers which seemed to prove him a spy, carried him to the nearest American post. Arnold was at breakfast, when he received a note announcing André's capture. He called aside his wife, and told her of his peril. Terrified by his words, she fainted. Kissing his boy, who lay asleep in the cradle, Arnold darted out of the house, mounted a horse, by an unfrequented path reached the river, jumped into his boat, and was rowed to the *Vulture*. He received, as the reward of his treachery, £6,315, a colonelcy in the English army, and the contempt of everybody. The very name, "Arnold the Traitor", will always declare his infamy.† André was tried and hanged as a spy. Every effort was made to save him, and his fate awakened universal sympathy.

\* The names of these men were Paulding, Van Wart, and Williams. André offered them his horse, watch, purse, and any sum they might name, if they would release him. The incorruptible patriots declared that they would not let him go for ten thousand guineas. Congress voted to each of them a silver medal and a pension for life.

† Arnold was thoroughly despised by the British officers, and often insulted. Many

## 1781.

**Campaign at the South.**—General Greene, who was appointed to succeed General Gates, found the army to consist of only two thousand half-clothed, half-starved men. A part of his force, under Morgan, was attacked (January 17) at Cowpens\* by Tarleton. The militia fleeing, the continentals fell back to secure a better position. The British mistook this for a retreat, and were rushing on in confusion, when the continentals suddenly faced about, poured in a deadly fire at only thirty yards distance, and drove them in utter rout. Tarleton fled to Cornwallis, who set out in hot haste, eager to punish the victors and recapture the prisoners. Morgan started for Virginia, and crossed the Catawba just before Cornwallis appeared in sight. Night came on, and with it rain, which raised the river so high as to keep the impatient Cornwallis waiting three days.

*Greene's Retreat.*—General Greene now joined Morgan, and conducted the retreat. At the Yadkin, just as the Americans had reached the other side, it began to rain. When Cornwallis came up, the river was so swollen that he could not cross. He, however, marched up the stream, effected a

stories are told illustrative of English sentiment toward him. A member of Parliament, about to address the House of Commons, happening, as he rose, to see Arnold in the gallery, said, pointing to the traitor, "Mr. Speaker, I will not speak while that man is in the house." George the Third introduced Arnold to Earl Barearras, one of Burgoyne's officers at Bemis' Heights. "Sire", said the proud old Earl as he turned from Arnold, refusing his hand, "I know General Arnold, and abominable traitors." When Talleyrand was about to come to America, he sought letters of introduction from Arnold, but received the reply, "I was born in America; I lived there to the prime of my life; but, alas! I can call no man in America my friend."

\* Colonel William A. Washington, in a personal combat in this battle, wounded Tarleton. Months afterward, the British officer, while conversing with Mrs. Jones, a witty American lady, sneeringly said, "That Colonel Washington is very illiterate. I am told that he can not write his name." "Ah, Colonel," replied she, "you bear evidence that he can make his mark."—Tarleton expressing, at another time, his desire to see Colonel Washington, the lady replied, "Had you looked behind you at Cowpens, you might have had that pleasure."

passage, and was soon in full pursuit again. Now came a race, on parallel roads, thirty miles per day, for the fords of the Dan. Greene reached them first, and Cornwallis gave up the chase. This signal deliverance of Greene's exhausted army awoke every pious feeling of the American heart, and was a cause for general thanksgiving.\*

*Campaign Closed.*—Having rested his men, Greene again took the field, harassing the enemy by a fierce partisan warfare. At GUILFORD COURT-HOUSE (March 15), he hazarded a battle. The militia fled at the first fire, but the continental regulars fought as in the time of De Kalb. The Americans at last retired, but the British had bought their victory so dearly that Cornwallis also retreated. Greene again pursuing, Cornwallis shut himself up in Wilmington. Thereupon Greene turned into South Carolina, and, with the aid of Marion, Sumter, Lee, and Pickens, nearly delivered this State and Georgia from the English.† In the battle of EUTAW SPRINGS (Sept. 8), the British were so crippled that they retired toward Charleston. Cornwallis, refusing to follow Greene into South Carolina, had already gone north into Virginia, and though a fierce partisan warfare

\* During this retreat, General Greene, after a hard day's ride in the rain, alighted at the door of Mrs. Elizabeth Steele, in Salisbury, N. C., announcing himself as "fatigued, hungry, cold, and penniless". Quickly providing the honored guest with a warm supper before a cheerful fire, this patriotic woman brought forth two small bags of specie, her earnings for years. "Take these", she said; "you will want them, and I can do without them." "Never", says his biographer, "did relief come at a more needy moment; the hero resumed his dangerous journey that night with a lightened heart."—Another story illustrative of the patriotism of the southern women is told of Mrs. Motte. The British had taken possession of her house, fortified and garrisoned it. On Colonel Lee's advance, she furnished him a bow and arrows, by means of which he threw fire upon the shingled roof. Her mansion was soon in flames, and the occupants, to save their lives, surrendered.

† Congress voted the highest honors to General Greene, who, by his prudence, wisdom, and valor, had, with such insignificant forces and miserable equipments, achieved so much for the cause of liberty. He never gained a decided victory, yet his defeats had all the effect of successes, and his very retreats strengthened the confidence of his men and weakened that of the enemy.





3.



1.



5.

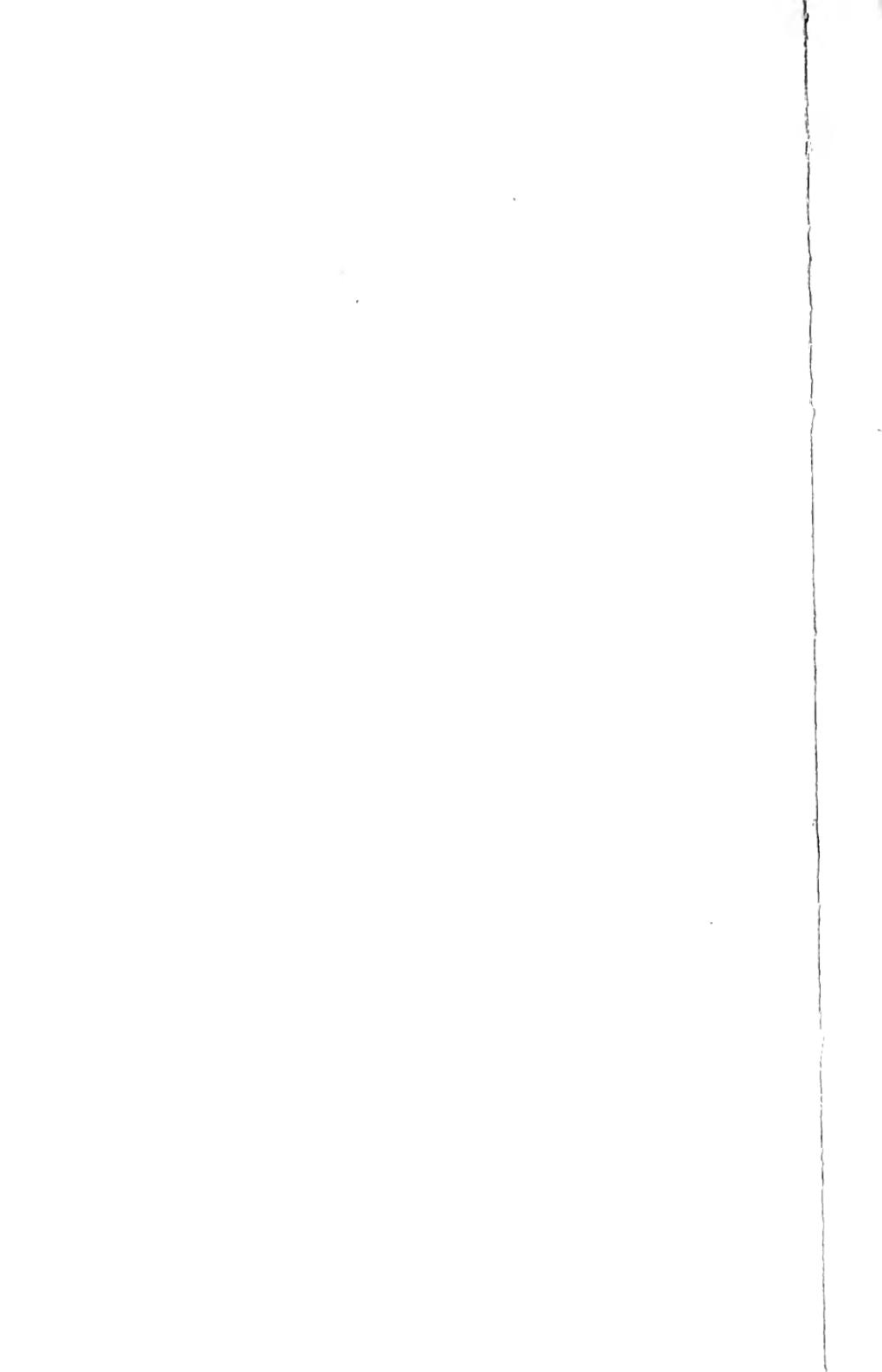
1. Colonial Flag. 2. Bunker Hill Flag. 3. Pine-tree Flag of the Navy. 4. The



6.

2.

6. The present "Star-spangled Banner."



still distracted the country, this engagement closed the long and fiercely fought contest at the South.\*

**Campaign at the North.**—The traitor Arnold, burning with hatred, led an expedition into Virginia. He conducted the war with great brutality, burning private as well as public property. La Fayette was sent to check him, but with his small force† could accomplish little. Cornwallis, arriving from the South, now took Arnold's place, and continued this marauding tour. Clinton, however, fearing Washington, who seemed to threaten New York, directed Cornwallis to keep near the sea-coast so as to be ready to help him. Cornwallis, accordingly, after having destroyed ten million dollars worth of property, fortified himself at Yorktown.

**Siege of Yorktown.**—It was arranged to attack Cornwallis at this place by the combined American‡ and French forces. Washington, by a feint on New York, kept Clinton in the dark regarding his plans until he was far on his way§

\* At the battle of Eutaw, Manning, a noted soldier of Lee's legion, was in hot pursuit of the flying British, when he suddenly found himself surrounded by the enemy, and not an American within forty rods. He did not hesitate, but, seizing an officer by the collar, and wresting his sword from him by main force, kept his body as a shield while, under a heavy fire, he rapidly backed off from the perilous neighborhood. The frightened British officer when thus summarily captured, began immediately to enumerate his titles: "I am Sir Henry Barry, deputy adjutant-general, captain in 52d regiment," etc., etc. "Enough," interrupted his captor; "you are just the man I was looking for."

† Many of La Fayette's men having deserted, he set forth the baseness of such conduct, and then offered to all who desired it, a permit to go home. Not a man accepted, nor was there after this a single case of desertion. One soldier, not being able to walk, hired a cart that he might keep up with his comrades. Shoes, linen, and many other necessaries were provided at La Fayette's expense. The generosity of this general and the devotion of his soldiery seemed to vie with each other.

‡ During the preceding winter, Robert Morris sent to the starving army several thousand barrels of flour. He now furnished nearly every thing required for this expedition, issuing his own notes to the amount of \$1,400,000. It is sad to know that this patriot, so often the resource of Washington, lost his fortune in his old age, and was confined in prison for debt.

§ Washington, at this time, visited Mount Vernon, which he had not seen since he left it to attend the Continental Congress in 1775. Six years and a half had nearly elapsed, yet he remained only about two days.

south with the continental army.\* On the 28th of September, the joint forces, sixteen thousand strong,† took up their position before Yorktown. Batteries were opened‡ upon the city, and the vessels in the harbor fired by red-hot shells. Two redoubts were carried ; one by the Americans, the other by the French. The most hearty good-will prevailed. The patriots slept in the open air that their allies might use their tents. Breaches having been made in the walls, Cornwallis saw no hope of escape and capitulated (Oct. 19).

*The Scene of the Surrender* was imposing. The army was drawn up in two lines, extending over a mile—the Americans on one side with General Washington at the head, and the French on the other with Count Rochambeau (rō shōng bo'). The captive army, about 7,000 men, with slow step, shouldered arms, and cased colors, marched between them. A prodigious crowd, anxious to see Cornwallis, had assembled; but the haughty general, mortified at his defeat, feigned illness, and sent his sword§ by General O'Hara.

*The Effect.*—Both parties felt that this surrender virtually ended the war. Joy pervaded every patriot heart. All the hardships of the past were forgotten in the thought

\* Clinton sent Arnold on a pillaging tour into Connecticut in order to force Washington to return. He, however, was not to be diverted from his great enterprise, and left New England to take care of herself. New London was pillaged and burned, Arnold watching the fire from a church steeple. At Fort Griswold, the commander and half the garrison were butchered. After this fort had been taken, a British officer entering asked, "Who commands here?" "I did," said Colonel Ledyard, as he advanced to surrender his sword, "but you do now." With fiendish malignity, the officer seized the weapon and thrust it into the bosom of the brave colonel.

† There were present about 5,500 continentals, 7,000 French, and, in addition, about 3,500 Virginia militia under Governor Nelson.

‡ Governor Nelson commanded the battery that fired first upon the British. Cornwallis occupied the governor's fine stone mansion. The patriot pointed one of his heaviest guns toward his house, and ordered the gunner to fire upon it with vigor. The British could not make even the home of the noble Nelson a shield against his patriotic efforts. The house still bears the scars of the bombardment.

§ With a fine delicacy of feeling, Washington directed the sword to be delivered to General Lincoln, who, eighteen months before, had surrendered at Charleston.

that America was free. The news reached Philadelphia at the dead of night. The people were awakened by the watchman's cry, "Past two o'clock and Cornwallis is taken." Lights flashed through the houses, and soon the streets were thronged with crowds eager to learn the glad news. Some were speechless with delight. Many wept,



CAPTURE OF A REDOUBT AT YORKTOWN.

and the old door-keeper of Congress died of joy. Congress met at an early hour, and that afternoon marched in solemn procession to the Lutheran church to return thanks to Almighty God.

All hope of subduing America was now abandoned by the people of England, and they loudly demanded the removal of the ministers who still counseled war.\* The House of Com-

\* When Lord North, prime minister of Great Britain, heard the news of the defeat, he was greatly excited. With looks and actions indicating the deepest distress, he again and again exclaimed, "O God! it is all over".

## RURAL LIFE ONE HUNDRED YEARS AGO.

**New England Farm and Village Life** in the 18th century presented a strange contrast to that with which we are familiar. The house of the settler was built of logs, the chinks daubed with clay, and the roof thatched with long grass. In the later and better class of dwellings, the logs were hewn square so as to need no chinking; or a frame was made of heavy oak timbers, some of them eighteen inches in diameter, and all mortised and braced together in a manner that would be bewildering enough to a carpenter of to-day. The sides were covered with split oak clapboards, and the roof with split cedar shingles, fastened by large wrought-iron nails. The windows consisted of two small lead frames, set with a few tiny, diamond-shaped panes of glass (or, sometimes, oiled paper), and hinged so as to open outward against the house. As the building stood exactly facing the south, the sun "shone square in" at noon, and gave warning of the dinner hour.

The doors were of oak plank doubled and nailed together with spikes arranged in the form of diamonds. They were often hung on wooden hinges, and were securely fastened at night by heavy wooden cross-bars. In the center of the house, or, externally in the poorer dwellings, rose a stone or brick chimney, about twelve feet square at the base,\* affording a fire-place large enough for seats to be placed at the side, where the children could sit in the winter evening and look up at the stars. To "lay the fire" was no small matter; for the back, a huge "back-log", perhaps four feet long, was rolled in; then on the andirons was placed a "front log"; between these were piled enormous quantities of smaller wood.

The kitchen and the "best room" were the chief apartments. In the former, the center of attraction was the great fire-place with its roaring fire, its high-backed wooden settle, and its swinging crane with pot-hooks to hold the iron pots for cooking. The ceiling of the room was rarely seven feet high, and the sturdy farmer often brushed against it with his bear-skin cap. From the bare joists overhead, hung bunches of herbs, seed-corn, and long strings of drying apples. The walls of the room, in the better buildings, were plastered and whitewashed. The furniture was plain; a tall wooden clock; a dresser set out with the cherished pewter dishes brought over from England; a spinning-wheel; and, perhaps, a loom for weaving. (See pages 93, 94.)

The "best room" was used only on state occasions. Ordinarily, it was carefully closed and locked to keep out the flies and preserve its sacred precincts from unlawful intruders. The andirons were of brass that shone like gold, and the fire-place in summer was garnished with asparagus branches. On the mantel-shelf, stood the high brass candlesticks, and the accompanying tray-and-snuffers. There was no carpet, but the floor was sanded and marked off by the housewife in many a quaint design. Against the walls, hung the family paintings, fondly cherished not only as mementos of the departed, but, also, of the life beyond the seas. Here, too, was the library containing a few well-read books,—for books were scarce and costly, and reading was a serious matter, taken up for improvement and not

\* In the better houses, a brick oven was built in the chimney. This was heated by a fire of fine "kindlings"; then swept clean, and the bread or beans set in to bake. The bricks retained the high temperature for a long time, and the "rye-and-Indian" bread, for which our New England grandmothers were noted, was left in the oven all night.

for pastime. Among those few books were sure to be found the family Bible, Young's *Night Thoughts*, Watts' *Improvement of the Mind*, Fox's *Lives of the Martyrs*, Addison's *Spectator*, and Milton's *Paradise Lost*.

As the tiny windows gave little light by day, so by night the home-made tallow candles, or the pine-knot on the hearth, shed but a faint or flickering illumination. In cold weather, the fire was heaped high—for wood was abundant—but through numerous chinks and crevices, the winter air poured in, so that, as an old writer remarks, “while one side of the inmate was toasting, the other was freezing.” To make matters still worse, the smoke escaping into the room by no means favored study, or any employment requiring the use of the eyes.

The food was served generally on wooden platters. It was plentiful but coarse. Fresh meat was rarely seen, except when game was taken. Salt pork or beef, salt fish, vegetables, and “rye-and-Indian” bread or “bannocks”\* composed the staple diet. The farmer's breakfast often consisted mainly of “bean porridge” seasoned with savory herbs. Tea and coffee were unknown during the 17th century. The minister, we are told, had white bread provided for him as a special favor.

Friction matches had not been invented, and the fire was carefully kept over night in the ashes. If it unfortunately “went out”, it was relighted by sparks from the flint-and-steel, or by live coals brought from a neighbor's hearth.

Several vegetables and fruits now common were then unknown, or were unused as food. Tomatoes, or, as they were called, “love apples”, were thought to be poisonous, and were cultivated only in the flower-garden for the beauty of the bright red fruit. Rhubarb, sweet corn, cantaloupes, head-lettuce, and all the newer and finer varieties of pears, grapes, peaches, etc., have enriched the diet of a later generation. The fox-grape, which we consider a sour, ill-flavored fruit, was then a luxury to be attained only by the well-to-do. Ice in summer was unheard of, and the careful housekeeper cooled her butter for use by hanging it in a pail down the well.

Geraniums and verbenas were not seen in the flower-gardens of our great-grandmothers, who delighted their eyes with hollyhocks, sunflowers, lilacs, pinks, sweet-williams, peonies, etc. Narrow beds of these “posies” bordered the path leading from the front door, through the little front yard, which was carefully fenced off from the portion of the premises to which ordinary people had access. The front yard, the front door, and the best room were all considered too good for everyday use.

There were no wheeled carriages or wagons until the middle of the 18th century, and few until after the Revolution. Everybody went on foot or rode on horseback, as his means permitted; and the bridegroom, gentleman or workman alike, who sought a wife in a distant town, rode on horseback and brought home his bride on a pillion behind him. So little travel was there in those days, that a journey that now attracts no attention, then made one an object of public curiosity. So late as 1795, it is stated that a person who had been across the ocean was pointed out in the streets as a “man who had been to Europe”.

\* Bannocks were somewhat like the present “hoe-cake” of the South—merely flat cakes of Indian meal, or rye, wet with water and baked over the hot coals on the hearth.

## CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

	PAGE
1765. The Stamp Act passed, March 8 . . . . .	102
1766. The Stamp Act repealed by Parliament, March 18 . . . . .	103
1767. A tax imposed on tea, etc., June 29 . . . . .	103
1768. The British troops arrived at Boston, September 27 . . . . .	104
1770. Boston Massacre, March 5 . . . . .	104
All duties except on tea repealed, April 12 . . . . .	105
1773. The tea thrown overboard in Boston harbor, December 16. . . . .	105
1774. "Boston Port Bill" passed, March 31 . . . . .	105
First Continental Congress met at Philadelphia, September 5 . . . . .	106
1775. Battle of Lexington, April 19 . . . . .	106
Ticonderoga taken by Allen and Arnold, May 10 . . . . .	110
Crown Point taken, May 12 . . . . .	111
Washington elected commander-in-chief, June 15. . . . .	111
Battle of Bunker Hill, June 17 . . . . .	108
Washington took command before Boston, July 2-3 . . . . .	111
Montreal surrendered to Montgomery, November 13 . . . . .	112
Battle of Quebec—Montgomery killed, December 31 . . . . .	112
1776. Boston evacuated by the British troops, March 17. . . . .	112
Attack on Fort Moultrie, June 28 . . . . .	113
Declaration of Independence, July 4 . . . . .	114
Battle of Long Island, August 27 . . . . .	114
Battle of White Plains, October 28 . . . . .	116
Fort Washington taken, November 16 . . . . .	116
Washington's retreat through New Jersey . . . . .	116
Battle of Trenton, December 26 . . . . .	116
1777. Battle of Princeton, January 3 . . . . .	118
Murder of Miss McCrea, July 27 . . . . .	121
Battle of Bennington, August 16 . . . . .	123
Battle of Brandywine, September 11 . . . . .	119
First battle of Saratoga, September 19 . . . . .	124
Philadelphia captured by the British, September 26 . . . . .	120
Battle of Germantown, October 4 . . . . .	120
Second battle of Saratoga, October 7 . . . . .	124
Surrender of Burgoyne, October 17 . . . . .	125
1778. American Independence acknowledged by France, February 6 . . . . .	127
Battle of Monmouth, June 28. . . . .	127
Massacre of Wyoming, July 3 . . . . .	128
French fleet arrived in Narragansett Bay, July 29. . . . .	128
British captured Savannah, Ga., December 29 . . . . .	129
1779. Stony Point captured by General Wayne, July 15 . . . . .	130
Sullivan defeated the Indians near Elmira, August 29. . . . .	131
Paul Jones' victory, September 23 . . . . .	132
D'Estaing and Lincoln repulsed at Savannah, October 9 . . . . .	129
1780. Charleston surrendered to the British, May 12 . . . . .	133
Battle of Hanging Rock, S. C., August 6 . . . . .	134
Battle of Camden, August 16 . . . . .	133

	PAGE
1780. André executed, October 2 . . . . .	136
Battle of King's Mountain, October 7 . . . . .	134
1781. Richmond burned by Arnold, January 5 . . . . .	137
Battle of the Cowpens, January 17 . . . . .	137
Greene's celebrated retreat, January and February . . . . .	137
Battle of Guilford Court-House, March 15 . . . . .	138
Battle of Eutaw Springs, September 8 . . . . .	138
Surrender of Cornwallis, October 19 . . . . .	140
1782. Charleston, S. C., evacuated, December 14 . . . . .	142
1783. Savannah evacuated by the British, July 11 . . . . .	142
Treaty of Peace signed at Paris, September 3 . . . . .	142
New York evacuated by the British, November 25 . . . . .	142
Washington resigned his commission, December 23 . . . . .	142
1787. Shays' Rebellion in Massachusetts . . . . .	143
Constitution of the United States adopted, September 17 . . . . .	143
1788. Constitution adopted by nine States . . . . .	143

## REFERENCES FOR READING.

*Lossing's Field Book of the Revolution.*—*Garden's Anecdotes of the Revolution.*—*Grace Greenwood's Forest Tragedy.*—*Campbell's Gertrude of Wyoming (Poem).*—*Halleck's Wyoming (Poem).*—*Simms' Life of Marion; also his Series of Historical Tales.*—*Bryant's Song of Marion's Men, and Seventy-six (Poems).*—*Magoon's Orators of American Revolution.*—*Headley's Washington and his Generals.*—*Wirt's Life of Patrick Henry.*—*G. W. Greene's Historical View of American Revolution, and Life of General Greene.*—*Parton's Life of Benjamin Franklin.*—*Longfellow's Paul Revere's Ride, and Pulaski's Banner (Poems).*—*Headley's Life of La Fayette.*—*Hawthorne's Ticonderoga (Twice Told Tales).*—*Mrs. Ellet's Women of the American Revolution.*—*Watson's Camp Fires of the Revolution.*—*Raymond's Women of the South.*—*Sabine's Loyalists of the American Revolution.*—*Lee's War in the Southern Department.*—*Drake's American Flag (Poem).*—*Street's Concord, Bennington, and American Independence (Poems).*—*Dwight's Columbia (Poem).*—*Washington's Farewell Address.*—*Sears' History of the American Revolution.*—*Freneau's Poems.*—*Life of General Joseph Reed, by Wm. B. Reed.*—*Cooper's novels (The Spy, The Pilot, and Lionel Lincoln).*—*Motley's Horton's Hope, and Pudding's Old Continental (novel).*—*Winthrop Sargent's Life of André, and Loyalist Poetry of the Revolution.*—*Moore's Songs and Ballads, and Diary of the Revolution.*—*Whittier's Rangers (Poem).*—*Hawthorne's Septimus Felton (Fiction).*—*Winthrop's Edwin Brothertoft (Fiction).*—*Barnes' Brief History of France.*—*Barnes' Popular History of United States.*—*Harper's Magazine, Vol. 50, The Concord Fight; Vol. 51, Echoes of Bunker Hill; Vol. 53, Virginia in the Revolution; Vol. 55, Battle of Bennington; Vol. 67, The Swamp Fox.*—*Atlantic Monthly, Vol. 37, Siege of Boston.*—*Martin's Civil Government.*—*Carrington's Battles of the Revolution.*—*Carrington's Battle Maps and Charts.*—*Lamb's History of the City of New York.*—*Lossing's Our Country.*—*Doyle's History of United States.*—*McMaster's History of the People of the United States.*—*Bryant and Gay's Popular History of United States.*

## BLACKBOARD ANALYSIS.

1. Causes of the American Revolution.

- 1. Remote Causes.
- 2. Direct Causes.
- a. English Treatment.
- b. Navigation Acts.
- c. Laws of Trade and Manufacture.
- a. Taxation.
- b. Writs of Assistance.
- c. Stamp Act.
- d. Mutiny Act.
- e. Boston Massacre.
- f. Boston Tea Party.
- g. Climax Reached.

2. First Continental Congress (1774).

- 1. Battle of Lexington.
- 2. Battle of Bunker Hill.
- 3. Capture of Ticonderoga.
- 4. Second Continental Congress.
- 5. Condition of Washington's Army.
- 6. Expedition against Can.
- a. Description.
- b. Effects.

3. Events of 1775. (1st Year of War.)

- 1. Evacuation of Boston.
- 2. Attack on Fort Moultrie.
- 3. Declaration of Independence.
- 4. Campaign near N. Y.
- 5. Condition of the Country.
- 6. Battle of Trenton.
- a. Battle of Long Island.
- b. The Escape.
- c. Washington's Retreat.
- d. Flight through New Jersey.
- a. Description.
- b. Effects.

4. Events of 1776. (2d Year of War.)

- 1. Battle of Princeton.
- 2. Campaign in Penn.
- 3. Campaign at the North.
- a. Howe and the "American Fabius".
- b. Battle of Brandywine.
- c. Battle of Germantown.
- d. Conclusion.
- a. Condition of Affairs.
- b. Burgoyne's Invasion.
- c. Burgoyne's Difficulties.
- d. Battle of Saratoga. (a. Description, b. Effects.)

5. Events of 1777. (3d Year of War.)

- 1. Winter at Valley Forge.
- 2. Aid from France.
- 3. Battle of Monmouth.
- 4. Campaign in Rhode Island.
- 5. Wyoming Massacre.
- a. Conquest of Georgia.
- b. Attack on Charleston.
- c. Death of Pulaski and Jasper.

6. Events of 1778. (4th Year of War.)

- 1. Campaign at the South.
- 2. Campaign at the North.
- 3. Naval Exploits.
- a. In Connecticut.
- b. Capture of Stony Point.
- c. Sullivan's Expedition.
- a. Privateers.
- b. Paul Jones.
- a. Capture of Charleston.
- b. Clinton and Cornwallis.
- c. Battle of Camden.
- d. Partisan Warfare—Marion, Sumter, Pickens, Lee, etc.

7. Events of 1779. (5th Year of War.)

- 1. Campaign at the South.
- 2. Continental Money.
- 3. Arnold's Treason.
- 1. Campaign at the South.
- 2. Campaign at the North.
- 3. Siege of Yorktown.
- a. Battle of the Cowpens.
- b. Greene's Retreat.
- c. Campaign Closed.
- Arnold, La Fayette, Cornwallis, and Clinton.
- a. Description.
- b. Surrender.
- c. Effects.

8. Events of 1780. (6th Year of War.)

9. Events of 1781. (7th Year of War.)

10. Difficulties of the Army and Country.

11. Peace (1783).

12. Weakness of the Government.

13. Constitution Adopted.

- 1. The Convention.
- 2. Federalists and Anti Federalists.
- 3. Ratification.
- 4. First Presidential Election.



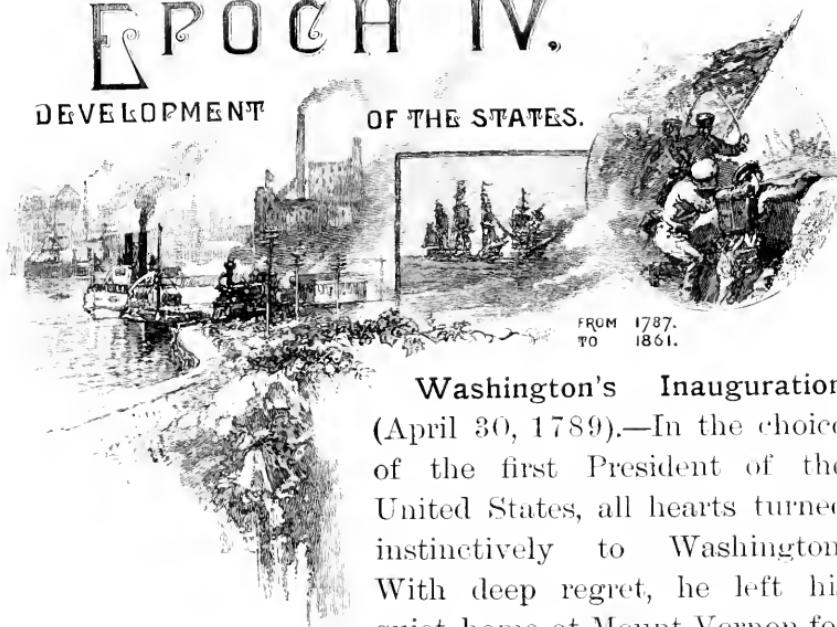






# EPOCH IV.

## DEVELOPMENT OF THE STATES.



**Washington's Inauguration**  
(April 30, 1789).—In the choice of the first President of the United States, all hearts turned instinctively to Washington. With deep regret, he left his quiet home at Mount Vernon for

the tumults of political life. His journey to New York was a continual ovation. Crowds of gayly-dressed people bearing baskets and garlands of flowers, and hailing his appearance with shouts of joy, met him at every village.

*Questions on the Geography of the Fourth Epoch.*—Locate New York. Philadelphia. Baltimore. Detroit. York. St. Johns. Montreal. Plattsburg. Sackett's Harbor. Frenchtown. Chippewa. New Orleans. Sacramento. San Francisco. Santa Fe. Queenstown Heights. Chrysler's Field. Horseshoe Bend. Lundy's Lane.

Locate Fort Malden. Fort Erie. Fort Meigs. Fort Stephenson. Fort Mims. (Mims). Fort McHenry. Fort Brown. Fort Schlosser.

Describe the Maumee River. Hudson River. Tippecanoe River. Niagara River. St. Lawrence River. Raisin River. Thames River. Rio Grande River. Nueces River. Locate Sandusky Bay. Lake Champlain.

Locate Palo Alto. Point Isabel. Resaca de la Palma. Matamoras. Monterey. Buena Vista. Vera Cruz. Puebla. Cerro Gordo. The Cordilleras. Mexico.

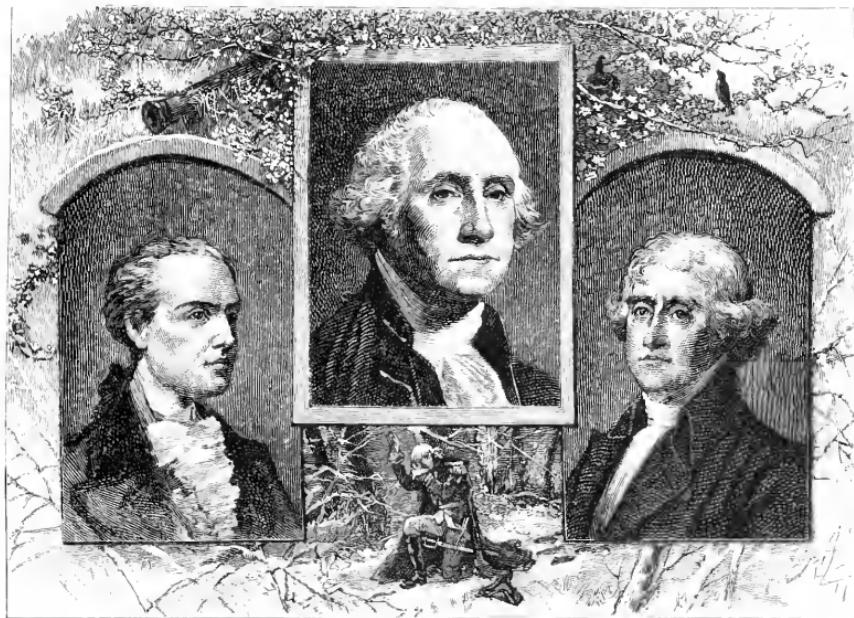
The following names of places can be found on map, Epoch VI. Locate Stonington, Conn. Palmyra, N. Y. Nauvoo, Ill. Mount Vernon. Fort King. Columbia River. Tampa Bay. Cuba. Havana.

On the balcony of old Federal Hall, New York City,\* he took the oath to support the Constitution of the United States.†

\* New York was only temporarily the capital. At the second session of Congress, the seat of government was transferred to Philadelphia, where it was to remain for ten years, and then (1800) be removed to the District of Columbia, a tract of land ten miles square ceded for this purpose by Maryland and Virginia. Here a city was laid out in the midst of a wilderness, containing only here and there a small cottage. The "Father of his country" laid the corner-stone of the capitol (1793). The part of this District on the Virginia side of the Potomac was ceded back to that State (1846).

† George Washington was born February 22, 1732; died December 14, 1799. Left fatherless at eleven years of age, his education was directed by his mother, a woman of strong character, who kindly, but firmly, exacted implicit obedience. Of her, Washington learned his first lessons in self-command. Although bashful and hesitating in his speech, his language was clear and manly. Having compiled a code of morals and good manners for his own use, he rigidly observed all its quaint and formal rules. Before his thirteenth year he had copied forms for all kinds of legal and mercantile papers. His manuscript school-books, which still exist, are models of neatness and accuracy. His favorite amusements were of a military character; he made soldiers of his playmates, and officered all the mock parades. He inherited great wealth, and the antiquity of his family gave him high social rank. On his Potomac farms he had hundreds of slaves, and at his Mount Vernon home he was like the prince of a wide domain, free from dependence or restraint. He was fond of equipage and the appurtenances of high life, and although he always rode on horseback, his family had a "chariot and four", with "black postilions in scarlet and white livery". This generous style of living, added perhaps to his native reserve, exposed him to the charge of aristocratical feeling. While at home, he spent much of his time in riding and hunting. He rose early, ate his breakfast of corn-cake, honey, and tea, and then rode about his estates; his evenings he passed with his family around the blazing hearth, retiring between nine and ten. He loved to linger at the table, cracking nuts, and relating his adventures. In personal appearance, Washington was over six feet in height, robust, graceful, and perfectly erect. His manner was formal and dignified. He was more solid than brilliant, and had more judgment than genius. He had great dread of public life, cared little for books, and possessed no library. A consistent Christian, he was a vestryman and regular attendant of the Episcopal Church. A firm advocate of free institutions, he still believed in a strong government and strictly enforced laws. As President, he carefully weighed his decisions; but, his policy once settled, pursued it with steadiness and dignity, however great the opposition. As an officer, he was brave, enterprising, and cautious. His campaigns were rarely startling, but always judicious. He was capable of great endurance. Calm in defeat, sober in victory, commanding at all times, and irresistible when aroused, he exercised equal authority over himself and his army. His last illness was brief, and his closing hours were marked by his usual calmness and dignity. "I die hard", said he, "but I am not afraid to go." Europe and America vied in tributes to his memory. Said Lord Brougham, "Until time shall be no more, a test of the progress which our race has made in wisdom and virtue will be derived from the veneration paid to the immortal name of Washington." Wash-

**Difficulties** beset the new government on every hand. The treasury was empty, and the United States had no credit. The Indians were hostile. Pirates from the Barbary States attacked our ships, and American citizens were languishing in Algerine dungeons. Spain refused us the navigation of the Mississippi. England had not yet con-



HAMILTON.

WASHINGTON.

JEFFERSON.

descended to send a minister to our government, and had made no treaty of commerce with us. We shall see how wisely Washington and his cabinet\* met these difficulties.

**Domestic Affairs.—Finances.**—By the advice of Alexander Hamilton, secretary of the treasury, Congress agreed to assume the debts contracted by the States during the Revolu-

tion. Washington left no children. It has been beautifully said, “Providence left him childless that his country might call him Father.”

\* Three executive departments were now established—the Department of Foreign Affairs (now the Department of State), the Department of War, and the Department of the Treasury. The heads of these departments were called Secretaries, and, with the Attorney-General, formed the President's cabinet.

tion, and to pay the national debt in full, including the Continental money. To provide funds, taxes were levied on imported goods and the distillation of spirits. A mint and a national bank were established at Philadelphia. By these measures, the credit of the United States was put upon a firm basis.\*

*Whiskey Rebellion* (1794).—Great opposition was made to raising money by taxation. In western Pennsylvania, it was agreed that no tax should be paid on whiskey. The rioters were so numerous and so thoroughly organized that fifteen thousand of the militia were ordered out to subdue them. Finding the government in earnest, the malcontents laid down their arms.

*Indian Wars*.—Two armies sent against the Indians of the north-west were defeated. At last, General Wayne—"Mad Anthony"—was put in command. Little Turtle, the Indian chief, now advised peace, declaring that the Americans had "a leader who never slept". But his counsel was rejected, and a desperate battle was fought on the Maumee (Aug. 20, 1794). Wayne routed the Indians, chased them a great distance, laid waste their towns for fifty miles, and compelled them to make a treaty† giving up about 25,000 square miles of land north of the Ohio.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*England*.—Hardly had the war closed when complaints were made in England that debts could not be collected in America. On the other hand, the Americans charged that the British armies had carried off their negroes, that posts were still held on the frontier, and that our seamen

\* The credit of these plans belongs to Hamilton. Daniel Webster has eloquently said of him, "He smote the rock of the national resources, and abundant streams of revenue burst forth. He touched the dead corpse of public credit, and it sprung upon its feet."

† He told them, it is said, that if they ever violated this agreement he would rise from his grave to fight them. He was long remembered by the western Indians.

were impressed. Chief Justice Jay was sent as envoy extraordinary to England. He negotiated a treaty, which was ratified by the Senate (1795), after a violent opposition.\*

*Spain and Algiers.*—The same year, a treaty was made with Spain, securing to the United States the free navigation of the Mississippi, and fixing the boundary of Florida, still held by that nation. Just before this, a treaty had been concluded with Algiers, by which our captives were released and the Mediterranean commerce was opened to American vessels.

*France.*—The Americans warmly sympathized with France, and when war broke out between that country and England, Washington had great difficulty in preserving neutrality. He saw that the true American policy was to keep free from European alliances. Genet (zhĕh nă'), the French minister, relying on the popular feeling, went so far as to fit out, in the ports of the United States, privateers to prey on British commerce. He also tried to arouse the people against the government. At length, at Washington's request, Genet was recalled. But, as we shall see, the difficulty did not end.

**Political Parties.**—During the discussion of these various questions, two parties had arisen. Jefferson, Madison, and Randolph † became leaders of the republican party, which opposed the United States Bank, the English treaty, and the assumption of the State debts. Hamilton and Adams were the leaders of the federalist party, which sup-

\* This treaty enforced the payment of the English debts, but did not in turn forbid the impressment of American seamen. Its advocates were threatened with violence by angry mobs. Hamilton was stoned at a public meeting. Insults were offered to the British minister, and Jay was burned in effigy.

† John Randolph of Roanoke was not prominent in the republican (or democratic-republican, as it was often called) party until a later administration, being elected representative in 1799. About 1806, however, he became estranged from Jefferson, and opposed the election of Madison. He was a descendant of Pocahontas.

ported the administration.\* Washington having declined to serve a third term, issued his famous Farewell Address. So close was the contest between the rival parties that Adams, the federalist candidate, was elected President by a majority of only two electoral votes over Jefferson, the republican nominee, who became Vice-President.

## ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.†

(SECOND PRESIDENT: 1797-1801.)

**Domestic Affairs.**—*Alien and Sedition Laws.*—Owing to the violent denunciations of the government by the friends and emissaries of France, the ALIEN AND SEDITION LAWS were

hontas, of which fact he often boasted, and was noted for his keen retorts, reckless wit, and skill in debate. His tall, slender, and eadaverous form, his shrill and piping voice, and his long skinny fingers—pointing toward the object of his invective—made him a conspicuous speaker. For thirty years, says Benton, he was the “political meteor” of Congress.

\* The federalists favored the granting of power to the general government, which they thought should be made strong. The republicans, fearing lest the republic should become a monarchy, and the President, a king, opposed this idea and advocated State rights. In this election, the republicans were accused of being friends of France, and the federalists of being attached to Great Britain and its institutions. The republicans declared themselves to be the only true friends of the people, and stigmatized all others as aristocrats and monarchists.

† John Adams was born 1735; died 1826. He was a member of the first and the second Congress, and nominated Washington as commander-in-chief. Jefferson wrote the Declaration of Independence, but Adams secured its adoption in a three-days debate. He was a tireless worker, and had the reputation of having the clearest head and firmest heart of any man in Congress. As President he lost the reputation he had gained as Congressman. His enemies accused him of being a bad judge of men, of clinging to old unpopular notions, and of having little control over his temper. They also ridiculed his egotism, which they declared to be inordinate. He lived, however, to see the prejudice against his administration give place to a juster estimate of his great worth and exalted integrity. As a delegate to the Constitutional Convention he was honored as one of the fathers of the republic. Adams and Jefferson were firm friends during the Revolution, but political strife alienated them. On their return to private life they became reconciled. They died on the same day—the fiftieth anniversary of American independence. Adams' last words were, “Thomas Jefferson still survives.” Jefferson was, however, already lying dead in his Virginia home. Thus, by the passing away of these two remarkable men, was made memorable the 4th of July, 1826.

passed. Under the former, the President could expel from the country any foreigner whom he deemed injurious to the United States; under the latter, any one libeling Congress, the President, or the government, could be fined or imprisoned. This was a most unpopular measure, and excited the bitterest feeling.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*France.*—French affairs early assumed a serious aspect. Our flag was insulted, our vessels were captured, and our envoys were refused audience by the French Directory unless a bribe should be paid.\* The news of this insult aroused the nation, and the friends of France were silenced. Orders were issued to raise an army, of which Washington was appointed commander-in-chief. Hostilities had commenced on the sea, when Napoleon became the First Consul of France, and the war was happily arrested.

**Political Parties.**—An intense party feeling prevailed during the entire administration. The unpopularity of the alien and sedition laws reduced the vote for Adams and Pinckney, the federal candidates. The republican nominees, Jefferson and Burr, received the majority of votes; but, as each had the same number, the election went to the House of Representatives, which chose Jefferson for President, and Burr for Vice-President.

## JEFFERSON'S ADMINISTRATION.†

(THIRD PRESIDENT—TWO TERMS: 1801-1809.)

**Domestic Affairs.**—*Purchase of Louisiana* (1803).—The most important event of Jefferson's administration was the

\* Charles C. Pinckney—our minister to France—is reported to have replied to this insulting demand, “ Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute.”

† Thomas Jefferson was born 1743; died 1826. “ Of all the public men who have figured in the United States,” says Parton, “ he was incomparably the best scholar

purchase of Louisiana from Napoleon. Over one million square miles of land and the full possession of the Mississippi were obtained for \$15,000,000 (see Map, VIth Epoch).

*Aaron Burr*, the Vice-President, was Alexander Hamilton's bitter rival, both in law and in politics, and at last challenged him to a duel. Hamilton accepted. The affair took place at Weehawken (July 11, 1804). Hamilton fell at the first fire, on the very spot where his eldest son had been killed shortly before in the same manner. His death produced the most profound sensation. Burr afterward went west and organized an expedition with the avowed object of forming a settlement in northern Mexico. Being suspected, however, of a design to break up the Union and found a separate confederacy beyond the Alleghanies, he was arrested and tried

and the most variously accomplished man." He was a bold horseman, a skillful hunter, an elegant penman, a fine violinist, a brilliant talker, a superior classical scholar, and a proficient in the modern languages. On account of his talents he was styled "The Sage of Monticello". That immortal document, the Declaration of Independence, was, with the exception of a few words, entirely his work. He was an ardent supporter of the doctrine of State rights, and led the opposition to the federalists. After he became President, however, he found the difficulty of administering the government upon that theory. "The executive authority had to be stretched until it cracked, to cover the purchase of Louisiana;" and he became convinced on other occasions that the federal government, to use his own expression, must "show its teeth". Like Washington, he was of aristocratic birth, but his principles were intensely democratic. He hated ceremonies and titles; even "Mr." was distasteful to him. These traits were the more remarkable in one of his superior birth and education, and peculiarly endeared him to the common people. Coming into power on a wave of popularity, he studiously sought to retain this favor. There were no more brilliant levees or courtly ceremonies as in the days of Washington and Adams. On his inauguration day, he dressed in plain clothes, rode unattended down to Congress, dismounted, hitched his horse, and went into the chamber to read his fifteen-minutes inaugural. Some of the sentences of that short but memorable address have passed into proverbs. The unostentatious example thus set by the nation's President was wise in its effects. Soon, the public debt was diminished, the treasury was replenished, and the army and navy were reduced. A man of such marked character necessarily made bitter enemies, but Jefferson commanded the respect of even his opponents, while the admiration of his friends was unbounded. The last seventeen years of his life were passed at Monticello, near the place of his birth. By his profuse hospitality, he had, long before his death, spent his vast estates. He died poor in money, but rich in honor. His last words were, "This is the fourth day of July."

(1807) on a charge of treason.\* Although acquitted for want of proof, he yet remained an outcast.†

*Fulton's Steamboat.*—The year 1807 was made memorable by the voyage from New York to Albany of Robert Fulton's steamboat, the Clermont. For years, the Hudson could boast of having the only steamboat in the world.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*War with Tripoli.*—The Barbary States, of which Tripoli is one, for many years sent out cruisers which captured vessels of all Christian nations, and held their crews as slaves until ransomed. The United States, like the European nations, was accustomed to pay annual tribute to these pirates to secure exemption from their attacks. The Bashaw (bā shāw') of Tripoli became so haughty that he declared war (1801) against the United States. Jefferson sent a fleet which blockaded‡ the port and repeatedly bombarded the city of Tripoli. The frightened Bashaw was at last glad to make peace.

*England and France.*—During this time, England and France were engaged in a desperate struggle. England tried to prevent trade with France, and, in turn, Napoleon forbade all commerce with England. As the United States was neutral, we did most of the carrying trade of Europe. Our

\* While awaiting his trial, Burr was committed to the common jail. There, among its wretched inmates, stripped of all his honors, lay the man who once lacked but a single vote to make him President of the United States.

† Closely connected with Burr's conspiracy is the romantic story of Blennerhassett and his beautiful wife. Having settled on an island in the Ohio River, they had transformed the wilderness into a garden of beauty, and had clustered about their home every luxury which wealth could procure. Into this paradise, Burr came, winning their confidence, and engaging them in his plans. On Burr's downfall, Blennerhassett was arrested, and, before his release, every thing had been sold by his creditors, the grounds turned into a hemp-field, and the mansion converted into a store-house.

‡ During this blockade, a valiant exploit was performed by Lieutenant Decatur. The frigate Philadelphia had unfortunately grounded and fallen into the enemy's hands. Concealing his men below, he entered the harbor with a small vessel, which he warped alongside the Philadelphia, in the character of a ship in distress. As the two vessels struck, the pirates first suspected his design. Instantly he leaped aboard,

vessels thus became the prey of both the hostile nations. Besides, England claimed the right of stopping American vessels on the high seas, to search for seamen of English birth,\* and press them into the British navy. The feeling, already deep, was intensified when the British frigate Leopard fired into the American frigate Chesapeake, off the coast of Vir-



BATTLE OF TIPPECANOE.

ginia. The American vessel, being wholly unprepared for battle, soon struck her colors. Four of the crew, three being Americans by birth, were taken, on the pretense that they were deserters. Jefferson immediately ordered all British vessels of war to quit the waters of the United States. Though England disavowed the act, no reparation was made. Congress then passed an EMBARGO ACT forbidding American vessels to leave port. This was so injurious to our commerce that it was removed, but all intercourse with England or France was forbidden.

with his men, swept the affrighted crew into the sea, set the ship on fire, and, amid a tremendous cannonade from the shore, escaped without losing a man.

\* The American doctrine was that a foreigner naturalized became an American citizen; the British, "Once an Englishman, always an Englishman."

**Political Parties.**—While the country was in this feverish state, Jefferson's second term expired. James Madison, the republican candidate, who was in sympathy with his views, was elected as his successor by a large majority. The republicans were generally in favor of a war with England. The federalists, however, were a strong minority, and throughout this administration bitterly opposed the war policy of the republicans.

## MADISON'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(FOURTH PRESIDENT—TWO TERMS: 1809–1817.)

**Domestic Affairs.**—*Battle of Tippecanoe* (November 7, 1811).—British emissaries had been busy arousing the Indians to war. Tecum'seh, a famous chief, seized the opportunity to form a confederacy of the north-western tribes. General Harrison, who was sent against them with a strong force, was treacherously attacked by night near the Tippecanoe. The Indians, however, were routed with great slaughter.

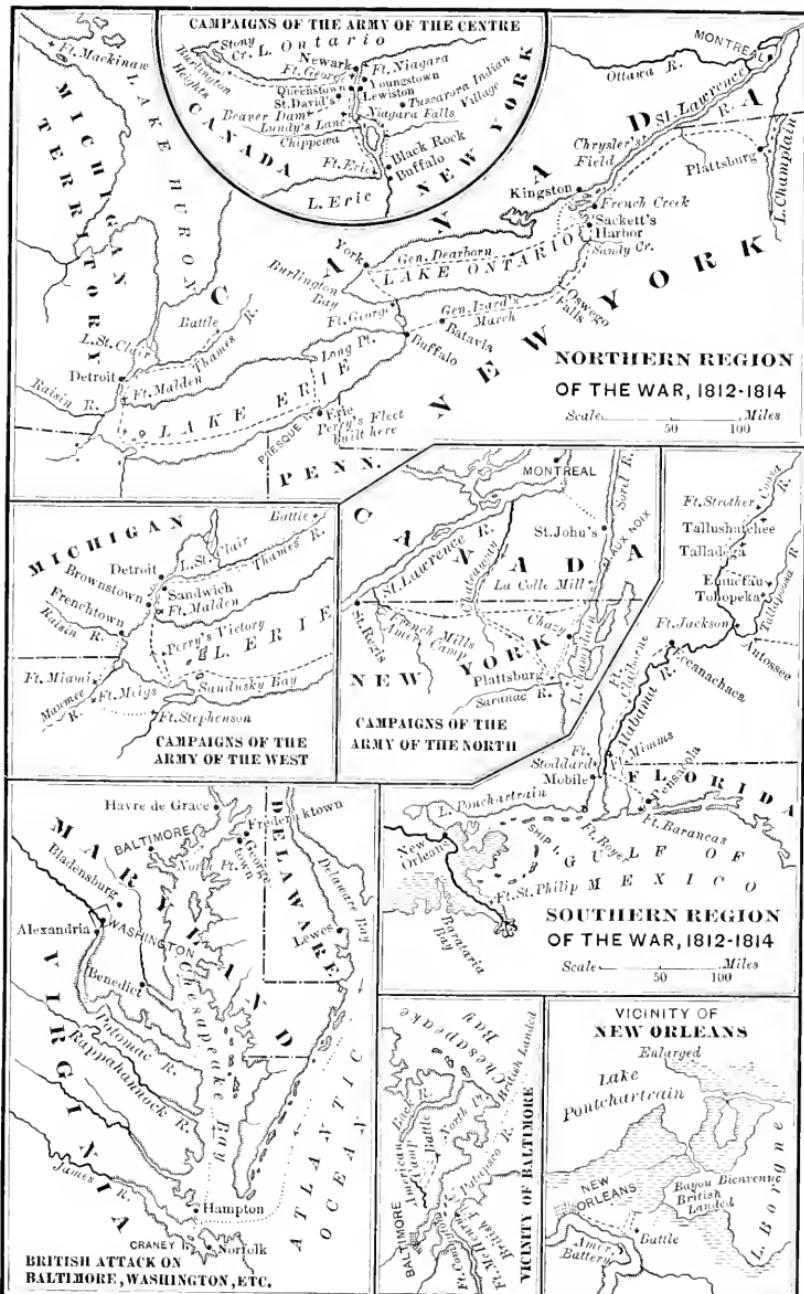
\* James Madison was born in Virginia in 1751; died 1836. In the Convention of 1787, he was one of the strongest advocates of the Constitution, and did much to secure its adoption. From his political principles he was obliged, though reluctantly, to oppose Washington's administration, which he did in a courteous and temperate manner. He led his party in Congress, where he remained till 1797. The next year he drafted the famous "1798-'99 Resolutions", enunciating the doctrine of State rights, which, with the accompanying "Report" in their defense, have been the great text-book of the democratic party. He was Secretary of State to Jefferson. After his Presidential services, he retired from public station. Madison's success was not so much the result of a great natural ability as of intense application and severe accuracy. His mind was strong, clear, and well-balanced, and his memory was wonderful. Like John Quincy Adams, he had laid up a great store of learning, which he used in the most skillful manner. He always exhausted the subject upon which he spoke. "When he had finished, nothing remained to be said." His private character was spotless. His manner was simple, modest, and uniformly courteous to his opponents. He enjoyed wit and humor, and told a story admirably. His sunny temper remained with him to the last. Some friends coming to visit him during his final illness, he sunk smilingly back on his couch, saying: "I always talk better when I lie." It has been said of him: "It was his rare good fortune to have a whole nation for his friends."

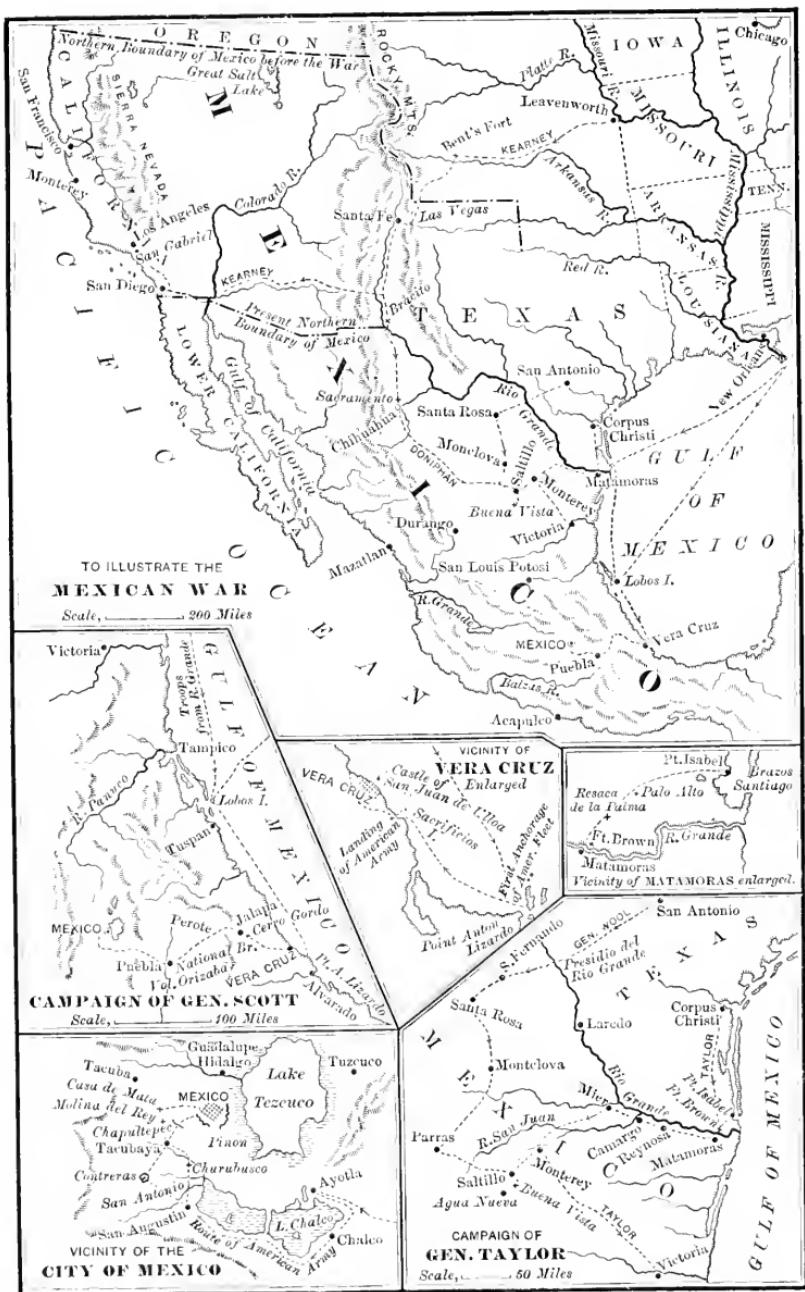
**Foreign Affairs.**—*England.*—This war aroused the people of the West against England. The impressment of our seamen and the capture of our ships continued. The British government went so far as to send war vessels into our waters to seize our ships as prizes. The American frigate President having hailed the British sloop-of-war Little Belt, received a cannon-shot in reply. The fire was returned, and the sloop soon disabled; a civil answer was then returned. The British government refusing to relinquish its offensive course, all hope of peace was abandoned.\* Finally (June 19, 1812), war was formally declared against Great Britain.

#### SECOND WAR WITH GREAT BRITAIN (1812-'14).

**Surrender of Detroit** (August 16, 1812).—As in the previous wars, it was determined to invade Canada. General William Hull accordingly crossed over from Detroit and encamped on Canadian soil. While preparing to attack Fort Malden (mæwl'den), he learned that the enemy were gathering in force, and had already captured Fort Mackinaw. He, therefore, retreated to Detroit. The British under General Brock and the Indians under Tecumseh followed thither, and, landing, advanced at once to assault the fort at that place. The garrison was in line, and the gunners were standing with lighted matches awaiting the order to fire, when Hull, apparently unnerved by the fear of bloodshed, ordered the white flag—a table-cloth—to be raised. Amid the tears of his men, it is said, and without even stipulating for the honors of war, he surrendered not only Detroit, with its garrison and stores, but the whole of Michigan.

\* Madison, whose disposition was very pacific, hesitated so long, that one of the federalists declared in Congress that “he could not be kicked into a fight”. This expression passed into a proverb.





**Battle of Queenstown Heights** (October 13).—Late in summer, another attempt was made to invade Canada. General Van Rensselaer (ren'se ler), finding that his men were eager for a fight, sent a small body across the Niagara River to attack the British at Queenstown Heights. The English were driven from their position, and General Brock was killed. General Van Rensselaer then returned to the American shore to bring over the rest of the army; but the militia, denying the constitutional right of their commander to take them out of the State, refused to embark. Meantime, their comrades on the Canadian shore, thus basely abandoned, after a desperate struggle, were compelled to surrender.

**Naval Victories.**—These signal disgraces by land were in striking contrast to the successes on the sea.

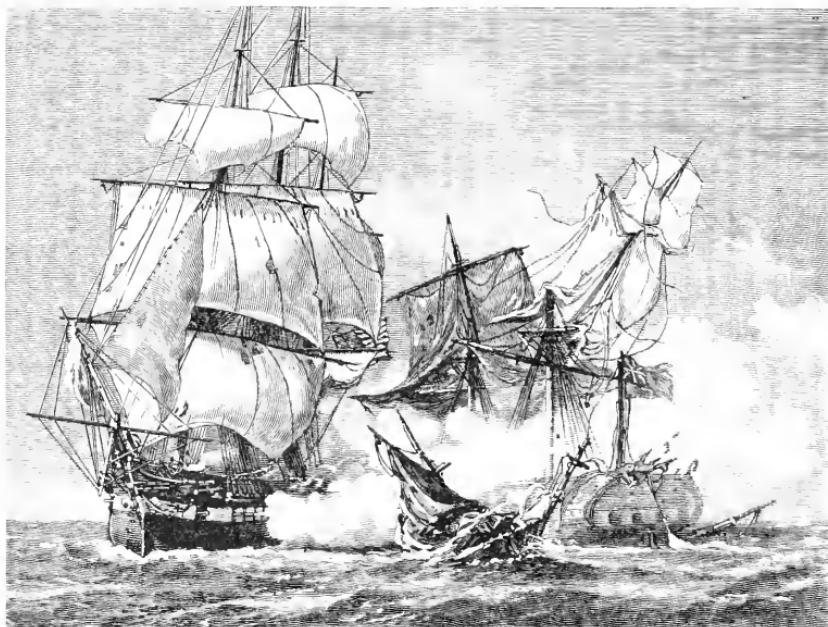
*Constitution and Guerrière* (August 19).—The fight off the coast of Massachusetts, between the American frigate Constitution (popularly called Old Ironsides) and the Guerrière (gā're ē ā're) is memorable. The latter vessel opened fire first. Captain Isaac Hull\* refused to answer until he had brought his ship into the exact position he desired, when he poured broadside after broadside into his antagonist, sweeping her deck, shattering her hull, and cutting her masts and rigging to pieces. The Guerrière soon became unmanageable, and was forced to surrender.† She was so badly injured that she

\* Nephew of General Hull. His bravery retrieved the name from its disgrace.

† "Captain Hull sent an officer to take possession of the Guerrière. When he arrived alongside, he demanded of the commander of the English frigate if he had struck. Daerres was extremely reluctant to make this concession in plain terms; but, with a shrewdness which would have done honor to a Yankee, endeavored to evade the question. 'I do not know that it would be prudent to continue the engagement any longer', said he. 'Do I understand you to say that you have struck?' inquired the American lieutenant. 'Not precisely', returned Daerres; 'but I don't know that it will be worth while to fight any longer.' 'If you can not decide, I will return aboard', replied the Yankee, 'and we will resume the engagement.' 'Why, I am pretty much *hors de combat* already', said Daerres; 'I have hardly men enough left to work a gun, and my ship is in a sinking condition.' 'I wish to know, sir',

could not be brought into port; while the Old Ironsides, in a few hours, was ready for another fight.

*Frolic and Wasp* (October 13).—The next noted achievement was the defeat of the English brig Frolic by the sloop-of-war Wasp, off the coast of North Carolina. When the former was boarded by her captors, her colors



CAPTURE OF THE GUERRIÈRE BY THE CONSTITUTION.

were still flying, there being no one to haul them down. The man at the helm was the only sailor left on deck unharmed.

Other victories followed. Privateers scoured every sea, inflicting untold injury on the British commerce. During the year, over three hundred prizes were captured.

peremptorily demanded the American officer, 'whether I am to consider you as a prisoner of war or an enemy. I have no time for further parley.' 'I believe there is now no alternative. If I could fight longer, I would with pleasure; but I—must—surrender—myself—a prisoner of war!'"

*The Effect of these Naval Victories* was to arouse enthusiasm and inspire confidence. Volunteer corps were rapidly formed. Madison was re-elected, thus stamping his war policy with the popular approval.

## 1813.

**Plan of the Campaign.**—Three armies were raised: (1) the ARMY OF THE CENTER, under General Dearborn, on the Niagara River; (2) the ARMY OF THE NORTH, under General Hampton, along Lake Champlain; and (3) the ARMY OF THE WEST, under General Harrison, of Tippecanoe fame. All three were ultimately to invade Canada. Proctor was the British general, and Tecumseh had command of his Indian allies.

**The Armies of the Center and North** did but little. General Dearborn\* attacked York, General Pike gallantly leading the assault. Unfortunately, in the moment of success the magazine blew up, killing Pike and making sad havoc among his men. Dearborn did nothing, and soon after resigned. General Wilkinson, his successor, was directed to descend the St. Lawrence in boats, and join General Hampton in an attack on Montreal. At CHRYSLER'S FIELD, he repulsed the British, but, owing to a disagreement with General Hampton, he returned. (Map opp. p. 160.) General Hampton went north as far as St. John's. Being defeated by the English, he made the best of his way back to Plattsburg, where, in the winter, he was joined by General Winchester's men. Thus ingloriously ended the campaign of these two armies.

**Army of the West.**—A detachment of General Harrison's men was captured† at Frenchtown, on the River Raisin, by

\* When the British heard that Dearborn had sailed away from Sackett's Harbor with the fleet, they immediately made an attack on that place. They were bravely repulsed by General Brown and a few regulars.

† This party was stationed on the Maumee, under General Winchester. Having

Proctor, who then besieged Harrison himself at Fort Meigs (megz). Repulsed here, Proctor stormed Fort Stephenson, garrisoned by only one hundred and fifty men, under Major Croghan, a young man of twenty-one. Beaten again, he returned to Malden. As yet, however, the British held Michigan and threatened Ohio, and the Americans had been as unsuccessful this year as they were the preceding, when a glorious triumph on Lake Erie gave a new aspect to the campaign.

**Perry's Victory** (September 10).—When Captain Perry, then only twenty-seven years old, was assigned the command of the flotilla on Lake Erie, the British were undisputed masters of the lake, while his fleet was to be, in part, made out of the trees in the forest. By indefatigable exertion he got nine vessels, carrying fifty-four guns, ready for action, when the British fleet of six vessels and sixty-three guns bore down upon his little squadron.\* Perry's flag-ship, the Lawrence,† engaged two of the heaviest vessels of the enemy, and fought them till but eight of his men were left. He

learned that the people of Frenchtown feared an attack from the Indians, he allowed his military judgment to yield to his humanity, and marched to their relief. He defeated the enemy, but was soon attacked by a body of fifteen hundred British and Indians under Proctor. Winchester, being captured in the course of the battle, agreed to the surrender of his men under the solemn promise that their lives and property should be safe. Proctor, however, immediately returned to Malden with the British, leaving no guard over the American wounded. Thereupon, the Indians, maddened by liquor and the desire for revenge, mercilessly tomahawked many, set fire to the houses in which others lay, and carried the survivors to Detroit, where they were dragged through the streets and offered for sale at the doors of the inhabitants. Many of the women of that place gave for their ransom every article of value which they possessed. The troops were Kentuckians, and the war-cry of their sons was henceforth "Remember the Raisin".—The great object of the Indians in battle was to get scalps, Proctor paying a regular bounty for every one. They were therefore loth to take prisoners. Proctor, brutal and haughty, was a fit leader under a government that would employ savages in a civilized warfare.

\* Perry had never seen a naval battle, while Captain Barclay, the British commander, was one of Nelson's veterans, and had lost an arm in the service.

† From its mast-head floated a blue pennant, bearing the words of the dying Lawrence, "Don't give up the ship". (See p. 166.)

helped these to fire the last gun, and then leaping into a boat bore his flag to the Niagara. He had to pass within pistol-shot of the British, who turned their guns directly upon him ; and though he was a fair mark for every shot, he escaped without injury. Breaking through the enemy's line, and firing right and left, within fifteen minutes after he mounted the deck of the Niagara the victory was won. Perry at once wrote to General Harrison, "WE HAVE MET THE ENEMY, AND THEY ARE OURS." This laconic dispatch produced intense excitement throughout the country. Upon the result of this battle depended, as we shall see, important issues.

**Battle of the Thames.**—Proctor and Tecumseh were at Malden with their motley array of British and Indians, two thousand strong, waiting to lay waste the frontier. Harrison, at Sandusky Bay, was nearly ready to invade Canada, and at the news of this victory pushed across the lake. Landing at Malden, which he found deserted, Harrison hotly pursued the flying enemy and overtook them on the RIVER THAMES (tēmz). Having drawn up his troops, he ordered Colonel Johnson, with his Kentucky horsemen, to charge the English in front. Dashing through the forest, they broke the enemy's line, and forming in their rear, prepared to pour in a deadly fire. The British surrendered, but Proctor escaped by the swiftness of his horse. Johnson then pushed forward to attack the Indians. In the heat of the action, a bullet, fired by Johnson himself, struck Tecumseh. With his death, the savages lost all hope, and fled in confusion.

**Effect.**—This victory, with Perry's, relieved Michigan, gave control of Lake Erie, and virtually decided the war. General Harrison returned amid the plaudits of the nation.

**Naval Battles.**—The American navy achieved some brilliant successes, but was not uniformly victorious.

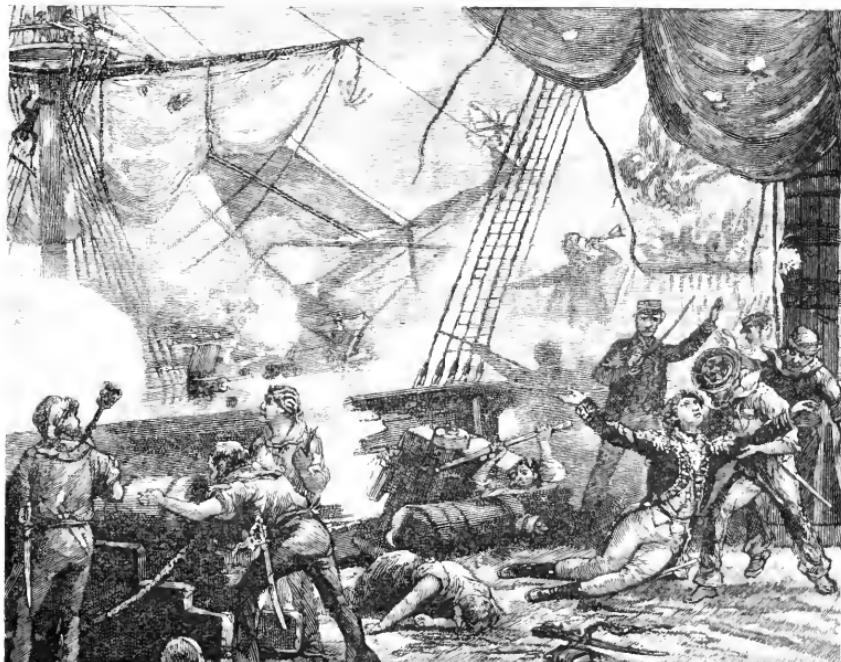
*Chesapeake and Shannon.*—Captain Lawrence, of the

Hornet, having captured the British brig Peacock, on his return was placed in command of the Chesapeake, the ill-starred frigate which struck her flag to the Leopard off the coast of Virginia. While refitting his vessel at Boston, a challenge was sent him to fight the Shannon, then lying off the harbor. Lawrence, although part of his crew were discharged, and the unpaid remainder were almost mutinous, consulted only his own heroic spirit, and put to sea. The action was brief. A hand-grenade bursting in the Chesapeake's arm-chest, the enemy took advantage of the confusion, and boarded the vessel. A scene of carnage ensued. Lawrence, mortally wounded, was carried below. As he left the deck he exclaimed, "DON'T GIVE UP THE SHIP". But the feeble crew were soon overpowered, and the colors hauled down.

**War with the Greeks.**—Tecumseh had been (1811) among the Alabama Indians, and had aroused them to take up arms against the Americans. They accordingly formed a league (1813), and fell upon FORT MIMMS, massacring the garrison and the defenseless women and children. (Map opp. p. 160.) Volunteers flocked in from all sides to avenge this horrid deed. Under General Jackson, they drove the Indians from one place to another, until they took refuge on the HORSESHOE BEND, where they fortified themselves for the last battle\* (March 27, 1814). The soldiers, with fixed bayonets, scaled their breastwork. The Greeks fought with the energy of despair; but six hundred of their number were killed, and those who escaped were glad to make peace on any terms.

\* An event occurred on Jackson's march which illustrates his iron will. For a long time his soldiers suffered extremely from famine, and at last they mutinied. General Jackson rode before the ranks. His left arm, shattered by a ball, was disabled, but in his right he held a musket. Sternly ordering the men back to their places, he declared he would shoot the first who advanced. No one stirred, and soon all returned to their duty.

**Ravages on the Atlantic Coast.**—Early in the spring the British commenced devastating the southern coast.\* Admiral Cockburn, especially, disgraced the British navy by conduct worse than that of Cornwallis in the Revolution. Along the Virginia and Carolina coast, he burned bridges, farm-houses, and villages; robbed the inhabitants of their crops, stock, and slaves; plundered churches of their communion services, and murdered the sick in their beds.



"DON'T GIVE UP THE SHIP." DEATH OF LAWRENCE.

1814.

**Battle of Lundy's Lane** (July 25).—The American army, under General Brown, crossed the Niagara River once more, and for the last time invaded Canada. Fort Erie having

\* New England was spared because of a belief that the northern States were unfriendly to the war, and would yet return to their allegiance to Great Britain.

been taken, General Winfield Scott, leading the advance, attacked the British at CHIP'PE WA (July 5), and gained a brilliant victory. A second engagement was fought at LUNDY'S LANE, opposite Niagara Falls. (Map opp. p. 160.) Here, within sound of that mighty cataract, occurred one of the bloodiest battles of the war. General Scott had only one thousand men, but he maintained the unequal contest until dark. A battery, located on a height, was the key to the British position. Calling Colonel Miller to his side, General Brown, who had now arrived, asked him if he could take it. "I'll try, sir," was the fearless reply. Heading his regiment, he steadily marched up the height and secured the coveted position. Three times the British rallied for its re-capture, but as many times were hurled back. At midnight they retired from the field. This victory, though glorious to the American army, was barren of direct results.

**Battle of Lake Champlain** (September 11).—All but fifteen hundred of the troops at Plattsburg had gone to reinforce General Brown. Prevost (prē vo'), the commander of the British army in Canada, learning this fact, took twelve thousand veteran soldiers, who had served under Wellington, and marched against that place. As he advanced to the attack, the British fleet on Lake Champlain assailed the American squadron under Commodore MacDonough (dōn'o).\* The attacking squadron was nearly annihilated. The little army in Plattsburg, by their vigorous defense, prevented Prevost from crossing the Saranac River. When he found that his ships were lost, he fled precipitately, leaving his sick and wounded, and large quantities of military stores.

**Ravages on the Atlantic Coast.**—The British blockade extended this year to the north. Commerce was so com-

\* One of his vessels he had built in twenty days, from trees growing on the bank of the lake.

pletely destroyed that the lamps in the light-houses were extinguished as being of use only to the English. Several towns in Maine were captured. Stonington, Conn., was bombarded. Cockburn continued his depredations along the Chesapeake. General Ross marched to Washington (Aug. 24) and burned the capitol, the Congressional library, and other public buildings and records, with private dwellings and store-houses. He then sailed around by sea, to attack Baltimore. The army having disembarked below the city (Sept. 12), moved against it by land,\* while the fleet bombarded Fort McHenry from the river. The troops, however, met with a determined resistance; and, as the fleet had made no impression on the fort,† soon retired to their ships.

Great excitement was produced by these events. Every sea-port was fortified; the militia were organized, and citizens of all ranks labored with their own hands to throw up defenses. Bitter reproaches were cast upon the administration because of its mode of conducting the war. Delegates from New England States met at Hartford (December 15) to discuss this subject. The meeting was branded with odium by friends of the administration, and to be called a "Hartford Convention Federalist" was long a term of reproach.

**Peace**, as afterward appeared, was made even before the convention adjourned. The treaty was signed at Ghent, December 24. Before, however, the news reached this country, a terrible, and, as it proved, unnecessary battle had been fought in the South.

**Battle of New Orleans** (January 8, 1815).—A powerful fleet and a force of twelve thousand men, under General Pak-

\* While the British troops were marching toward Baltimore, General Ross rode forward to reconnoiter. Two mechanics, who were in a tree watching the advance, fired, and Ross fell mortally wounded. The two patriots were instantly shot.

† During the bombardment of Fort McHenry, Francis S. Key, an American detained on board an English vessel, wrote the song, "The Star Spangled Banner".

enham, undertook the capture of New Orleans. General Jackson, anticipating this attempt, had thrown up intrenchments\* several miles below the city. The British advanced steadily, in solid columns, heedless of the artillery fire



BATTLE OF NEW ORLEANS.

which swept their ranks, until they came within range of the Kentucky and Tennessee riflemen, when they wavered. Their officers rallied them again and again. General Pak-enham fell in the arms of the same officer who had caught General Ross as he fell at Baltimore. Neither discipline nor

\* Jackson at first made his intrenchments, in part, of cotton-bales, but a red-hot cannon-ball having fired the cotton and scattered the burning fragments among the barrels of gunpowder, it was found necessary to remove the cotton entirely. The only defense of the Americans during the battle was a bank of earth, five feet high, and a ditch in front. The British were tried and disciplined troops, while very few of the Americans had ever seen fighting. Besides, the British were nearly double the number. But our men were accustomed to the use of the rifle, and were the best marksmen in the world.

bravery could prevail. General Lambert, who succeeded to the command, drew off his men in the night, hopelessly defeated, after a loss of over two thousand; while the American loss was but seven killed and six wounded.

**Results of the War.**—The treaty left the question of impressment unsettled, yet it was tacitly understood, and was never revived. The national debt was \$127,000,000, but within twenty years it was paid from the ordinary revenue. The United States had secured the respect of European nations,\* since our navy had dared to meet, and often successfully, the greatest maritime power in the world. The impossibility of any foreign ruler gaining a permanent foothold on our territory was shown. The fruitless invasion of Canada by the militia, compared with the brave defense of their own territory by the same men, proved that the strength of the United States lay in defensive warfare. Extensive manufactories were established to supply the place of the English goods cut off by the blockade. This branch of industry continued to thrive after peace, though for a time depressed by the quantity of English goods thrown on the market. The immediate evils of the war were apparent: trade ruined, commerce gone, no specie to be seen, and a general depression. Yet the wonderful resources of the country were shown by the rapidity with which it entered upon a new career of prosperity. During the next six years, a new State was added each year (p. 202).

**Political Parties.**—When Madison's term of office expired, the federalist party had been broken up by its opposition to the war. James Monroe, the Presidential candidate of

\* The Algerines had taken advantage of the war with England to renew their depredations on American commerce. Decatur (1815) was sent with a squadron to Algiers, Tunis, and Tripoli. He obtained the liberation of the American prisoners, and full indemnity for all losses, with pledges for the future. The United States was the first nation effectually to resist the demands of the Barbary pirates for tribute.

the republican party, was almost unanimously elected. He was generally beloved, and all parties united in his support.

## MONROE'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(FIFTH PRESIDENT—TWO TERMS: 1817-1825.)

Monroe's administration was one of general prosperity. It is known as "The era of good feeling". After the ravages of war, the attention of all was turned to the development of the internal resources of the country and to the building up of its industries.

**Domestic Affairs.**—*The Missouri Compromise.*—When the admission of Missouri as a State was proposed, a violent discussion arose as to whether it should be free or slave.†

\* James Monroe was born 1758; died 1831. As a soldier under General Washington, he distinguished himself in the battles of Brandywine, Germantown, and Monmouth. Afterward, he studied law, and entered political life. Having been sent by Washington as Minister to France, he showed such marked sympathy with that country as to displease the President and his cabinet, who were just concluding a treaty with England, and wished to preserve a strictly neutral policy; he was therefore recalled. Under Jefferson, who was his warm friend, he was again sent to France (1803), when he secured the purchase of Louisiana. He is said to have always taken particular pride in this transaction, regarding his part in it as among the most important of his public services. Soon after his inauguration as President, he visited all the military posts in the north and east, with a view to a thorough acquaintance with the capabilities of the country in the event of future hostilities. He wore a blue military coat of homespun, light-colored breeches, and a cocked hat, being the undress uniform of a Revolutionary officer. The nation was thus reminded of his former military services. This, with his plain and unassuming manners, completely won the hearts of the people, and brought an overwhelming majority to the support of the administration. Monroe was a man more prudent than brilliant, who acted with a single eye to the welfare of his country. Jefferson said of him: "If his soul were turned inside out, not a spot would be found on it." Like that loved friend, he died "poor in money, but rich in honor"; and like him also, he passed away on the anniversary of the independence of the country he had served so faithfully.

† The question of slavery was already one of vast importance. At first, slaves were owned in the northern as well as the southern States. But at the North, slave labor was unprofitable, and it had gradually died out; while at the South it was a success, and hence had steadily increased. In 1793, Eli Whitney, of Massachusetts, invented the cotton-gin, a machine for cleaning cotton from the seed, an operation

Through the efforts of Henry Clay, it was admitted as a slave State (1821), under the compromise that slavery should be prohibited in all other territories west of the Mississippi and north of parallel  $36^{\circ} 30'$ , the southern boundary of Missouri.

*La Fayette's Visit* to this country (1824) as "the nation's guest" was a joyous event. He traveled through each of the twenty-four States, and was every-where welcomed with delight. His visit to the tomb of Washington was full of affectionate remembrance. He was carried home in a national vessel, the Brandywine, named in honor of the battle in which La Fayette first drew his sword in behalf of the colonies.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*Florida*.—By a treaty (1819), Spain now ceded Florida to the United States. (See p. 303.)

*Monroe Doctrine*.—In one of President Monroe's messages he advocated a principle since famous as the MONROE DOCTRINE. He declared that any attempt by a European nation to gain dominion in America would be considered by the United States as an unfriendly act.

**Political Parties.**—Divisions now became apparent in the great party which had twice so triumphantly elected Monroe as President. The whig party, as it came to be called in Jackson's time, was forming in opposition to the republican—thenceforth known as the democratic party.\* The whigs were in favor of a protective tariff, and a general system of internal improvements;† the democrats opposed these meas-

before performed by hand, and very expensive. (Read Barnes' Pop. Hist. of the U. S., p. 348.) This gave a new impulse to cotton-raising. Sugar and tobacco, also great staples of the South, were cultivated exclusively by slave labor.

\* John Quincy Adams and Henry Clay were the champions of the whigs; Andrew Jackson and John C. Calhoun, of the democrats. In 1835, the democrats began to be called "Locofocos", because, at a meeting in Tammany Hall (Oct. 29), the lights having been put out, were relighted with locofoco matches, which several persons, expecting such an event, had carried in their pockets.

† A *protective tariff* is a duty on imported goods for the purpose of encouraging home manufactures. By the term *internal improvements* is meant the improving of the navigation of rivers, the building of railroads, the dredging of harbors, etc.

ures. No one of the four candidates obtaining a majority, the election went to the House of Representatives, where John Quincy Adams, son of John Adams, was chosen.

### J. Q. ADAMS' ADMINISTRATION.\*

(SIXTH PRESIDENT: 1825-1829.)

This was a period of great national prosperity. During this term, the Erie Canal was opened (1825), and the first railroad in the United States was completed (1826). The debt was diminishing at the rate of over \$6,000,000 a year. A protective tariff, known as the "American System", reached its height. It was popular at the east, but distasteful to the south.† Adams was a candidate for re-election, but Andrew Jackson—the hero of New Orleans, and the democratic nominee—was chosen. The principle of a protective tariff was thus rejected by the people.

\* John Quincy Adams was born in Massachusetts, 1767; died 1848. He was a man of learning, blameless reputation, and unquestioned patriotism, yet as President he was hardly more successful than his father. This was, doubtless, owing greatly to the fierce opposition which assailed him from the friends of disappointed candidates, who at once combined to weaken his measures and prevent his re-election. Their candidate was Andrew Jackson, a man whose dashing boldness, energy, and decision attracted the common people, and hid the more quiet virtues of Adams. To add to his perplexities, a majority of the House, and nearly one half of the Senate, favored the new party, his own Vice-President, John C. Calhoun, being the candidate of the opposition. To stem such a tide was a hopeless effort. In two years, Adams was returned to Congress, where he remained until his death, over sixteen years afterward. Ten years of public service were thus rendered after he had passed his "three-score years and ten", and so great was his ability in debate at this extreme age, that he was called "the old man eloquent". Like his father, he was a wonderful worker, and his mind was a store-house of facts. He lived economically, and left a large estate. He was the congressional advocate of anti-slavery, and a bitter opponent of secret societies. His fame increased with his age, and he died a trusted and revered champion of popular rights. He was seized with paralysis while occupying his seat in Congress, after which he lingered two days in partial unconsciousness. His last words were—"This is the last of earth; I am content."

† The southern States, devoted to agricultural pursuits, desired to have foreign goods brought to them as cheaply as possible; while the eastern States, engaged in manufactures, wished to have foreign competition shut off by heavy duties.

## JACKSON'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(SEVENTH PRESIDENT—TWO TERMS: 1829-1837.)

President Jackson commenced his administration with an inflexible honesty that delighted all, but with a sturdiness of purpose that amazed both friends and foes. He surrounded himself at once by his political friends, thus establishing the principle of "rotation in office".†

**Domestic Affairs.**—*Nullification* (1832).—South Carolina passed a Nullification ordinance declaring the tariff law "null and void", and that the State would secede from the Union if force should be employed to collect any revenue at Charleston. President Jackson acted with his accustomed

\* Andrew Jackson was born 1767; died 1845. He was of Scotch-Irish descent. His father died before he was born, leaving his mother very poor. As a boy, Andrew was brave and impetuous, passionately fond of athletic sports, but not at all addicted to books. His life was crowded with excitement and adventure. At fourteen, being captured by the British, he was ordered to clean the commander's boots. Showing the true American spirit in his refusal, he was sent to prison with a wound on head and arm. Here he contracted the small-pox, which kept him ill for several months. Soon after his mother had effected his exchange, she died of ship-fever while caring for the imprisoned Americans at Charleston. Left destitute, young Jackson tried various employments, but finally settled down to the law, and in 1796 was elected to Congress. His imperious temper and inflexible will supplied him with frequent quarrels. He first distinguished himself as a military officer in the war against the Creek Indians. His dashing successes in the war of 1812 completed his reputation, and ultimately won him the Presidency. His nomination was at first received in many States with ridicule, as, whatever might be his military prowess, neither his temper nor his ability recommended him as a statesman. His re-election, however, proved his popular success as President. His chief intellectual gifts were energy and intuitive judgment. He was thoroughly honest, intensely warm-hearted, and had an instinctive horror of debt. His moral courage was as great as his physical, and his patriotism was undoubted. He died at the "Hermitage", his home near Nashville, Tennessee.—Jackson and Adams were born the same year, yet how different was their childhood! One born to luxury and travel, a student from his earliest years, and brilliantly educated; the other born in poverty, of limited education, and forced to provide for himself. Yet they were destined twice to compete for the highest place in the nation. Adams, the first time barely successful, was unfortunate in his administration; Jackson, triumphing the second, was brilliant in his Presidential career.

† "During the first year of his administration, there were nearly seven hundred removals from office, not including subordinate clerks. During the forty years preceding, there had been but sixty-four."

promptness. He issued a proclamation announcing his determination to execute the laws, and ordered troops, under General Scott, to Charleston.\* In the meantime, Henry Clay's celebrated "Compromise Bill" was adopted by the Senate. This measure, offering a gradual reduction of the tariff, was accepted by both sides and quiet restored.†



JACKSON.

*Bank of the United States.*—During his first term, Jackson vetoed a bill renewing the charter of the United States Bank. After his re-election by an overwhelming majority, considering his policy sustained by the people, he ordered (1833) the public money to be removed from its vaults. The bank thereupon contracted its loans,

money became scarce, and, people being unable to pay their debts, commercial distress ensued. Jackson's measure excited violent clamor; but he was sustained by the democratic majority in the House of Representatives.

*Speculations.*—When the public money, which had been

\* John C. Calhoun and Robert Y. Hayne were the prominent advocates of the doctrine of "State rights", which declared that a State could set aside an act of Congress. During this struggle, occurred the memorable debate between Webster and Hayne, in which the former, opposing secession, pronounced those words familiar to every school-boy, "Liberty and Union, now and forever, one and inseparable." Calhoun's public life extended over forty years. He was one of the most celebrated statesmen of his time. As a speaker, he was noted for forcible logic, clear demonstration, and earnest manner. He rejected ornament, and rarely used illustration. Webster, his political antagonist, said of him, "He had the indisputable basis of all high character—unspotted integrity and honor unimpeached. Nothing groveling, low, or meanly selfish came near his head or his heart."

† Alexander H. Stephens says: "To do this, Clay had to break from his old political friends, while he was offering up the darling system of his heart on the altar of his country. No one can deny that he was a patriot—every inch of him. When he was importuned not to take the course he did, and assured that it would lessen his chances for the Presidency, he nobly replied, 'I would rather be right than President'—a sentiment worthy to be the motto of every young patriot in our land."

withdrawn from the Bank of the United States, was deposited in the local banks, it became easy to borrow money. Speculation extended to every branch of trade, but especially to western lands. New cities were laid out in the wilderness. Fabulous prices were charged for building lots, which existed only on paper. Scarcely a man could be found who had not his pet project for realizing a fortune. The bitter fruits of these hot-house schemes were gathered in Van Buren's time.

*Indian Troubles.* — 1. THE BLACK HAWK WAR broke out in the North-west Territory (1832).

The Sacs and Foxes had some time before sold their lands to the United States, but when the settlers came to take possession, the Indians refused to leave. After some skirmishes, they were driven off, and their leader, the famous Black Hawk, was captured. 2. THE FLORIDA WAR (1835) with the Seminoles grew out of an attempt to remove them, in accordance with a treaty, to lands west of the Mississippi. Osce o'la, the chief of the Seminoles, was so defiant, that General Thompson, the government agent, put him in irons. Dissembling his wrath, Osceola consented to the treaty. But no sooner was he released than, burning with indignation, he plotted a general massacre of the whites. General Thompson was shot and scalped while sitting at dinner, under the very guns of Fort King. The same day, Major Dade, with over one hundred men, was waylaid near the Wa'hoos Swamp. All but four were killed, and these subsequently died of



TAYLOR.

their wounds.\* After several battles, the Indians retreated to the everglades of southern Florida, in whose tangled swamps they hoped to find a safe retreat. They were, however, pursued into their hiding-places by Colonel Taylor, and beaten in a hard-fought battle (O ke cho'bee, Dec. 25, 1837), but were not fully subdued until 1842.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*France.*—The French government had promised to pay \$5,000,000 for damages to our commerce during Napoleon's wars. This agreement not being kept, Jackson urged Congress to make reprisals on French ships. The mediation of England secured the payment of the debt by France, and thus averted the threatened war.

**Political Parties.**—The democratic candidate, Martin Van Bu'ren, was chosen President.† The people thus supported the policy of Jackson,—no United States Bank and no Protective Tariff. General Harrison was the whig candidate.

## VAN BUREN'S ADMINISTRATION.‡

(EIGHTH PRESIDENT: 1837-1841.)

**Domestic Affairs.**—*Crisis of 1837.*—The financial storm, which had been gathering through the preceding administra-

\* Osceola, in October, 1837, visited the camp of General Jessup, under a flag of truce. He was there seized and sent to Fort Moultrie, where he died the following year.

† No Vice-President being chosen by the people, Colonel R. M. Johnson (p. 165) was selected by the Senate.

‡ Martin Van Buren was born 1782; died 1862. He early took an interest in politics, and in 1818 started a new organization of the democratic party of New York, his native State, which had the power for over twenty years. In 1831, he was appointed minister to England, whither he went in September, but when the nomination came before the Senate in December, it was rejected, on the ground that he had sided with England against the United States, on certain matters, and had carried party contests and their results into foreign negotiations. His party regarded this as extreme political persecution, and the next year elected him to the Vice-Presidency. He thus became the head of the Senate which a few months before condemned him, and where he now performed his duties with "dignity, courtesy, and impartiality".

tion, now burst with terrible fury. The banks contracted their circulation.\* Business men could not pay their debts. Failures were every-day occurrences, and the losses in New York city alone, during March and April, exceeded \$100,000,000. Property of all kinds declined in value. Eight of the States failed, wholly or in part. Even the United States government could not pay its debts.† Consternation seized upon all classes. Confidence was destroyed, and trade stood still.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*The "Patriot War" (1837-'38).*—The Canadian rebellion against England, at this time, stirred the sympathies of the American people. Meetings were held, volunteers offered, and arms contributed. The President issued a proclamation refusing the protection of the United States government to any who should aid the Canadians, and sent General Scott to the frontier to preserve the peace.‡

As a President, Van Buren was the subject of much partisan censure. The country was passing through a peculiar crisis, and his was a difficult position to fill with satisfaction to all. That he pleased his own party, is proved from the fact of his re-nomination in 1840 against Garrison. In 1848, he became the candidate of the "free democracy", a new party advocating anti-slavery principles. After this, he retired to his estate in Kinderhook, N. Y., where he died.

\* The direct causes of this were (1) the specie circular, which was issued by Jackson in 1836, just at the close of his last term, directing that payments for public lands should be made in gold and silver. The gold and silver was soon gathered into the United States treasury. (2) The surplus public money, amounting to about \$28,000,000, which was ordered by Congress to be withdrawn from the local banks and distributed among the States. The banks could not meet the demand. (3) During the season of high prices and speculation, when fortunes were easily made, there had been heavy importations of European goods, which had to be paid for in gold and silver. Thus the country was drained of its specie. (4) A terrible fire in the city of New York on the night of Dec. 16, 1835, which had burned 600 valuable stores, and property to the amount of \$20,000,000.

† At the present time, the public money is kept in the United States treasury at Washington, and in sub-treasuries. This was Van Buren's favorite idea, and adopted by Congress only at the close of his term. It was called the Sub-Treasury Bill, and was used as a great argument against Van Buren's re-election. It was repealed during Tyler's administration, but re-enacted under Polk.

‡ A body of American sympathizers having taken possession of Navy Island, in

*The North-east Boundary* between Maine and New Brunswick had never been settled. The people of that region threatened to take up arms to support their respective claims. For some time, there was great peril of a war with England. During Tyler's administration, the difficulty was adjusted by what is known as the Ashburton treaty (1842), which was negotiated between the United States and Great Britain; Daniel Webster and Lord Ashburton acting as commissioners.

**Political Parties.**—The financial difficulties caused a change in political feeling, and for the time weakened the confidence of the people in the wisdom of the democratic policy. Van Buren failed of a re-election, and General Harrison, the hero of Tippecanoe, the whig nominee, was chosen President by an immense majority.

## HARRISON AND TYLER'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(NINTH AND TENTH PRESIDENTS: 1841-1845.)

General Harrison had scarcely entered upon the duties of his office and selected his cabinet, when he died. John Tyler, the Vice-President, in accordance with the Constitution of the United States, became President. He was elected as a whig, but did not carry out the favorite measures of his party.

Niagara River, had hired a steamer, called the Caroline, to convey their provisions and war materials. On the night of December 29, 1837, a party of British troops attempted to seize this vessel at Schlosser. A desperate fight ensued; but the ship was, at last, set on fire and left to drift over the Falls. This event caused great excitement at the time.

\* William Henry Harrison was born in 1773; died 1841. He distinguished himself during the war of 1812, especially in the battle of the Thames. His military reputation made him available as a Presidential candidate. His character was unimpeachable, and the chief slur cast upon him by his opponents was that he had lived in a "log cabin" with nothing to drink but "hard cider". His friends turned this to good

**Domestic Affairs.**—*United States Bank.*—The whigs, immediately upon coming into power, passed a bill to establish a United States Bank, but it was vetoed by Tyler, to the great disgust of the men who had elected him.

*The Suffrage Difficulties*, commonly known as “Dorr’s Rebellion”, grew out of efforts to secure a more liberal constitution in the State of Rhode Island. The charter granted by Charles II. was still in force. It limited the right of suffrage to those holding a certain amount of property, and fixed very unequally the number of deputies in the Assembly from the different towns. In 1841, a new constitution was adopted, the vote being taken in mass conventions, and not by the legal voters, according to the charter. Under this constitution, T. W. Dorr was elected governor. The

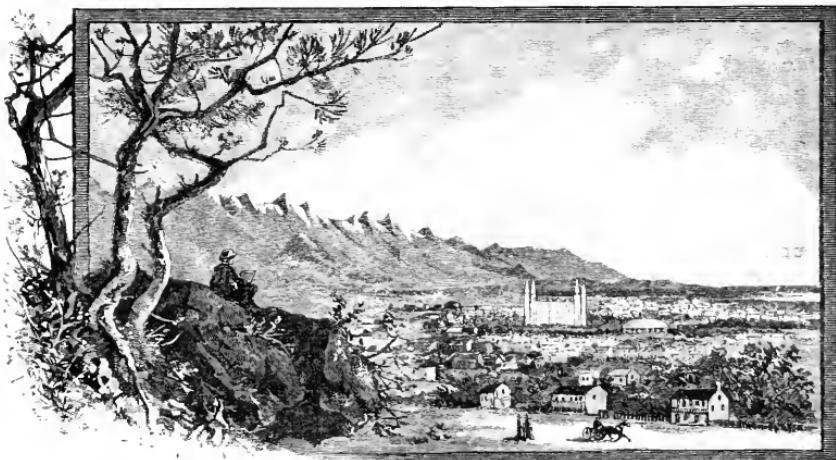
account. The campaign was noted for immense mass-meetings, long processions, song-singing, and great enthusiasm. “Hard cider” became a party watch-word, and “log cabins” a regular feature in the popular parades. Garrison was elected by a large majority, and great hopes were entertained of his administration. Though advanced in years, he gave promise of endurance. But “he was beset by office-seekers; he was anxious to gratify the numerous friends and supporters who flocked about him; he gave himself incessantly to public business; and at the close of the month he was on a sick-bed.” The illness soon proved to be fatal. His last words were, “The principles of the government; I wish them carried out. I ask nothing more.”

John Tyler was born in 1790; died 1862. He was in early life a great admirer of Henry Clay, and is said to have wept with sorrow when the whigs in convention rejected his favorite candidate for the Presidency, and selected Garrison. He was nominated Vice-President by a unanimous vote, and was a favorite with his party. In the popular refrain, “Tippecanoe and Tyler too”, the people sung praises to him as heartily as to Garrison himself. The death of Garrison and the succession of Tyler, was the first instance of the kind in our history.

Tyler’s administration was not successful. He opposed the measures of his party, and made free use of the veto power. His former political friends denounced him as a renegade, to which he replied that he had never professed to indorse the measures which he opposed. The feeling increased in bitterness, and all his cabinet finally resigned. He was, however, nominated for the next Presidency by a convention composed chiefly of office-holders; he accepted, but finding no popular support, soon withdrew. In 1861, he became the presiding officer of the peace convention in Washington. All efforts at reconciliation proving futile, he renounced his allegiance to the United States, and followed the Confederate fortunes. He died in Richmond, where he was in attendance as a member of the Confederate Congress.

old government still went on, treating his election as illegal. He attempted to seize the State arsenal, but, finding it held by the militia, gave up the attempt. Dorr was afterward arrested, convicted of treason, and sentenced to imprisonment for life; but was finally pardoned. Meanwhile, a liberal constitution, which had been legally adopted, went into operation (1843).

*Anti-Rent Difficulties* (1844).—The tenants on some of the old “patroon estates” in New York refused to pay the rent.



VIEW OF SALT LAKE CITY.

It was very light,\* but was considered illegal. The anti-renters, as they were called, assumed the disguise of Indians, tarred and feathered those tenants who paid their rents, and even killed officers who served warrants upon them. The disturbances were suppressed only by a military force (1846).

*The Mormons*.—A religious sect called Mor'mons had settled at Nau voo', Ill. (1840). Here they built a city of several thousand inhabitants, and laid the foundation of a

\* The rent consisted of only “a few bushels of wheat, three or four fat fowls, and a day's work with horses and wagon, per year”.

costly temple. Having incurred the enmity of the people about them, their leader, Joseph Smith, was taken from the custody of the authorities, to whom he had intrusted himself, and killed (1844).\* The city was bombarded for three days, and finally the inhabitants fled to Iowa (1846).

*The Magnetic Telegraph* was invented by Samuel F. B. Morse. The first line was built between Baltimore and Washington (1844), with \$30,000 appropriated by Congress; and the first public news sent was that concerning Polk's nomination (p. 184).†

**Foreign Affairs.**—*Innovation of Texas.*—The Texans, under General Sam Houston (hū'ston), having won their independence from Mexico, applied (April, 1844) for admission into the Union. Their petition was at first rejected by Congress,‡ but, being indorsed by the people in the fall elections, was accepted before the close of Tyler's administration.

*North-west Boundary.*—The north-east boundary ques-

\* Joseph Smith, while living at Palmyra, N. Y., claimed to have had a supernatural revelation, by which he was directed to a spot where he found buried a series of golden plates covered with inscriptions, which he translated by means of two transparent stones (Urim and Thummim) found with them. The result was the Book of Mormon, said to be the history of a race favored by God, who occupied this continent at a remote period of antiquity. The Mormons accept the Holy Bible as received by all Christian people, but believe the Book of Mormon to be an additional revelation, and also that their chief or prophet receives direct inspiration from God. They practice plural marriage, or polygamy, claiming that the Scriptures justify, while one of their revelations directly commands it. After the death of Smith and their expulsion from Nauvoo, a company under the leadership of Brigham Young crossed the Rocky Mountains, and settled near Great Salt Lake, in Utah. They were followed by others of their sect, and, after great sufferings, succeeded in subduing the barren soil, and establishing a prosperous colony. They founded Salt Lake City, where they erected a large temple for worship. Their prophet, Brigham Young, who died August 19, 1877, is still remembered by his followers with the greatest reverence.

† This was the grandest event of this administration, and it has largely influenced the civilization and prosperity of the country. Thus the steamboat and the magnetic telegraph were the early fruits of American liberty and industry. (Read Barnes' Popular History of the United States, pp. 365 and 442.)

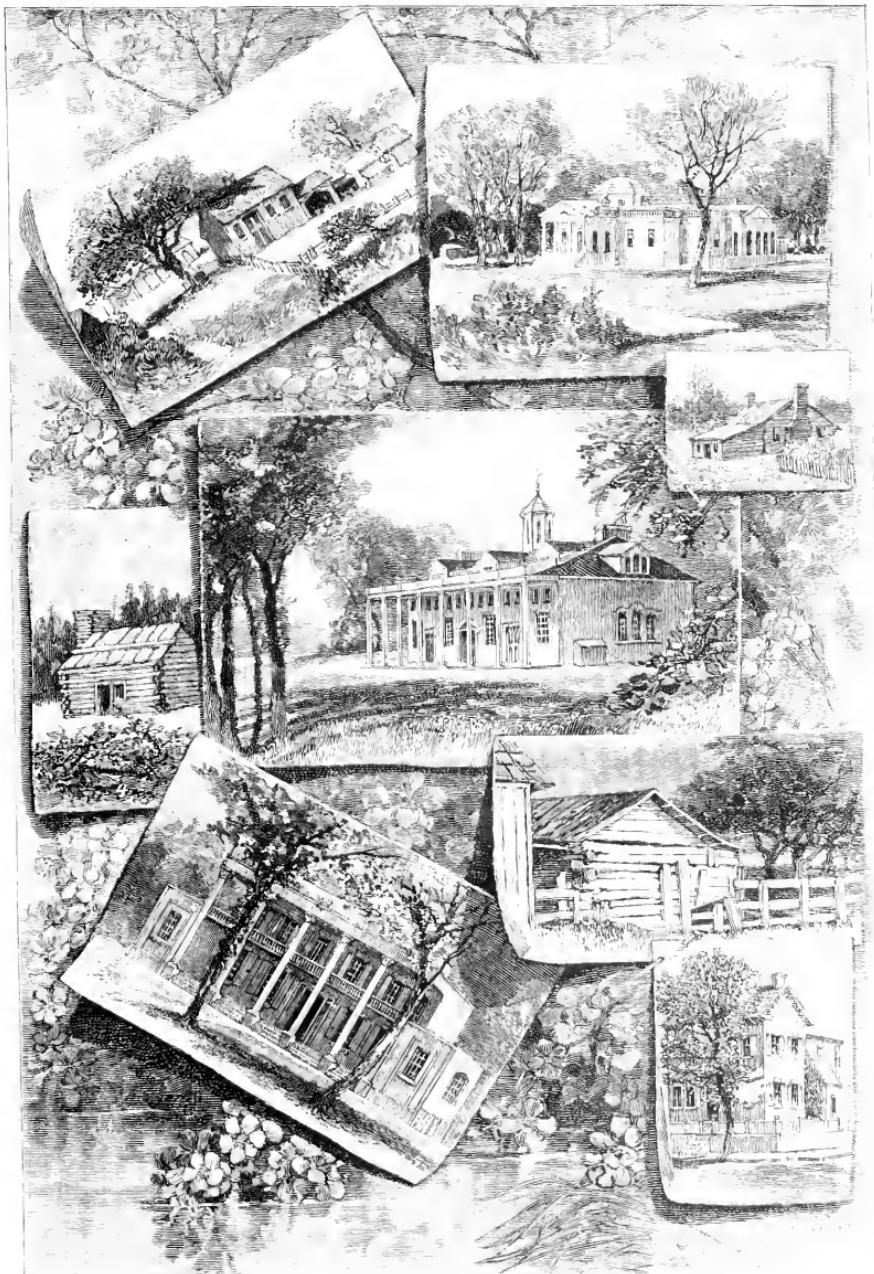
‡ There were two reasons why this measure was warmly discussed. 1. Mexico

tion had scarcely been settled, when the north-west boundary came into dispute. It was settled, during Polk's administration, by a compromise fixing the boundary line at  $49^{\circ}$  instead of  $54^{\circ} 40'$  as claimed by the United States.

**Political Parties.**—The question of the annexation of Texas went before the people for their decision. The whigs, who opposed its admission, nominated Henry Clay\* for President. The democrats, who favored its admission, nominated James K. Polk, who, after a close contest, was elected.

claimed Texas, although that country had maintained its independence for nine years, and had been recognized by several European nations as well as by the United States. Besides, Texas claimed the Rio Grande (rē'o grān dā), while Mexico insisted upon the Nueces (nwā'ses) River as the boundary line between Texas and Mexico. The section of country between these rivers was therefore disputed territory. Thus the annexation of Texas would bring on a war with Mexico. 2. Texas held slaves. Consequently, while the South urged its admission, the North as strongly opposed it.

\* Henry Clay was a man whom the nation loved, but signally failed to honor. Yet his fame and reputation remain far above any distinction which mere office can give, and unite with them an affection which stands the test of time. Respected by his opponents, he was almost idolized by his friends. In this he somewhat resembled Jefferson, but, unlike him, he had not in his early years the advantages of a liberal education. His father, a Baptist minister of very limited means, died when Henry was five years old, and at fifteen he was left to support himself. Meantime, he had received what little tuition he had, in a log-cabin school-house, from very indifferent teachers. With a rare tact for making friends, ready talent waiting to be instructed, and a strong determination seeking opportunities, he soon began to show the dawning of the power which afterward distinguished him. He said: "I owe my success in life to a single fact, namely, that at an early age I commenced, and continued for some years, the practice of daily reading and speaking the contents of some historical or scientific book. These off-hand efforts were sometimes made in a corn-field; at others, in the forest; and not unfrequently in some distant town, with the horse and ox for my only auditors. It is to this that I am indebted for the impulses that have shaped and molded my entire destiny." Rising rapidly by the force of his genius, he soon made himself felt in his State and in the nation. He was peculiarly winning in his manners. An eminent and stern political antagonist once refused an introduction to him expressly on the ground of a determination not to be magnetized by personal contact, as he "had known other good haters" of Clay to be. United with this suavity was a wonderful will and an inflexible honor. His political adversary, but personal admirer, John C. Breckinridge, in an oration pronounced at his death, uttered these words—"If I were to write his epitaph, I would inscribe as the highest eulogy on the stone which shall mark his resting-place: 'Here lies a man who was in the public service for fifty years, and never attempted to deceive his countrymen'."



### Homes of Eminent Americans.

1. BIRTHPLACE OF WASHINGTON, AND MT. VERNON, HIS LAST RESIDENCE. 2. MONTICELLO, THE HOME OF JEFFERSON. 3. BIRTHPLACE OF WEBSTER. 4. BIRTHPLACE OF GARFIELD. 5. THE "HERMITAGE", RESIDENCE OF JACKSON. 6. BIRTHPLACE OF LINCOLN, AND HIS LAST RESIDENCE.



## JAMES K. POLK'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(ELEVENTH PRESIDENT: 1845-1849.)

## WAR WITH MEXICO (1846-'47).

## 1. GENERAL TAYLOR'S ARMY.

**Campaign on the Rio Grande.**—General Taylor having been ordered with his troops into the disputed territory, advanced to the Rio Grande and built Fort Brown. Returning from Point Isabel, whither he had gone for supplies, on the plains of PALO ALTO (päh'lō äh'lō) he met six thousand Mexicans, under General Arista (ah rees'tah), drawn up across the road. (Map opp. p. 161.) Though they outnumbered his little army three to one, he routed them with a loss of but nine men killed. The next afternoon, he met them again at RESACA DE LA PALMA (rā säh'kāh dā läh päh'l'mäh), posted in a deep ravine through which the road ran, flanked by thickets. Their artillery held Taylor's men in check for a time, when Captain May, charging with his cavalry in the face of a murderous fire, captured the guns, and with them their commander, General La Vega (läh vā'gāh), just in the act of firing a gun. The infantry now rushed forward and drove the enemy, who fled across the Rio Grande in utter rout.

\* James K. Polk was born 1795; died 1849. He was a conspicuous opposer of the administration of John Quincy Adams, and a warm supporter of Jackson. In 1839, having served fourteen years in Congress, he declined a re-election and was chosen governor of Tennessee. His Presidential nomination, in connection with that of George M. Dallas, of Pennsylvania, as Vice-President, had the effect of uniting the democratic party, which had been disturbed by dissensions between the friends and opponents of Martin Van Buren. The Mexican war, which was strongly opposed in many States, the enactment of a tariff based on a revenue principle instead of a protective one, and the agitation caused by the "Wilmot proviso" (p. 190), conspired to affect his popularity before the end of his term. He had, however, previously pledged himself not to be a candidate for re-election. He died about three months after his retirement from office.

**Invasion of Mexico.—*Capture of Monterey* (Sept. 24).—** General Taylor, with about six thousand men, advanced upon Monterey (mōn tā rā'). This city, surrounded by mountains and almost impassable ravines, was strongly fortified, and its streets were barricaded and defended by a garrison of ten thousand men. A grand assault was made on the city. To



GENERAL TAYLOR AT BUENA VISTA.

avoid the deadly fire from the windows, roofs, and barricades, the troops entered the buildings and dug their way through the stone walls from house to house, or passed from roof to roof. They came at last within one square of the Grand Plaza, when the city was surrendered. The garrison was allowed to march out with the honors of war.

***Battle of Buena Vista* (bwā' näh vēs' tāh) (February 23, 1847).—** Santa Anna, the Mexican general, learning that the flower of Taylor's command had been withdrawn to aid

General Scott, determined to crush the remainder. The little American army took post at Buena Vista, a narrow mountain pass with hills on one side and a ravine on the other.\* Here it was attacked by Santa Anna with twenty thousand of the best troops of Mexico. The battle lasted from early morning till dark. In the final desperate encounter, our infantry being overwhelmed by numbers, Bragg's artillery was ordered to the rescue. Without any infantry support, they dashed up to within a few yards of the crowded masses of the enemy. A single discharge made them waver. "A little more grape, Captain Bragg!" shouted Taylor. A second and a third discharge followed, and the Mexicans broke and fled in disorder. During the night, Santa Anna drew off his defeated army.

General Taylor's work was now done. His army was intended only to hold the country already gained, while General Scott penetrated to the capital from Vera Cruz (vā rāh kroōs).

## 2. GENERAL KEARNEY'S ARMY.

**Conquest of New Mexico and California.**—General Kearney (kär'ne) was directed to take the Spanish provinces of New Mexico and California. Starting from Fort Leaven-

\* Several anecdotes are told of General Taylor in connection with this battle. The day before the principal attack, the Mexicans fired heavily on our line. A Mexican officer, coming with a message from Santa Anna, found Taylor sitting on his white horse, with one leg over the pommel of his saddle. The officer asked him "what he was waiting for". He answered, "For Santa Anna to surrender." After the officer's return, a battery opened on Taylor's position, but he remained coolly surveying the enemy with his spy-glass. Some one suggesting that "Whitey" was too conspicuous a horse for the battle, he replied that the "old fellow had missed the fun at Monterey, and he should have his share this time". Mr. Crittenden having gone to Santa Anna's head-quarters, was told if General Taylor would surrender, he should be protected. Mr. Crittenden replied, "General Taylor never surrenders." This became a favorite motto during the election of 1848. The anecdote told concerning Capt. Bragg is disputed, but has become historical (Barnes' Pop. Hist. U. S., p. 456.)

worth (June, 1846), a journey of about a thousand miles brought him to Santa Fe.\* Unfurling there the United States flag, he continued his march toward California (map opp. p. 161). On his way, however, he learned from Kit Carson, the noted hunter, that he was too late. The winter before, Captain John C. Fremont, with a company of sixty men, had been engaged in surveying a new route to Oregon. Hearing that the Mexican commandant intended to expel the American settlers, he went to their rescue, although he was not aware that war had broken out between the United States and Mexico. With greatly inferior numbers, he was victor over the Mexicans in every conflict. By the help of Commodores Sloat and Stockton, and also General Kearney, who came in time to aid in the last battle, the entire country was conquered.

### 3. GENERAL SCOTT'S ARMY.

**Capture of Vera Cruz** (March 29, 1847).—General Winfield Scott landed an army twelve thousand strong, without opposition, and forthwith drew his siege-lines among the shifting sand-hills and chaparral thickets about Vera Cruz (map opp. p. 161). After a fierce bombardment of four days, the city and the strong castle of San Juan de Ulloa (sähn hoo ähn' dā ool yō' ah) were surrendered.

**March to Mexico.**—*Battle of Cerro Gordo* (April 18).—A week afterward, the army took up its march for the capital. At the mountain pass of Cer'ro Gor'do, the enemy were strongly fortified. Our men cut a road around the base of

\* Colonel Doniphan, with one thousand men, the main body of General Kearney's command, marched over a thousand miles through a hostile country, from Santa Fe to Saltillo, having on the way fought two battles and conquered the province and city of Chihuahua (che wah' wah). At the end of their term of service, he marched his men back to New Orleans and discharged them. They had been enlisted, taken five thousand miles, and disbanded, all in a year.

the mountain through the forest, and dragged cannon up the precipice by ropes, to the rear of the position. Thence a plunging fire was opened simultaneously with an assault in front. The Mexicans fled in such haste that Santa Anna with difficulty escaped on his wheel-mule, leaving behind him his wooden leg.

The city of Puebla (pwĕb'lah), next to Mexico in importance, surrendered without resistance. Here Scott waited three months for reinforcements.

*Battles before Mexico.*—With eleven thousand men, the march was resumed (August 7), and in three days the army reached the crest of the Cor dil'le ras, where the magnificent valley of Mexico lay stretched before them. In the midst, was the city, surrounded by fertile plains and cloud-capped mountains. But the way thither was guarded by thirty thousand men and strong fortifications. Turning to the south to avoid the strongest points, by a route considered impassable, the army came before the intrenched camp of CONTRERAS (kon trā'ras), within fourteen miles of Mexico (Aug. 19). The next morning, this was taken, the troops having moved to their positions in darkness so intense that, to avoid being separated, they had to touch each other as they marched. The same day, the height of CHURUBUSCO (choo roo boo'sko) was stormed, numerous batteries were captured, and the defenses laid bare to the causeways leading to the very gates of the city. An armistice and fruitless negotiations for peace delayed the advance until General Scott found that the Mexicans were only improving the time in strengthening their works. Once more (September 8), our army moved to the assault. The attack was irresistible. The formidable outworks were taken one by one. At last, the castle of CHAPULTEPEC (chä pool te pek'), situated on a high rock commanding the city, was stormed. The next day (Sep-

tember 14), the army entered the city, and the stars and stripes waved in triumph over the palace of the Monte zu'mas.

**Peace.**—The fall of the capital virtually closed the war. A treaty was concluded, February 2, 1848. The United States gained the vast territory reaching south to the Gila (hē'lah) and west to the Pacific (see maps of IVth and VIth Epochs).

**Domestic Affairs.**—*The Wilmot Proviso.*—Texas, the prize of the war, became at once the bone of contention. David Wilmot offered in Congress (August, 1846) a bill forbidding slavery in any territory which should be acquired. This measure, though lost, excited violent debate in and out of Congress, and became the great feature of the fall election.

*Discovery of Gold in California.*—A workman in digging a mill-race in the Sacramento valley (February, 1848) discovered shining particles of gold. A further search proved that the soil for miles around contained the precious metal. The news flew in every direction. Emigration began from all parts of America, and even from Europe and Asia. In eighteen months, one hundred thousand persons went from the United States to this El Do ra'do, where a fortune was to be picked up in a few days. Thousands made their way across the desert, amid privations which strewed the route with skeletons. The bay of San Francisco was quickly surrounded by an extemporized city of shanties and booths. All ordinary employments were laid aside. Ships were deserted by their crews, who ran to the mines, sometimes, it is said, headed by their officers. Soon, streets were laid out, houses erected, and from this Babel, as if by magic, grew up a beautiful city. For a time, lawlessness reigned supreme. But, driven by the necessity of events, the most respectable citizens took the law into their own hands, organized vigi-

lance committees, and administered a rude but prompt justice which presently restored order.

**Political Parties.—**

Three parties now divided the suffrages of the people. The whigs nominated General Taylor for President; the democrats, Lewis Cass; and the free-soilers, who were opposed to the extension of slavery, Martin Van Buren. The personal popularity of General Taylor, on account of his many sterling qualities and his brilliant victories in the Mexican

war, made him the favorite candidate, and he was elected.



WASHING OUT GOLD.

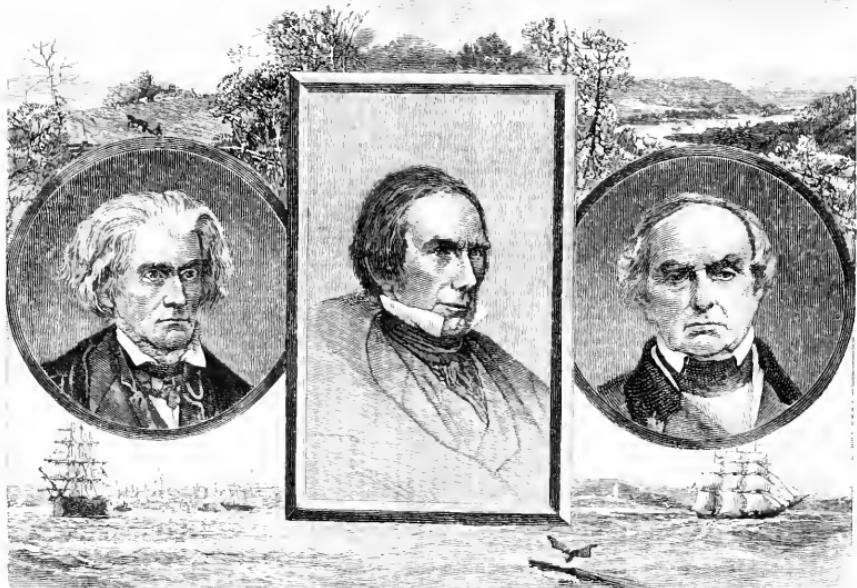
**TAYLOR AND FILLMORE'S ADMINISTRATION.\***

(TWELFTH AND THIRTEENTH PRESIDENTS: 1849-1853.)

General Taylor, like General Harrison, died soon after his elevation to the Presidency. Millard Fillmore, Vice-President, succeeded him.

\* Zachary Taylor was born in Virginia in 1784. Soon after his birth, his parents removed to Kentucky. His means of education were extremely scanty, and until he was twenty-four years of age he worked on his father's plantation. Madison, who was a relative and at that time Secretary of State, then secured for him an appointment in the army as lieutenant. From this, he rose by regular and rapid degrees to a major-generalship. Palo Alto, Resaca de la Palma, Monterey, and Buena Vista won him great applause. He was the hero of a successful war, and the soldiers admiringly called him "Old Rough and Ready". Many whig leaders violently opposed

**Domestic Affairs.**—Slavery questions were the great political topic of this administration. When California applied for admission to the Union as a free State, all these subjects were brought to a focus. A hot debate ensued, and for



JOHN C. CALHOUN.

HENRY CLAY.

DANIEL WEBSTER.

awhile it seemed as if the Union would be rent asunder. At this terrible crisis, Henry Clay, the "Great Pacificator", came forward, and, with his wonderful eloquence, urged the

his nomination. Daniel Webster called him "an ignorant frontier colonel". The fact that he was a slave-holder was warmly urged against him. He knew nothing of civil affairs, and had taken so little interest in politics that he had not voted in forty years. His nomination caused a secession from the whigs, resulting in the formation of the free-soil party; yet he maintained his popularity as President, and was one of the most esteemed who have filled that office. He died July 9, 1850, at the Presidential mansion, after an illness of five days.

Millard Fillmore was born in Cayuga county, N. Y., 1800; died at Buffalo, 1874. He learned the trade of fuller, taught school, practiced law, served as Assemblyman for three terms and as Congressman for four terms, ran unsuccessfully for governor, and was comptroller of the State of New York when he was nominated for the Presidency. By his integrity, industry, and practical ability, he won a place among the first statesmen of his day. Signing the Fugitive Slave Law, however, cost him much of his popularity at the North.

necessity of mutual compromise and forbearance. Daniel Webster\* warmly seconded this effort at conciliation.

*The Compromise of 1850.*—The Omnibus Bill, Clay's measure, proposed (1) that California should come in as a free State; (2) that the Territories of Utah and New Mexico should be formed without any provision concerning slavery; (3) that Texas should be paid \$10,000,000 to give up its claim on the Territory of New Mexico; (4) that the slave trade should be prohibited in the District of Columbia; and (5) that a FUGITIVE SLAVE LAW should be enacted providing for the return to their owners of slaves escaping to a free State. The various provisions of this bill were finally, though separately, adopted as the best solution of the problem.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*Invasion of Cuba.*—About five hundred adventurers, "filibusters", undertook the annexation of Cuba to the United States. The attempt ended in defeat, and in the execution, at Havana, of Lopez, the leader (1851).

**Political Parties.**—The democratic and whig parties both declared that they stood by the provisions of the Omnibus Bill. The free-soil party was outspoken against it. Frank-

\* When Daniel Webster, the great American statesman and jurist, was fourteen years old, he first enjoyed the privilege of a few months schooling at an academy. The man whose eloquence was afterward to stir the nation, was then so shy that he could not muster courage to speak before the school. He says, "Many a piece did I commit and rehearse in my own room, over and over again; yet when the day came, when my name was called, and I saw all eyes turned toward me, I could not raise myself from my seat." In other respects, however, he gave decided promise of his future eminence. One year after, his father resolved to send him to college—a dream he had never dared to cherish. "I remember the very hill we were ascending through deep snow, in a New England sleigh, when my father made known this purpose to me. I could not speak. How could he, I thought, with so large a family, and in such narrow circumstances, think of incurring so great an expense for me? A warm glow ran all over me, and I laid my head on my father's shoulder and wept." Having finished his collegiate education and entered his profession, he at once rose to eminence. By rapid strides, he placed himself at the head of American orators. It was a disappointment to Webster's friends, as it was, perhaps, to himself, that he was never placed in the Presidential chair. But, like Clay, although he might have honored that position he needed it not to enhance his renown. His death, in 1852, called out more orations and sermons, than had any other except that of Washington.

lin Pierce, the Presidential nominee of the democratic party, was elected by a large majority over General Scott, the whig candidate.

## PIERCE'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(FOURTEENTH PRESIDENT: 1853-1857.)

**Domestic Affairs.**—*Kansas-Nebraska Bill.*—The Compromise Bill of 1850 produced only a lull in the slavery excitement. It burst out anew when Stephen A. Douglas brought forward (1853) his famous bill organizing the Territories of Kansas and Nebraska, and advocating the doctrine of “squatter sovereignty”; *i. e.*, the right of the inhabitants of each Territory to decide for themselves whether the State should come into the Union free or slave.† This bill

\* Franklin Pierce was born 1804; died 1869. He had barely attained the requisite legal age when he was elected to the Senate. He there found such men as Clay, Webster, Calhoun, Seward, Benton, and Silas Wright. Nathaniel Hawthorne says in his biography of Mr. Pierce: “With his usual tact and exquisite sense of propriety, he saw that it was not the time for him to step forward prominently on this highest theater in the land. He beheld these great combatants doing battle before the eyes of the nation, and engrossing its whole regards. There was hardly an avenue to reputation save what was occupied by one or another of those gigantic figures.” During Mr. Tyler’s administration he resigned. When the Mexican war broke out, he enlisted as a volunteer, but soon rose to the office of brigadier-general. He distinguished himself under General Scott, against whom he afterward successfully ran for the Presidency, and upon whom, during his administration, he conferred the title of lieutenant-general. Pierce opposed anti-slavery measures in every shape. He, however, espoused the national cause at the opening of the Civil War.

† The public lands have often threatened the peace of the nation. 1. The question of their ownership was one of the greatest obstacles to the union of the States. In 1781, New York was the first to present her western territory to the general government. Virginia followed her example in 1784, donating the great North-western Territory—a princely domain, which, if retained, would have made her the richest of the States; she reserved only 3,709.848 acres in Ohio, which she subsequently sold in small tracts to settlers. Massachusetts, in 1785, relinquished her claim, retaining a proprietary right over large tracts in New York. Connecticut, in 1786, did the same, and from the sale of her lands in Ohio (the “Western Reserve”) laid the foundation of her school fund. Georgia and the Carolinas gave up their right to territory from which have been carved the States of Tennessee, Mississippi, and Alabama. 2. After these lands became the property of the general government, a perplexing question was, Shall they be free? Upon it, for years, hinged largely the politics of the

being a virtual repudiation of the Missouri Compromise, excited intense feeling.\* It, however, became a law (1854).

*“Border Warfare.”*—The struggle was now taken from Congress to Kansas. A bitter contest arose between the pro-slavery and the anti-slavery men—the former anxious to secure the State for slavery; the latter, for freedom. Each party sent armed emigrants to the Territory and civil war ensued. Bands of armed men crossed over from Missouri, took possession of the polls, and controlled the elections. Houses were attacked and pillaged, and men murdered in cold blood. For several years, Kansas was a scene of lawless violence.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*Mexico.*—Owing to the inaccuracy of the map used in the treaty between the United States and Mexico, a dispute arose with regard to the boundary line. General Gadsden negotiated a settlement whereby Mexico was paid \$10,000,000, and the United States secured the region (map, Epoch VI.) known as the “Gadsden purchase”.

*Japan.*—Commodore Perry's expedition to Japan (1854) excited great attention. He negotiated a treaty which gave to the merchants of the United States two ports of entry in that exclusive country.

**Political Parties.**—The compromises of 1820 and 1850 being now abolished, the slave question became the turning point of the election. New party lines were drawn to meet

country. The admission of Missouri, Texas, California, and Kansas, was each the signal for the re-opening of this vexed question. Though the public lands have been the cause of intestine strife, they have been a great source of national wealth. Their sale has brought large sums into the treasury. They have been given to settlers as a stimulus to immigration. They have been granted to endow colleges and schools, to build railroads, to reward the soldiers and support their widows and orphans (see page 309).

\* During the discussion, which was exciting almost beyond precedent, Mr. Sumner, of Massachusetts, made some severe reflections upon Senator Butler, of South Carolina. For this, he was assailed by Preston S. Brooks, a nephew of Senator Butler and a South Carolina representative, and so severely injured that for three years he could not resume his seat. Mr. Brooks was censured for this act, but, having resigned his seat, was immediately returned without opposition.

this issue.\* The whig party ceased to exist. The republican party, absorbing all who opposed the extension of slavery, nominated John C. Fremont, who received the vote of eleven States. The democratic party, retaining its organization, nominated James Buchanan, who was elected President.

## BUCHANAN'S ADMINISTRATION.†

(FIFTEENTH PRESIDENT: 1857-1861.)

**Domestic Affairs.**—*Dred Scott ‡ Decision.*—The Supreme Court of the United States (1857), through Chief-Justice Taney, declared that slave-owners might take their slaves into any State in the Union without forfeiting their rights. At the North, this was considered as removing the last barrier

\* A third party, called the Know-Nothing or American party, was organized to resist the influence of foreigners. It carried the vote of only one State, Maryland. Its motto was "America for Americans". The party aroused bitter feelings, but had a transient existence. (Read list of Political Parties, Barnes' Pop. Hist., p. 654.)

† James Buchanan was born 1791; died 1868. The first "bachelor-President" was sixty-six years old when called to the executive chair. He had just returned to his native country, after an absence of four years as minister to England. Previously to that he had been well known in public life, having been Representative, Senator, and Secretary of State. As Senator in Jackson's time, he heartily supported his administration. With Van Buren, he warmly advocated the idea of an independent treasury (p. 179), against the opposition of Clay, Webster, and others. Under Tyler, he was urgently in favor of the annexation of Texas, thus again coming into conflict with Clay and Webster. He cordially agreed with them, however, in the compromise of 1850 (p. 193), and urged the people to adopt it. Much was hoped from his election, as he avowed the object of his administration to be "to destroy any sectional party, whether North or South, and to restore, if possible, that national fraternal feeling between the different States that had existed during the early days of the Republic". But popular passion and sectional jealousy were too strong to yield to pleasant persuasion. We shall see in the text how the heated nation was drawn into the horrors of civil war. When Mr. Buchanan's administration closed, the fearful conflict was close at hand. He retired to his estate in Pennsylvania, where he died.

‡ Scott and his wife were slaves belonging to a surgeon in the United States army. They were taken into and resided in Illinois and at Fort Snelling, in territory from which, by the ordinance of 1787, slavery was forever excluded. Afterward, they were carried into Missouri, where they and their children were held as slaves. They claimed freedom on the ground that, by the act of their master, they had been carried into free territory. The decision of the court against their claims created an intense excitement throughout the country.

to the extension of slavery, and as changing it from a local to a national institution ; at the South, only as a right guaranteed them by the Constitution, whereby they should be protected in the possession of their property in every State.

*The Fugitive Slave Law* had intensified the already heated controversy, and the subject of slavery now absorbed all others. The provision which commanded every good citizen to aid in the arrest of fugitives was especially obnoxious to the North. Disturbances arose whenever attempts were made to restore runaways to their masters. Several of the Northern States passed "Personal Liberty" bills, securing to fugitive slaves, when arrested, the right of trial by jury.

*John Brown*, a man who had brooded over the exciting scenes through which he had passed in Kansas until he thought himself called upon to take the law into his own hands, seized upon the United States Arsenal at Harper's Ferry (1859), and proclaimed freedom to the slaves in the vicinity. His feeble band was soon overpowered by United States troops, and Brown himself hanged as a traitor. Though it was soon known that in his wild design he had asked counsel of no one, yet at the time the Southern feeling was aroused to frenzy, his act being looked upon as significant of the sentiments of the North.

**Political Parties.** — The election again turned on the question of slavery. The democratic party divided, and made two nominations for President : Stephen A. Douglas, who favored squatter sovereignty, and John C. Breckinridge, who claimed that slavery could be carried into any territory. The republican party nominated Abraham Lincoln, who held that while slavery must be protected where it was, it ought not to be carried into free territory.\* Lincoln was elected.

\* The Union party put up John Bell, of Tennessee. Its motto was, "The Union, the Constitution, and the Enforcement of the Laws."

**The South Secedes.**—Throughout the fall campaign the Southern leaders had threatened to secede if Mr. Lincoln were elected.\* They now declared it was time to leave a government which had fallen into the hands of their avowed enemies. Since the days of Calhoun they had been firm believers in the doctrine of State rights, which taught that a State could leave the Union whenever it pleased. In December (1860), South Carolina led off, and, soon after, Mississippi, Florida,

Alabama, Georgia, Louisiana, and Texas passed ordinances

\* This was not a sudden movement on their part. The sectional difference between the North and the South had its source in the difference of climate, which greatly modified the character and habits of the people; also, while the agricultural pursuits and staple products of the South made slave labor profitable, the mechanical pursuits and the more varied products of the North made it unprofitable. These antagonisms, settled first by the Missouri Compromise of 1820, re-opened by the tariff of 1828, bursting forth in the nullification of 1832, pacified by Clay's compromise tariff, increased through the annexation of Texas and the consequent war with Mexico, irritated by the Wilmot Proviso, lulled for a time by the compromise of 1850, awakened anew by the "squatter sovereignty" policy of 1853, roused to fury by the agitation in Kansas, spread broadcast by the Dred Scott decision, the attempted execution of the Fugitive Slave Law, and the John Brown raid, had now reached a point where war was the only remedy. The election of Lincoln was the pivot on which the result turned. The cause ran back through thirty years of controversy to the difference in climate, in occupation, and in the habit of life and thought. Strange to say, each section misunderstood the other. The Southern people believed the North to be so engrossed in money-making and so enfeebled by luxury that it could send to the field only mercenary soldiers, who would easily be beaten by the patriotic Southerners. They said, "Cotton is King"; and believed that England and France were so dependent upon them for that staple, that their republic would be recognized and defended by those European powers. On the other hand, the Northern people did not believe that the South would dare to fight for slavery when it had 4,000,000 slaves exposed to the chances of war. They thought it to be all bluster, and hence paid little heed



ABRAHAM LINCOLN.

of secession. In February (1861), delegates from these States met at Montgomery, Ala., and formed a government called the "Confederate States of America". Jefferson Davis, of Mississippi, was chosen President, and Alexander H. Stephens, of Georgia, Vice-President. United States forts, arsenals, custom-houses, and ships were seized by the States in which they were situated. Buchanan did nothing to prevent the catastrophe. General Scott was infirm, while the regular army was small, and the troops were widely scattered. The navy had been sent to distant ports. The Cabinet largely sympathized with the secessionists. Numerous unsuccessful efforts were made to effect a compromise. It was the general expectation that there would be no war, and the cry, "No coercion", was general.\* Yet affairs steadily drifted on toward war.

**Fort Sumter.**—All eyes were now turned on Fort Sumter. Here Major Anderson kept the United States flag flying in Charleston harbor. He had been stationed in Fort Moultrie, but, fearing an attack, had crossed over to Fort Sumter, a stronger position. The South Carolinians, looking

to the threat of secession or of war. Both sides sadly learned their mistake, only too late.

\* Even the New York Tribune declared—"Whenever any considerable section of our Union shall deliberately resolve to go out, we shall resist all coercive measures to keep them in."



JEFFERSON DAVIS.

upon this as a hostile act, took possession of the remaining forts, commenced erecting batteries, and prepared to reduce Fort Sumter. Major Anderson was compelled by his instructions to remain a quiet spectator. The Star of the West, an unarmed steamer, bearing supplies to the fort, was fired upon and driven back. The Southern leaders declared that any attempt to relieve Fort Sumter would be a declaration of war. The government seemed paralyzed with fear. All now waited for the new President.

In the next Epoch, we shall learn about the terrible Civil War caused by this effort to secede. During its progress, slavery perished, and the issue of the conflict decided that the nation should be henceforth "one and inseparable".

---

**The States admitted during the Fourth Epoch** increased the number in the Union, from thirteen to thirty-four.

*Vermont*, the fourteenth State, and the first under the Constitution, was admitted to the Union, March 4, 1791. It was so called from its principal range of mountains (verd, green, and mont, mountain). Champlain discovered and explored much of it in 1609. The first settlement was made in 1724, in the present town of Brattleborough, where Fort Dummer was erected. The region was claimed by both New Hampshire and New York (p. 111). In 1777, the inhabitants declared the "New Hampshire Grants" an independent State, under the title "New Connecticut, alias Vermont"; and, in 1790, New York consented to relinquish her claim on the payment of \$30,000.

*Kentucky*,\* the fifteenth State, was admitted to the Union, June 1, 1792. The name, "dark and bloody ground",

\* It is a curious fact that the act for the admission of Kentucky was approved February 4, 1791, but not to take effect until June 1, 1792; while that admitting Vermont was approved February 18, 1791, and to take effect March 4, 1791.

had its origin in the fierce conflicts which took place between the whites and the Indians. Daniel Boone, a famous hunter, for two years rambled through the forests of this region, delighted with its scenery and the abundance of game. After many thrilling adventures and narrow escapes from the Indians, he established a fort at Boonesborough, and removed his family thither in June, 1775. This was the first permanent settlement in the State, then a part of Virginia, from which it was not separated till 1790.

*Tennessee*, the sixteenth State, was admitted to the Union, June 1, 1796. It was named from the river Tennessee, the "river with the great bend". It is thought that De Soto, in his wanderings, visited the spot where Memphis now stands. The first permanent settlement in the State\* was at Fort Loudon (lou'don), thirty miles from the present site of Knoxville, in 1756. In 1780, James Robertson crossed the mountains with a party, and located where Nashville now stands, but which was then a wilderness. In 1789, North Carolina gave up her claim on the region, and the next year it was joined with Kentucky to form an independent territory. It received a distinct territorial government two years before it became a State.

*Ohio*, the seventeenth State, was admitted to the Union, November 29, 1802. It was so called from the river of that name, signifying the "beautiful river". The first explorations were made by the French, under La Salle, about 1680. The first permanent settlement was at Marietta, in 1788. It was the first State carved out of the North-western Territory.†

*Louisiana*, the eighteenth State, was admitted to the Union, April 8, 1812. The territory was named in honor of

\* This was the first permanent English settlement south of Pennsylvania and west of the Alleghanies.

† This territory was created in 1787, and included all the public land north of the Ohio. It embraced the present States of Michigan, Ohio, Indiana, Illinois, Wisconsin,

Louis XIV., King of France. The French explored the river Mississippi to the sea in 1682 (p. 34), but their first settlement was made by Iberville at Bilox'i, near its mouth, in 1699. New Orleans was founded in 1718.\* The territory was ceded to Spain in 1763, but in 1800 was receded to France. When the United States purchased it (p. 155), Louisiana included all the region north and west between the Mississippi and the Pacific (except those portions then occupied by Spain: see California) and north to the British possessions. In 1804, this region was divided into two parts —the territory of Orleans, which included the present State of Louisiana, and the district of Louisiana, which comprised the remainder. The former was admitted to the Union as Louisiana, and the name of the latter changed to Missouri.

*Indiana*, the nineteenth State, was admitted to the Union, December 11, 1816. The name is derived from the word Indian. When Ohio was taken from the North-western Territory, the remainder was called Indiana. It was reduced to its present limits in 1809, and was the second State admitted from the North-western Territory. After the Indian difficulties which hindered its early development had subsided, its growth was very rapid. Between 1810 and 1820, its population increased five hundred per cent.

*Mississippi*, the twentieth State, was admitted to the Union, December 10, 1817. It is named from the Mississippi River, "the Great Father of Waters". De Soto was the first European who traversed this region. In 1700, Chevalier de Tonty, with a party of Canadian French, ascended the river

sin, and part of Minnesota. It was a part of New France before the French authority ceased in 1763. The British held possession for twenty years, when the country was ceded to the United States (see Map of VIth Epoch, and p. 303).

\* The colony was granted to the great Mississippi Company, organized by John Law, at Paris, for the purpose of settling and deriving profit from the French possessions in North America. When this bubble burst, the French crown resumed the country. (See Brief History of France, p. 176.)

to the Natchez country, where they selected a site for a fort and named it Rosalie. A settlement called St. Peter's was made in 1703, on the Yazoo. In 1728, the Indians swept every vestige of civilization from the present limits of the State. Under the French Governors who followed, fierce and bloody wars were waged with the Natch'ez, Chick'a saw, and Choctaw Indians. In 1763, Louisiana east of the Mississippi, including a part of what is now Mississippi and Alabama, was ceded to the British, and became a part of Georgia. The Mississippi Territory was created in 1798, and lands were afterward added until it embraced the present States of Mississippi and Alabama. The latter became a separate Territory in March, 1817.

*Illinois*, the twenty-first State, was admitted to the Union, December 3, 1818. Its name is derived from its principal river, signifying "River of men". Its first settlements were made by La Salle.\* After the States of Ohio and Indiana, and the Territory of Michigan had been taken from the North-western Territory, the remainder was styled the Illinois Territory, and comprised the present States of Illinois, Wisconsin, and a part of Minnesota. The settlement of this Territory was greatly impeded by Indian hostilities. The massacre at Fort Dearborn (Chicago), 1812, and the Black Hawk war are instances of the dangers and trials which beset the pioneer. The great prosperity of the State dates from the year 1850, when munificent grants of land were made to the Central Railroad. The prairie wilderness was rapidly settled, and towns and cities sprung up as by magic.

*Alabama*, the twenty-second State, was admitted to the Union, December 14, 1819. Its name is of Indian origin, and

\* That enterprising traveler, after exploring the Illinois River, built a small fort which he called Creve Coeur (krave kur), and left it in command of the Chevalier de Tonty. Three years afterward, he returned with some Canadians and founded Kas kas'ki a, Ca ho'ki a, and other towns, which early became flourishing.

signifies "Here we rest". It was originally a part of Georgia. (See Mississippi.) The fierce contests with the Creek Indians, ended by Jackson, gave to the State a vast and fertile region. The first settlement was made by Bienville (be ang veel') on Mobile' Bay, in 1702. Nine years afterward, the present site of Mobile' was occupied. Mobile was the original seat of the French colonization in Louisiana, and for many years the capital. Having been ceded to Great Britain and then to Spain, in 1813 it was surrendered to General Wilkinson, and has since remained in the possession of the United States (p. 303).

*Maine*, the twenty-third State, was admitted to the Union, March 15, 1820. (See p. 60.)

*Missouri*, the twenty-fourth State, was admitted to the Union, August 10, 1821. Its name is derived from its principal river, and means "Muddy water". Its oldest town, St. Genevieve, was founded in 1755. St. Louis was settled nine years after, but was not incorporated as a town until 1809 ; its first newspaper was published in 1808, and the first steam-boat arrived at its wharf in 1817. The District of Louisiana was organized as Louisiana Territory in 1805, with St. Louis as its capital. When Louisiana became a State, the name of the Territory was changed to Missouri.

*Arkansas*, the twenty-fifth State, was admitted to the Union, June 15, 1836. It took its name from a now extinct tribe of Indians. It was discovered and settled by the French under Chevalier de Tonty, as early as 1685. It followed the fate of the other portions of Louisiana. On the admission of the State of Missouri, Arkansas was organized as a Territory, including the present State and a part of Indian Territory.

*Michigan*, the twenty-sixth State, was admitted to the Union, January 26, 1837. Its name is of Indian origin, signifying "Great Lake". It was early visited by missionaries (p. 33) and fur traders. Detroit was founded in 1701 by

Cadillac. This region, first a part of the North-western Territory, then of Indiana Territory, was organized as a separate Territory in 1805. The country north of the present States of Indiana and Illinois was afterward annexed to Michigan. The act of admission gave the State its present boundaries.

*Florida*, the twenty-seventh State, was admitted to the Union, March 3, 1845. The Spanish word "florida," means "blooming" (p. 27). Its early visitors—Ponce de Leon, De Narvaez, and De Soto—its first settlement at St. Augustine, its history under the Spaniards, and the Seminole war have been incidentally described. The Territories of East and West Florida were organized March 30, 1822.

*Texas*, the twenty-eighth State, was admitted to the Union, December 29, 1845. It was explored by De Leon, and La Salle. The latter, intending to found a French settlement at the mouth of the Mississippi, sailed by it unawares, and, landing at Mata gor'da Bay, built Fort St. Louis on the Lavaca. The Spaniards afterward explored and partially settled the country, establishing missions at various points. These did not prosper, however, and the region was populated mainly by roving bands of Indians. Civil war had impoverished the few settlers who were unable to flee from the country, and Galveston was nearly deserted, when, in 1820, Moses Austin, a native of Connecticut, obtained from the Spanish authorities in Mexico a grant of land. Emigration from the United States was encouraged, and, in 1830, there were twenty thousand Americans in Texas. The jealousy of Mexico being excited, acts of oppression followed, and, in 1835, the Texans were driven to declare their independence. After a year of severe fighting\* and alternating

\* Santa Anna, with four thousand men, having attacked the A lá'mo, a fort garrisoned by only one hundred and seventy-two men, every one of that gallant few died at his post except seven, who were killed while asking for quarter. Here David Crockett, the famous hunter, who had volunteered to fight with the Texans for their

victories, Santa Anna was conquered. The next year, (1837), Texas sought admission into the Union. In 1844, the question was revived. The last act of Tyler's administration was to sign a bill for its admission. This bill was ratified by a convention of the State, on July 5, 1844, of the same year.

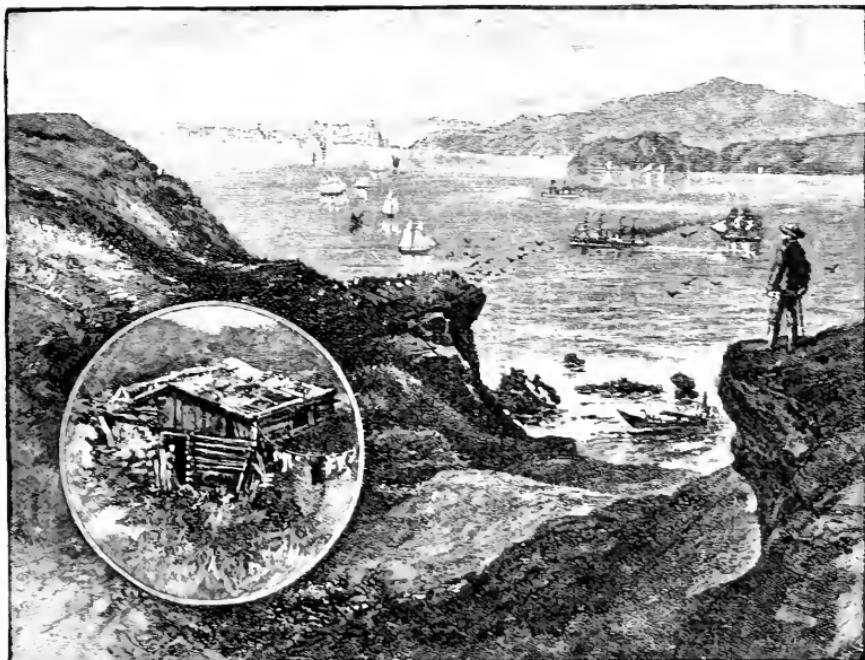
*Iowa*, the twenty-ninth State, was admitted to the Union, December 28, 1846. Its name is of Indian origin, signifying "Drowsy ones". Julien Dubuque, a Canadian Frenchman, obtained, in 1788, a large tract of land, including the present site of Dubuque. He there built a fort and traded with the Indians till 1810. The first permanent settlement was made at Burlington in 1833, by emigrants from Illinois. The same year, Dubuque was founded. This Territory belonged to the Louisiana tract and partook of its fortunes. It was successively a part of Missouri, Michigan, and Wisconsin Territories, but was organized separately in 1838. It then included all of Minnesota west of the Mississippi River, but when admitted as a State was reduced to its present limits.

*Wisconsin*, the thirtieth State, was admitted to the Union, May 29, 1848. Its name is derived from its principal river, and signifies "The gathering of the waters". It was explored by French missionaries and traders as early as 1639. Green Bay was founded in 1745. This region was also a part of the North-western Territory. It was comprised in the Territory of Illinois, then of Michigan, and in 1836 became a separate Territory.

*California*, the thirty-first State, was admitted to the Union, September 9, 1850 (p. 190). Sir Francis Drake, in 1579, sailed along its coast, naming it New Albion (p. 35).

liberty, fell, pierced with wounds, but surrounded by the corpses of those whom he had cut down ere he was overpowered. In the battle of San Jacinto, Santa Anna, with fifteen hundred men, was defeated by eight hundred, under General Sam Houston. (See Barnes' Popular History of the United States, p. 445.)

In 1769, the Spaniards established the mission of San Diego (de *á*'go), and in 1776, one at San Francisco.\* In 1803, they had eighteen missions with over 15,000 converts, and the government of the country was in the hands of



SAN FRANCISCO BAY AND CITY. — S. — 1840.

Franciscan monks. The Mexican revolution, in 1822, overthrew the Spanish power in California, and, soon after, the

\* In 1835, a shanty owned by one Richardson was the only human habitation, and the vast bay was a solitude. The first survey of streets and town lots was in 1839. The principal trade was in exporting hides, and that was small. In 1846, an American man-of-war entered the harbor, and took possession in the name of the United States. The town was known as *Yerba Buena* (*Good Herb*) until 1847, when it was changed to its present name. About that time, it had a population of 459. The discovery of gold in 1848 gave the city its first start. Within eighteen months following December, 1849, the city lost by fire \$16,000,000 of property, though its population did not exceed 30,000. Such, however, was the enterprise of its citizens, that these tremendous losses scarcely interrupted its growth or prosperity. Its magnificent harbor and its railroad communications give it an extensive commerce on the Pacific coast.

Franciscans were stripped of their wealth and influence. In 1831, the white population did not exceed five thousand. From 1843 to 1846, many emigrants from the United States settled in California, and, under the leadership of Fremont and others, wrested the country from Mexico (p. 188). By the treaty at the close of the Mexican war, Upper California was ceded to the United States. It embraced what is now known as California, Nevada, Arizona, Utah, and parts of Kansas, Wy o' ming, Colorado, and New Mexico. (Maps of IVth and VIth Epochs.)

*Minnesota*, the thirty-second State, was admitted to the Union, May 11, 1858. It is so called from the river of that name, and signifies "Cloudy water". In 1680, La Salle and Hennepin penetrated this region. Other travelers followed, but only within this century has the whole country been thoroughly explored. Fort Snelling was established in 1819. The first building in St. Paul was erected about 1838. The Territory of Minnesota was organized in 1849, with the Missouri and White rivers for its western boundary, thus embracing nearly twice the area of the present State. At this time, its population was less than five thousand, consisting of whites and half-breeds settled about the various missions and trading-posts. In 1851, the Sioux (soō) ceded a large tract of land to the United States. After this, the population increased so rapidly that in six years Minnesota applied for admission into the Union.

*Oregon*, the thirty-third State, was admitted to the Union, February 14, 1859. It is said to derive its name from the Spanish OREGANO, wild marjoram, abundant on its coast. It constituted a part of the Louisiana purchase, though for a long time little was known of this portion of that vast territory. In 1792, Captain Gray, of Boston, entered the river to which he gave the name of his ship, the Columbia. On his return, he

made such a flattering report that there was a general desire to know more of the country. In 1804, the year after the Louisiana purchase, Jefferson sent an exploring party, under the command of Captain Lewis and Lieutenant Clark, which followed the Missouri to its source and descended the Columbia to the Pacific. The history of their adventures is one of the most romantic of the century. An extensive fur-trade soon began. Fort Astoria was built in 1811 by the American Fur Company, of which John Jacob Astor was a prominent member. Hunters and trappers in the employ of American and British companies roamed over the whole region. Fort Vancouver was occupied by the Hudson Bay Company, a British organization, till 1860. In 1836-'39, American emigration set overland to this region. The danger of war which had seriously threatened its dawning prosperity was averted when the north-west boundary was settled by the treaty of 1846. In 1848, it was organized as a Territory, and included all the possessions of the United States west of the Rocky Mountains. In 1850, Congress granted three hundred and twenty acres to every man, and the same to his wife, on condition of residence on the land for four years. Eight thousand claims were made for farms. In 1853, Washington Territory was organized north of Columbia River. When Oregon was admitted as a State, it was reduced to its present limits.

*Kansas*, the thirty-fourth State, was admitted to the Union, January 29, 1861. The name is of Indian origin, and is said to mean "Smoky water". This region was also a part of the Louisiana purchase. After the States of Louisiana, Arkansas, Missouri, Iowa, and Minnesota had been carved from it, there was left a vast, unoccupied tract at the west, which was organized by the Kansas and Nebraska Act of 1854. The history of the strife which decided whether it should be slave or free has been narrated (p. 195).

## CIVILIZATION.

The free air of the new world, the independent thought upon every question, and the political equality of all men conduced to break down the distinctions of rank and dress that were at first established (p. 93). This tendency early became a source of anxiety to the colonial legislator. In 1640, it was ordered that as "divers Persons of severall Ranks are obsearved still to exceede" in their apparel, "the Constables of every towne within their Libertyes shall observe and take notice of any particular Person or Persons within their severall Lymits, and all such as they judge to exceede their condition and Rank therein, they shall present and warn to appear at the particular Court".

These "sumptuary laws" were not a dead letter, for we read of one "Alice Flynt" who was cited before the court and required to show that she was worth the two hundred pounds required to entitle her to wear a silk hood. After Independence, social changes went on rapidly. The title "Master" came to be confined to holders of slaves, while "Mr.", once a sure sign of rank, was applied to every male in the land, and to omit it, when speaking of great men, became a mark of distinction. So rapidly did the new ideas spread, that when La Fayette visited America the second time, he asked with astonishment, "Where are the common people?" He saw only crowds of well-dressed citizens, but no yeomen, mechanics, merchants, and servants—the four ranks below that of gentleman that were to be distinctly observed at the time of his first visit.

**The Laborer**, though he had secured social and political privileges a hundred years ago, could obtain far fewer comforts than he can to-day. His house had neither paint nor glass windows. Within, it was low and dingy. The floor knew no carpets. The kitchen had no stove, or lamp, or coal, or matches. There was no glass or crockery ware on his table, but he ate his homely fare from a wooden platter. Fresh meat was a rarity. All the staples of life were expensive to one who received only two shillings per day. Leather breeches and apron, a coarse flannel jacket, and heavy cow-hide shoes were the best his wardrobe could afford.

Imprisonment for debt was common. The poor man, just recovering from a long sickness, was liable to be arrested for the payment of the little bills incurred during his illness, and thrust into prison among the vilest offenders.

**The Schools**, even within the memory of many persons now living, were far inferior in equipment and methods to those of our day. The text-books were few and coarsely executed. In early times, the only reading-books were the Bible, the Psalter, and the New England Speller. After the Revolution, the Columbian Orator—filled with patriotic selections—attained a great celebrity. When Webster's American Spelling Book was issued about 1784, it gradually came into general use. Murray's Grammar and Daboll's Arithmetic were the standards for half a century. The ordinary geography was in two volumes—one containing the maps and the other the text. Morse invented (1839) a process of engraving whereby the maps could be struck off with the text, on a common printing press. In a single year, 100,000 copies of his New Geography went into use. Writing-books were usually home-made from foolscap, and ruled by the pupil with lead plummets of his own manufacture. Slate pencils were, also, whittled out by the boys from soft clay-stones. Quill-pens were used, and their making constituted no

small part of a teacher's task. Wall-maps, charts, blackboards, globes, etc., came in only slowly as education advanced.

The development of the country was especially marked about the middle of this century. The immigration from Ireland, probably induced chiefly by the famine of 1847 in that island, then began, and crowds of foreign workmen aided in building railroads and digging canals, while they flocked into the mills and manufactories. The native operatives thrown out of employment, turned to the West. The discovery of gold in California, also, led thither a vast number from the Eastern States. The multiplication of railroads, affording a better market and higher prices, rendered farming profitable in the great Mississippi valley, and new States were settled with unexampled rapidity. Commerce flourished, and American clippers were famous for their speed. With increasing prosperity, knowledge spread apace. Books and papers multiplied. Schools and colleges were founded. The lyceums, through which courses of lectures by distinguished men were given in almost every town and village, became an important factor in imparting to the people valuable instruction upon political, scientific, and literary topics.

#### CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

	PAGE
1789. Washington inaugurated, April 30	149
1791. Vermont admitted to the Union, March 4	200
1792. Kentucky admitted to the Union, June 1	200
Discovery of Columbia River by Captain Gray, May 11	208
1793. Difficulties with Genet	153
1794. The Indians defeated by Wayne, August 20	152
Whiskey insurrection	152
1795. Jay's treaty ratified, June 24	153
1796. Tennessee admitted to the Union, June 1	201
1797. John Adams inaugurated, March 4	154
1799. Washington died at Mount Vernon, December 14	150
1800. Capitol removed to Washington	150
Treaty with France, September 30	155
1801. Thomas Jefferson inaugurated, March 4	155
War declared by the United States against Tripoli, June 10	157
1802. Ohio admitted to the Union, November 29	201
1803. Louisiana purchased from France, April 30	156
Fleet sent against Tripoli	157
1804. Lieutenant Decatur destroyed frigate Philadelphia, February 15	157
Hamilton killed by Burr, July 11	156
1805. Treaty of peace with Tripoli, June 3	157
1807. The Chesapeake fired into by the Leopard, June 22	158
Embargo on American ships, December 22	158
Fulton first ascended the Hudson	157
1809. James Madison inaugurated, March 4	159
1811. Action between the President and the Little Belt, May 16	160
Battle of Tippecanoe, November 7	159
1812. Louisiana admitted to the Union, April 8	201
War declared against England, June 19	160
Hull invaded Canada, July 12	160

	PAGE
1812. Mackinaw surrendered, July 17 . . . . .	160
Detroit surrendered, August 16 . . . . .	160
The Constitution captured the Guerrière, August 19 . . . . .	161
Battle of Queenstown, October 13 . . . . .	161
The Wasp captured the Frolic, October 13 . . . . .	162
1813. Battle of Frenchtown, January 22 . . . . .	163
Capture of York, April 27 . . . . .	163
Siege of Fort Meigs, May 1 . . . . .	164
Sackett's Harbor attacked, May 29 . . . . .	163
The Chesapeake captured by the Shannon, June 1 . . . . .	166
Battle of Fort Stephenson, Ohio, August 2 . . . . .	164
Massacre of Fort Mimms, August 30 . . . . .	166
Perry's victory on Lake Erie, September 10 . . . . .	164
Battle of the Thames, October 5 . . . . .	165
Battle of Chrysler's Field, November 11 . . . . .	163
1814. Battle of Horseshoe Bend (Tohopeka), March 27 . . . . .	166
Battle of Chippewa, July 5 . . . . .	168
Battle of Lundy's Lane, July 25 . . . . .	168
Washington captured by the British, August 24 . . . . .	169
Battle of Plattsburg and Lake Champlain, September 11 . . . . .	168
Bombardment of Fort McHenry, September 13 . . . . .	169
Hartford Convention, December 15 . . . . .	169
Treaty of Peace, December 24 . . . . .	169
1815. Battle of New Orleans, January 8 . . . . .	169
War with Algiers . . . . .	171
1816. Indiana admitted to the Union, December 11 . . . . .	202
1817. James Monroe inaugurated, March 4 . . . . .	172
Mississippi admitted to the Union, December 10 . . . . .	202
1818. Illinois admitted to the Union, December 3 . . . . .	203
1819. Alabama admitted to the Union, December 14 . . . . .	203
Florida purchased of Spain, February 22 . . . . .	173
1820. Missouri Compromise passed, March 3 . . . . .	172
Maine admitted to the Union, March 15 . . . . .	60, 204
1821. Missouri admitted to the Union, August 10 . . . . .	204
1824. Visit of La Fayette . . . . .	172
1825. John Quincy Adams inaugurated, March 4 . . . . .	174
1826. Adams and Jefferson died, July 4 . . . . .	154
1829. Jackson inaugurated, March 4 . . . . .	175
1832. Black Hawk War . . . . .	177
Nullification in South Carolina . . . . .	175
1835. Dade's massacre by the Seminoles, December 28 . . . . .	177
1836. Arkansas admitted to the Union, June 15 . . . . .	204
1837. Michigan admitted to the Union, January 26 . . . . .	204
Martin Van Buren inaugurated, March 4 . . . . .	178
Battle of Okechobee, Seminoles routed by Taylor, December 25 . . . . .	178
1837-'38. The "Patriot War"—Canada . . . . .	179
1841. William H. Harrison inaugurated, March 4 . . . . .	180
President Harrison died, April 4 . . . . .	180
John Tyler inaugurated, April 6 . . . . .	180

	PAGE
1842. Dorr's Rebellion . . . . .	181
1845. Florida admitted to the Union, March 3 . . . . .	205
James K. Polk inaugurated, March 4 . . . . .	185
Texas admitted to the Union, December 29 . . . . .	205
1846. Battle of Palo Alto, May 8 . . . . .	185
Battle of Resaca de la Palma, May 9 . . . . .	185
Congress declared war against Mexico, May 11 . . . . .	185
Monterey captured, September 24 . . . . .	186
Iowa admitted to the Union, December 28 . . . . .	206
1847. Battle of Buena Vista, February 23 . . . . .	186
Vera Cruz captured, March 29 . . . . .	188
Battle of Cerro Gordo, April 18 . . . . .	188
Battle of Contreras, August 20 . . . . .	189
Capture of Chapultepec, September 13 . . . . .	189
Mexico surrendered, September 14 . . . . .	190
1848. Treaty of Peace with Mexico, February 2 . . . . .	190
Gold discovered in California, February . . . . .	190
Wisconsin admitted to the Union, May 29 . . . . .	206
1849. General Taylor inaugurated, March 5 . . . . .	191
1850. General Taylor died, July 9 . . . . .	192
Millard Fillmore inaugurated, July 10 . . . . .	191
California admitted to the Union, September 9 . . . . .	206
1853. Franklin Pierce inaugurated, March 4 . . . . .	194
1854. Commodore Perry's treaty with Japan, March . . . . .	195
Kansas-Nebraska Bill passed, May 31 . . . . .	195
1857. James Buchanan inaugurated, March 4 . . . . .	196
1858. Minnesota admitted to the Union, May 11 . . . . .	208
1859. Oregon admitted to the Union, February 14 . . . . .	208
1860. South Carolina seceded from the Union, December 20 . . . . .	198
1861. Steamer Star of the West fired upon, January 9 . . . . .	200
Kansas admitted into the Union as a State, January 29 . . . . .	209
Southern Confederacy formed at Montgomery, February 4 . . . . .	199

## REFERENCES FOR READING.

*Lossing's Field Book of the War of 1812.*—*Lewis and Clarke's Journal.*—*Mackenzie's Life of Paul Jones.*—*Parton's Life of Jackson; also of Aaron Burr.*—*Cooper's History of the American Navy.*—*Irving's Astoria.*—*Powell's Life of Taylor.*—*Fremont's Explorations.*—*Benton's 30 Years View of Public Affairs.*—*Street and Reed's Osceola (Poem).*—*Ripley's War with Mexico.*—*Hull's Military and Civil Life.*—*Parker's Historic Americans.*—*Lossing's Eminent Americans.*—*McPherson's Political History of the United States.*—*Tome's Battles of America by Sea and Land.*—*Lowell's Bigelow Papers.*—*Giddings' Exiles of Florida.*—*Jay's Mexican War.*—*Dawson's American Battle-fields.*—“*The Mississippi Scheme*” in *Mackay's Popular Delusions.*—*Mrs. John Adams' Correspondence.*—*Headley's Second War with England.*—*Whittier's Angels of Buena Vista (Poetry).*—*Randall's and Tucker's Lives of Jefferson.*—*Griswold's Court of Washington.*—*Clarke's Campaign of 1812.*—*Ingersoll's Second War with Great Britain.*—*Wilson's Sketches of Illustrious Soldiers.*—The “*American Statesmen*” Series (a Political Library of great value).

## EPOCH IV. THE DEVELOPMENT OF THE STATES.

1. Washington's Administration. (1789-'97.)
2. John Adams' Administration. (1797-1801.)
3. Jefferson's Administration. (1801-'9.)
4. Madison's Administration. (1809-'17.)
5. Monroe's Administration. (1817-'25.)
6. John Quincy Adams' Administration. (1825-'29.)
7. Jackson's Administration. (1829-'37.)
8. Van Buren's Administration. (1837-'41.)
9. Harrison and Tyler's Administration. (1841-'45.)
10. Polk's Administration. (1845-'49.)
11. Taylor and Fillmore's Administration. (1849-'53.)
12. Pierce's Administration. (1853-'57.)
13. Buchanan's Administration. (1857-'61.)
14. Names of States admitted during the Fourth Epoch.

1. Inauguration.  
2. Difficulties of the New Government.  
3. Domestic Affairs. { 1. Finances.  
2. Whiskey Rebellion.  
3. Indian Wars.  
4. Foreign Affairs. { 1. England.  
2. Spain and Algiers.  
3. France.  
5. Political Parties.  
1. Domestic Affairs. { 1. Alien and Sedition Laws.  
2. Effects.  
2. Foreign Affairs.  
3. Political Parties.  
1. Character of Jefferson.  
2. Domestic Affairs. { 1. Purchase of Louisiana.  
2. Aaron Burr.  
3. Fulton's Steamboat.  
3. Foreign Affairs. { 1. War with Tripoli.  
2. England and France.  
3. Embargo Act.  
4. Political Parties.  
1. Domestic Affairs.  
2. Foreign Affairs—War with Great Britain. { 1. Events of 1812.  
2. Events of 1813.  
3. Events of 1814.  
4. Peace.  
5. Battle of New Orleans.  
6. Results of War.  
3. Political Parties.  
4. "Era of Good Feeling."  
1. Missouri Compromise.  
2. La Fayette's Visit.  
3. Florida.  
4. Monroe Doctrine.  
4. Political Parties.  
1. Character of Adams.  
2. Prosperity of Country.  
3. Protective Tariff—"American System."  
1. Character of Jackson.  
2. Domestic Affairs. { 1. Nullification.  
2. Bank of United States.  
3. Speculations.  
4. Indian Troubles.  
3. Foreign Affairs.  
4. Political Parties.  
1. Domestic Affairs.  
2. Foreign Affairs.  
3. Political Parties.  
1. Harrison's Death.  
2. Domestic Affairs. { 1. United States Bank.  
2. Suffrage Difficulties.  
3. Anti-Rent Difficulties.  
4. The Mormons.  
5. Magnetic Telegraph.  
3. Foreign Affairs. { 1. Annexation of Texas.  
2. North-west Boundary.  
4. Political Parties.  
1. Foreign Affairs—War with Mexico. { 1. General Taylor's Army.  
2. General Kearney's Army.  
3. General Scott's Army.  
4. Peace.  
2. Domestic Affairs. { 1. Wilmot Proviso.  
2. Discovery of Gold in California.  
3. Political Parties.  
1. Taylor's Death.  
2. Domestic Affairs. { 1. Slavery.  
2. Compromise of 1850.  
3. Foreign Affairs.  
4. Political Parties.  
1. Domestic Affairs. { 1. Kansas-Nebraska Bill.  
2. Border Warfare.  
2. Foreign Affairs. { 1. Mexico.  
2. Japan.  
3. Political Parties.  
1. Domestic Affairs. { 1. Dred Scott Decision.  
2. Fugitive Slave Law.  
3. John Brown.  
2. Political Parties.  
3. South Secedes.  
4. Attack on Fort Sumter.

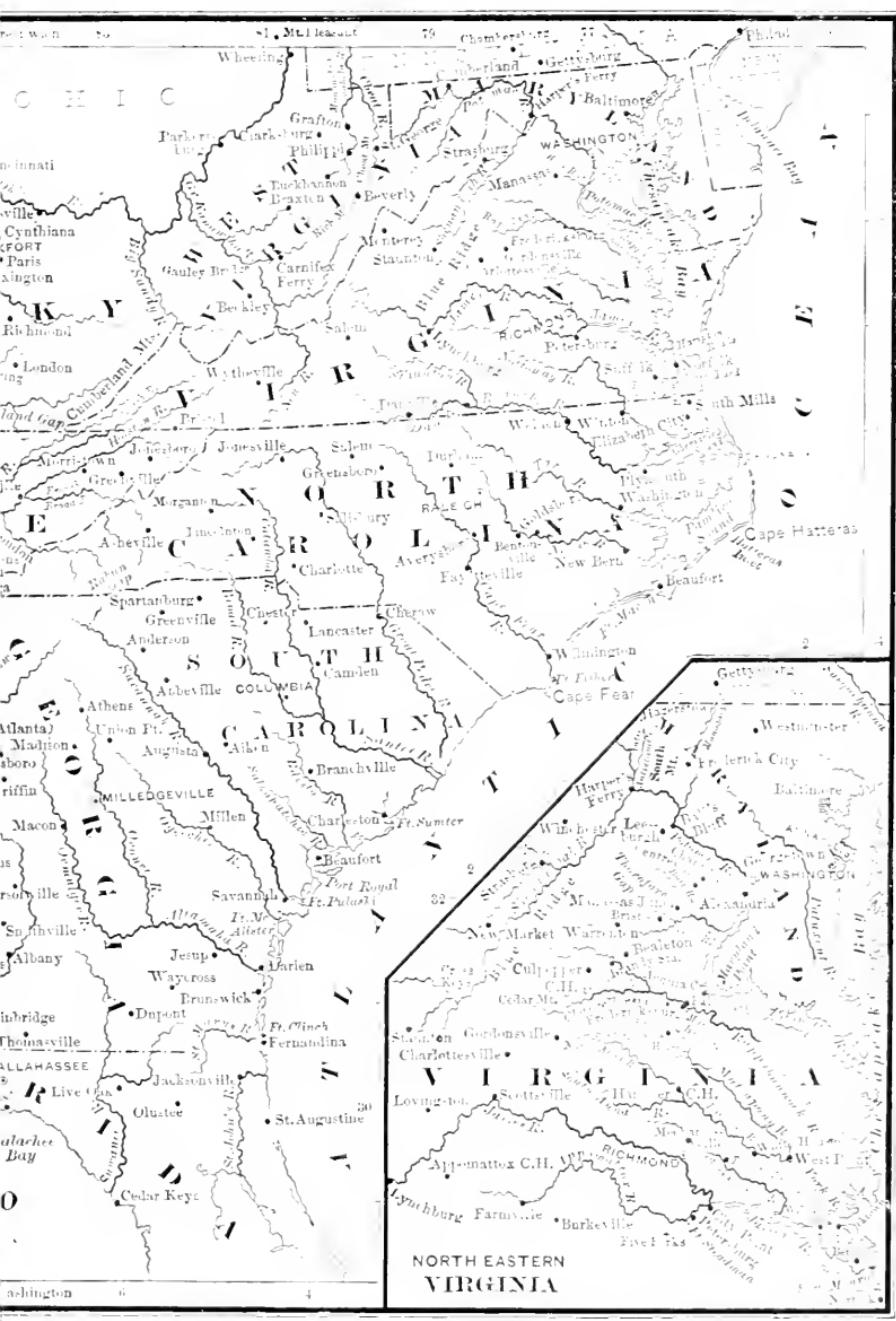


Latitude      59      Longitude      51      West from      55

MAP TO ILLUSTRATE  
**THE CIVIL WAR**

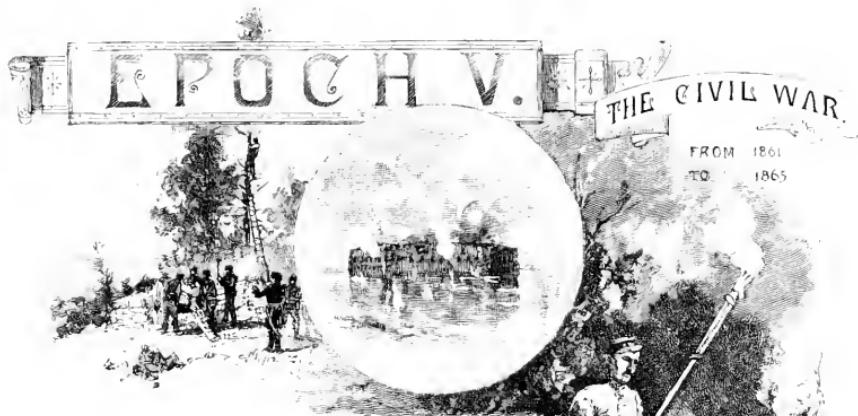
SCALE OF MILES

• 21 •



NORTH EASTERN  
VIRGINIA





## LINCOLN'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(SIXTEENTH PRESIDENT: 1861-1865.)

**I**NAUGURATION.—Rumors of a plan to assassinate Lincoln impelled him to come to Washington in disguise. He was inaugurated, March 4, 1861, surrounded by troops, under General Scott.

**Condition of the Country.**—All was now uncertainty. Southern officers in the army and navy of the United States were daily resigning, and linking their fortunes with the Confederate cause. There was still, however, a

**Questions on the Geography of the Fifth Epoch.**—Locate the following places noted as battle-fields. (Maps of the Richmond campaigns are on pages 236 and 261.) Philippi. Big Bethel. Boonville (Booneville). Carthage. Rich Mountain. Bull Run. Wilson's Creek. Hatteras Inlet. Lexington, Mo. Ball's Bluff. Belmont. Port Royal. Mill Spring. Fort Henry. Roanoke Island. Fort Donelson. Pea Ridge. New Bern (Newberne). Winchester. Pittsburg Landing. Island No. 10. Fort Pulaski. Fort Jackson. Fort Macon. Beaufort. Yorktown. Williamsburg. Corinth. Mechanicsville. Cedar Mountain. South Mountain. Antietam. Fredericksburg. Holly Springs. Murfreesboro. Galveston. Fort Sumter. Chancellorsville. Vicksburg. Gettysburg. Port Hudson. Chickamauga. Chattanooga. Knoxville. Fort de Russy. Sabine Cross Roads. Fort Pillow. Wilderness. Spottsylvania Court House. Resaca. Dallas. Lost Mountain. Petersburg. Atlanta. Mobile. Fort Gaines. Fort Morgan. Cedar Creek. Fort McAlister. Nashville. Fort Fisher. Columbia. Goldsboro. Fort Steadman. Five Forks. Appomattox Court House.

\* Abraham Lincoln was born in Kentucky, February 12, 1809; died in Washington,

strong Union sentiment at the South. Many prominent men in both sections hoped that war might be averted. The Federal authorities feared to act, lest they should precipitate civil strife. In striking contrast to this indecision, was the marked energy of the new Confederate government. It was gathering troops, voting money and supplies, and rapidly preparing for the issue.

**Capture of Fort Sumter** (April 14).—Finding that supplies were to be sent to Fort Sumter, General Peter G. T. Beauregard (bō're gard), who had command of the Confederate troops at Charleston, called upon Major Anderson to surrender. Upon his refusal, fire was opened from all the Confederate forts and batteries.\* This “strange contest between seventy men and seven thousand”, lasted for thirty-

April 15, 1865. His father was unable to read or write, and his own education consisted of one-year's schooling. When he was eight years old, his father moved to Indiana, the family floating down the Ohio on a raft. When nineteen years of age, the future President hired out at \$10 per month as a hand on a flat-boat, and made a trip to New Orleans. On his return, he accompanied the family to Illinois, driving the cattle on the journey. Having reached their destination, he helped them to build a cabin, and to split rails to inclose the farm. He was now, in succession, a flat-boat hand, clerk, captain of a company of volunteers in the Black Hawk War, country store-keeper, postmaster, and surveyor, yet he managed to get a knowledge of law by borrowing books at an office before it closed at night, returning them at its opening in the morning. On being admitted to the bar, he rapidly rose to distinction. At twenty-five, he was sent to the Legislature, and was thrice re-elected. Turning his attention to politics, he soon became a leader. In 1858, he was candidate for Senator, a second time, against Stephen A. Douglas. The two rivals stumped the State together, discussing great national questions. The debate, unrivaled for its statesmanship, logic, and wit, won for Lincoln a national reputation, but he lost the election in the Legislature, his party being in the minority. After his accession to the Presidency, his history, like Washington's, is identified with that of his country. He was a tall, ungainly man, little versed in the refinements of society, but gifted by nature with great common sense, and every-where known as “Honest Abe”. Kind, earnest, sympathetic, faithful, democratic, he was anxious only to serve his country. His wan, fatigued face, and his bent form, told of the cares he bore and the grief he felt. His only relief was when, tossing aside for a moment the heavy load of responsibility, his face would light up with a humorsome smile, while he narrated some incident whose irresistible wit and aptness to the subject at hand, convulsed his hearers, and rendered “Lincoln's stories” household words throughout the nation.

\* The first gun of the war was fired at half-past four o'clock Friday morning, April 12, 1861.

four hours, no one being hurt on either side. The barracks having been set on fire by the shells, the garrison, worn out, suffocated, and half-blinded, were forced to capitulate. They were allowed to retire with the honors of war, saluting their flag before hauling it down.

*The Effect* of this event was electrical. It unified the North and also the South. The war spirit swept over the country like wild-fire. Party lines vanished. The Union men at the South were borne into secession, while the republicans and the democrats at the North combined to support the government. Lincoln issued a requisition for 75,000 troops. It was responded to by 300,000 volunteers, the American flag, the symbol of Revolutionary glory and of national unity, being unfurled throughout the North. The military enthusiasm at the South was equally ardent. Virginia, Arkansas, North Carolina, and Tennessee, which had before hesitated, joined the Confederacy. Virginia troops seized the United States armory at Harper's Ferry, and the Navy Yard near Norfolk. Richmond, Va., was made the Confederate capital. Troops from the extreme South were rapidly pushed into Virginia, and threatened Washington. The Sixth Massachusetts Regiment, hurrying to the defense of the national capital, was attacked in the streets of Baltimore, and several men were killed.\* Thus the first bloodshed in the civil war was on April 19, the anniversary of Lexington and Concord.

#### THE WAR IN VIRGINIA.

**Arlington Heights** and **Alexandria**† were seized (May 24) by the national troops. This protected Washington from

\* A Union soldier who was shot in this affray, turned about, saluted the flag, and exclaiming, "All hail the stars and stripes!" fell lifeless.

† Alexandria was occupied by Colonel Elmer E. Ellsworth and his Zouaves. After

immediate danger of attack.\* Fort Monroe† was now garrisoned by a heavy force under General B. F. Butler.‡ An expedition made, soon after, against BIG BETHEL was singularly mismanaged. On the route, the troops fired into each other by mistake, and, when they came to attack the Confederate defenses, were repulsed with loss.

**Western Virginia** adhered to the Union, and was ultimately formed into a separate State. The Confederates, however, occupied it in force. The Federals, under General George B. McClellan, afterward commander of the Potomac army, defeated them at PHILIPPI, RICH MOUNTAIN, and CARRICK'S FORD, thus wresting the entire State from their control. Shortly afterward, Governor Wise and General Floyd (President Buchanan's Secretary of War) led the Confederate force into that region; but Floyd was suddenly attacked by General Rosecrans at CARNIFEX FERRY, and, Wise failing to support him, was compelled to retreat. General Robert E. Lee, McClellan's future antagonist on the Potomac, having been repulsed at CHEAT MOUNTAIN, came to the rescue. But nothing decisive being effected, the Confederate government recalled its forces. The only Union victories of this year were achieved in this region (map opp. p. 223).

**Battle of Bull Run** (July 21).—The northern people, seeing so many regiments pushed forward to Washington, were impatient for an advance. The cry, "On to Richmond!" be-

the capture, seeing the Confederate flag still flying from the roof of a hotel, he went up and took it down. As he descended, he was shot at the foot of the stairs, by the landlord, Jackson, who in turn fell at the hands of private Brownell.

\* Alexandria is on the southern side of the Potomac, seven miles below Washington. Arlington Heights are directly opposite the capital.

† This is located at the entrance of the Chesapeake, and is the most formidable fortification in the United States. It covers nearly seventy acres of ground. The walls are built of granite.

‡ At Hampton, which had been occupied by the Confederates, some negroes were captured who had been employed in building fortifications. Butler declared them "contraband of war", and this gave rise to the popular term "Contraband".

came too strong to be resisted. General Irvin McDowell, in command of the Army of the Potomac, moved to attack the main body of the Confederates, who were strongly posted, under Beauregard, at Bull Run.\* After a sharp conflict, the Confederates were driven from the field. They were rallied,



"STONEWALL" JACKSON AT BULL RUN.

however, by General T. J. Jackson † and others, on a plateau in the rear. While the Federal troops were struggling to drive them from this new position, at the crisis of the battle, two brigades, under Kirby Smith and Early, rushing across the fields from Ma nas'sas Station,‡ each, successively, struck the Union flank and poured in a cross-fire. The effect

\* This is near Manassas Junction, about twenty-seven miles from Alexandria.

† General Bee, as he rallied his men, shouted, "There's Jackson standing like a stone wall." "From that time", says Draper, "the name he had received in a baptism of fire displaced that he had received in a baptism of water, and he was known as 'Stonewall Jackson'."

‡ These troops composed a part of General Johnston's command at Winchester;

was irresistible. McDowell's men fled. As the fugitives converged toward the bridge in the rear, a shell burst among the teamsters' wagons, a caisson was overturned, and the passage choked. The retreat became a panic-stricken rout. Traces were cut, cannon abandoned, horsemen plunged through the struggling mass, and soldiers threw away their guns and ran streaming over the country, many never stopping till they were safe across the Long Bridge at Washington.

*The Effect* of this defeat was momentous. At first, the Northern people were chagrined and disheartened. Then came a renewed determination. They saw the real character of the war, and no longer dreamed that the South could be subdued by a mere display of military force. They were to fight a brave people—Americans, who were to be conquered only by a desperate struggle. Congress voted \$500,000,000 and five hundred thousand men. General McClellan,\* upon whom all eyes were turned, on account of his brilliant campaign in Western Virginia, was appointed to the command of the Army of the Potomac.

**Ball's Bluff** (October 21).—About 2,000 Federals, who had crossed the Potomac at Ball's Bluff on a reconnoitering expedition, were attacked by the Confederates, and forced down the slippery, clayey bluff to the river, fifty to one hundred and fifty feet below. The two old scows in which they came were soon sunk, and, in trying to escape, many were drowned, some were shot, and scarcely half their num-

General Patterson, with 20,000 men, had been left to watch him, and prevent his joining Beauregard. Johnston was too shrewd for his antagonist, and, slipping out of his hands, reached Bull Run just in time to take part in and, as we have already seen, to decide the battle. Johnston's troops being included, the Union and Confederate armies at Bull Run were almost exactly equal, each about 18,000 strong.

\* Soon after, General Scott, weighed down by age, retired from active service, and General McClellan became General-in-Chief of all the armies of the United States.

ber reached the other bank. Colonel Baker, United States Senator from Oregon, was among the killed.\*

#### THE WAR IN MISSOURI.

This State was largely Union. The Convention had declined to pass an ordinance of secession; yet there was a strong effort made by Governor Jackson to preserve, at least, an armed neutrality. Captain Lyon foiled this attempt. He broke up Camp Jackson, saved the United States arsenal at St. Louis, and defeated Colonel Marmaduke at BOONVILLE. General Sigel (se'gel), however, having been defeated by the Confederates in an engagement at CARTHAGE (July 5), Lyon, now General, found that he must either fight the superior forces of Generals McCulloch and Price, or else abandon that part of the State. He chose the former course. At the head of about five thousand, he attacked more than twice that number at WILSON'S CREEK (August 10). He fell, gallantly leading a bayonet charge. His men were defeated. Colonel Mulligan was forced to surrender LEXINGTON † after a brave defense. General John C. Fremont then assumed charge, and drove Price as far south as Springfield. Just as he was preparing for battle, he was replaced by General Hunter, who took the Union army back to St. Louis. Hunter was soon superseded by General Halleck, who crowded Price south to Arkansas. Later in the fall, General Grant made an attack upon a Confederate force which had crossed over from Kentucky ‡ and taken post at BELMONT.

\* December 20, General E. O. C. Ord, having gone out on a foraging excursion to DRANESVILLE, in a severe skirmish routed the Confederates. This little victory greatly encouraged the people at the North, who had been disheartened by the disastrous affair of Ball's Bluff.

† The Confederates, in their final assault, fought behind a movable breastwork, composed of hemp-bales, which they rolled toward the fort as they advanced.

‡ Kentucky, like Missouri, tried to remain neutral, but was unsuccessful. Soon, both Confederate and Union troops were encamped on her soil, and the State was

**THE WAR ON THE SEA AND COAST.**

Early in the war, Davis issued a proclamation offering to commission privateers.\* In reply, Lincoln declared a blockade of the Southern ports. At that time, there was but one efficient vessel on the Northern coast, while the entire navy comprised only forty-two ships; but at the close of the year, the navy numbered two hundred and sixty-four.

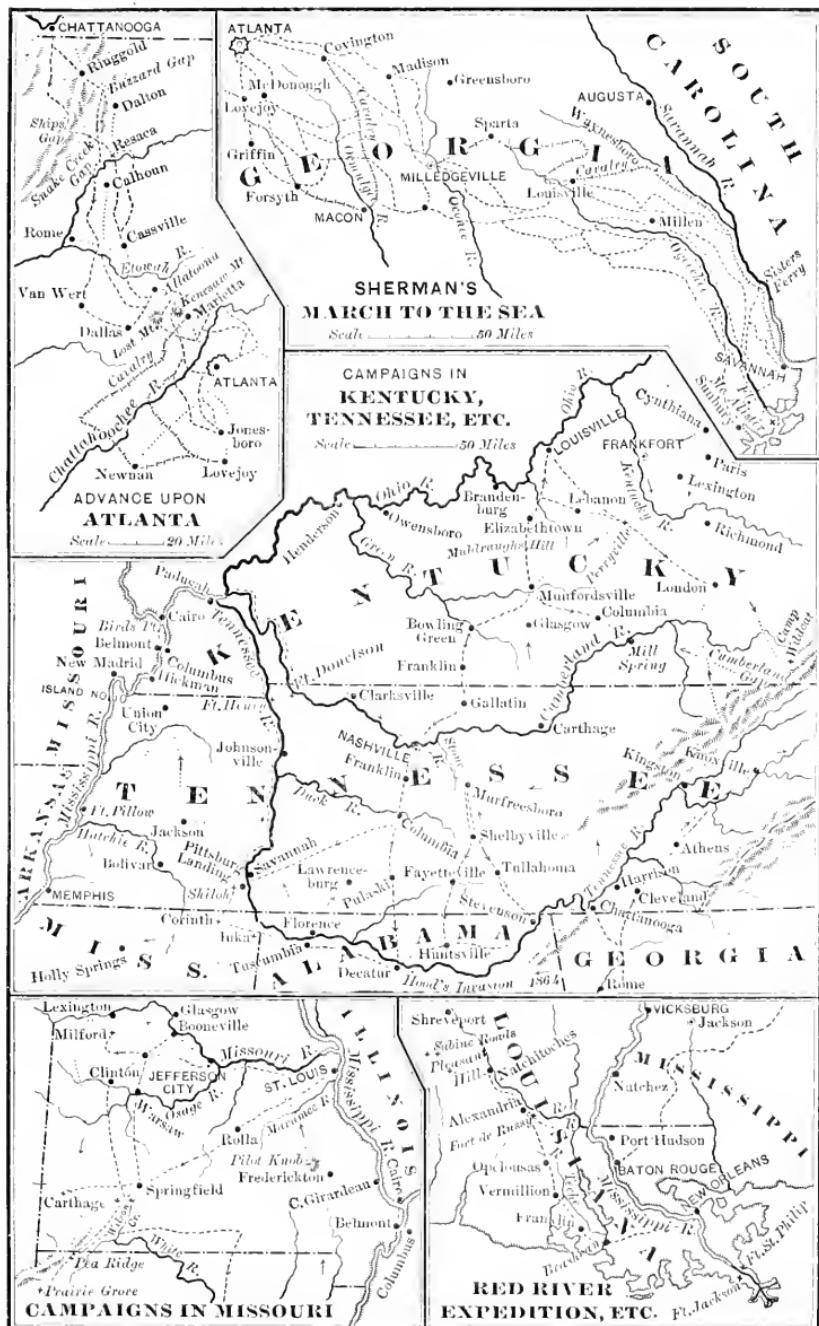
Two joint naval and military expeditions were made during the year. The first captured the forts at HATTERAS INLET, N. C. The second, under Commodore Dupont and General Thomas W. Sherman, took the forts at PORT ROYAL ENTRANCE, S. C.,† and Tybee Island, at the mouth of the Savannah. Port Royal became the great depot for the Union fleet.

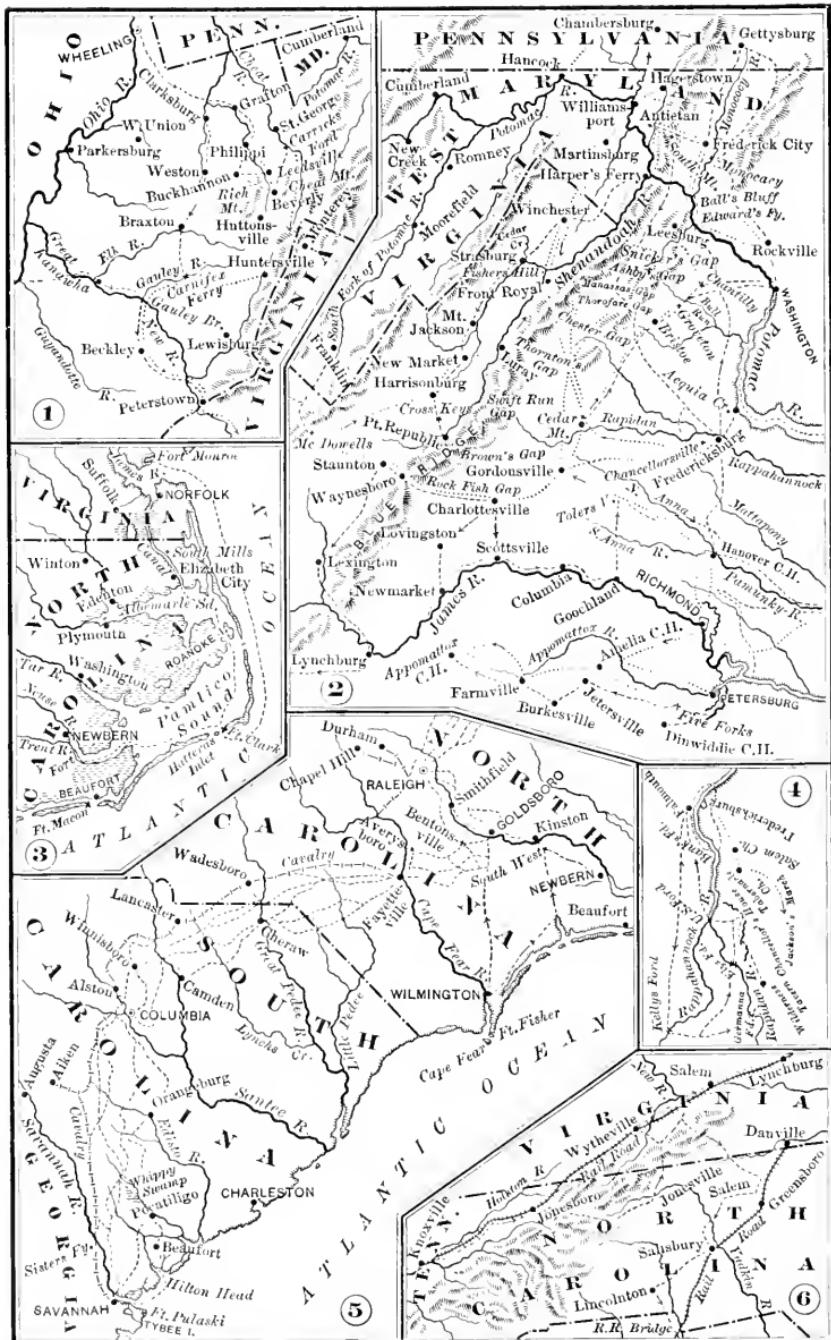
**The Trent Affair.**—England and France had acknowledged the Confederate States as BELLIGERENTS, thus placing them on the same footing with the United States. The Southern people having, therefore, great hopes of foreign aid, appointed Messrs. Mason and Slidell' commissioners to those countries. Escaping through the blockading squadron, they took passage at Havana on the British steamer Trent. Captain Wilkes, of the United States steamer

ravaged by hostile armies. In all the border States, affairs were in a most lamentable condition. The people were divided in opinion, and enlisted in both armies. As the tide of war surged to and fro, armed bands swept through the country, plundering and murdering those who favored the opposite party.

\* The Savannah was the first privateer which got to sea, but this vessel was captured after having taken only a single prize. The Petrel, also from Charleston, bore down upon the United States frigate St. Lawrence, which the captain mistook for a merchant ship; his vessel was sunk by the first broadside of his formidable antagonist. The Sumter, under Captain Semmes, captured and burned a large number of Federal ships, but, at last, it was blockaded in the Bay of Gibraltar by a Union gun-boat, and, being unable to escape, was sold.

† During this engagement, the ships described an ellipse between the forts, each vessel delivering its fire as it slowly sailed by, then passing on, and another taking its place. The line of this ellipse was constantly changed to prevent the Confederates from getting the range of the vessels.





San Jacinto, followed the Trent, took off the Confederate envoys, and brought them back to the United States. This produced intense excitement in England. The United States government, however, promptly disavowed the act and returned the prisoners.

**General Review of the First Year of the War.**—The Confederates had captured the large arsenals at Harper's Ferry and near Norfolk. They had been successful in the two great battles of the year—Bull Run and Wilson's Creek; also in the minor engagements at Big Bethel, Cartilage, Lexington, Belmont, and Ball's Bluff. The Federals had saved Fort Pickens\* and Fort Monroe, and captured the forts at Hatteras Inlet and Port Royal. They had gained the victories of Philippi, Rich Mountain, Booneville, Carrick's Ford, Cheat Mountain, Carnifex Ferry, and Dranesville. They had saved to the Union, Missouri, Maryland, and West Virginia. Principally, however, they had thrown the whole South into a state of siege,—the armies on the north and the west by land, and the navy in the east by sea maintaining a vigilant blockade.

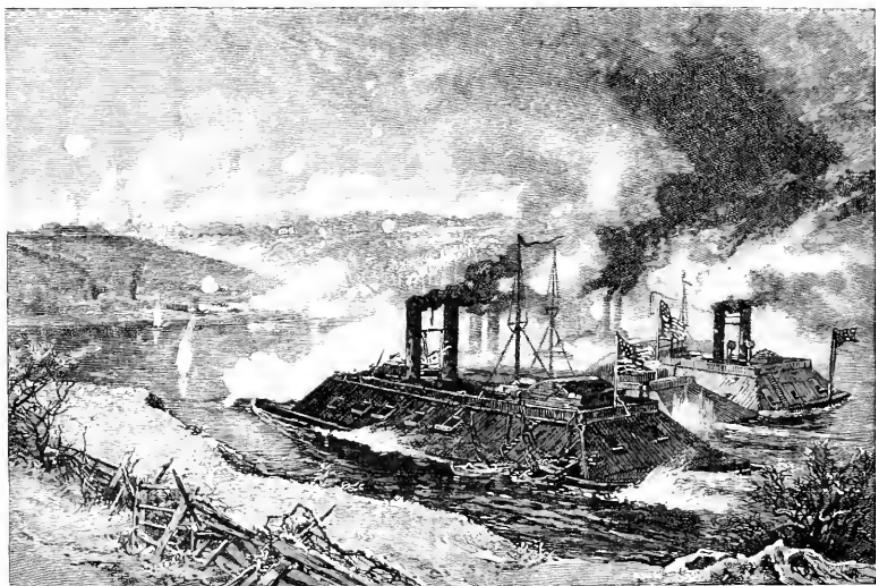
## 1862.

**The Situation.**—The national army now numbered 500,000; the Confederate, about 350,000. During the first year, there had been random fighting; the war henceforth assumed a general plan. The year's campaign on the part of the North had three main objects: (1) the opening of the Mississippi; (2) the blockade of the Southern ports; and (3) the capture of Richmond.

\* This fort was situated near Pensacola. Lieutenant Slemmer, seeing that an attack was about to be made upon him, transferred his men from Fort McRae, an untenable position, to Fort Pickens, an almost impregnable fortification, which he held until reinforcements arrived.

## THE WAR IN THE WEST.

The Confederates here held a line of defense with strongly fortified posts at Columbus, Fort Henry, Fort Donelson, Bowling Green, Mill Spring, and Cumberland Gap. It was determined to pierce this line near the center, along the



THE ATTACK ON FORT DONELSON.

Tennessee River. This would compel the evacuation of Columbus, which was deemed impregnable, and open the way to Nashville (map opp. p. 222).

**Capture of Forts Henry and Donelson.**—Accordingly, General Grant with his army, and Commodore Foote with his gun-boats, moved from Cairo (kā'ro) upon Fort Henry.\* A bombardment (Feb. 6) from the gun-boats reduced the place in about an hour. The land troops were to cut off

\* As a part of the general movement, in January, General Thomas had advanced against MILL SPRING, and, on the 19th, driven out the Confederate force at that place, with the loss of General Zollicoffer, a favorite Southern leader.

the retreat ; but as they did not arrive in time, the garrison escaped to Fort Donelson. The fleet now went back to the Ohio, and ascended the Cumberland, while Grant crossed to co-operate in an attack on Fort Donelson. The fight lasted three days.\* The fleet was repulsed by the fire from the fort, and Commodore Foote seriously wounded. Grant, having been reinforced till he had nearly thirty thousand men, defeated the Confederates in a desperate attempt to cut their way out, and captured a part of their intrenchments. As he was about to make the final assault, the fort was surrendered † (Feb. 16), with about fifteen thousand men.

*Effect of these Victories.*—As was expected, Columbus and Bowling Green were evacuated, while General Buell at once occupied Nashville. The Confederates fell back to Corinth, the great railroad center for Mississippi and Tennessee, where their forces were gradually collected under the command of Generals Albert Sidney Johnston, and Beauregard. The Union army ascended the Tennessee to Pittsburg Landing. Grant was placed in command, and General Buell ordered to reinforce him.

The next movement was to capture the Memphis and Charleston railroad, thus cutting off Memphis, and securing another section of the Mississippi River.

**Battle of Shiloh** (April 6, 7).—The Confederates determined to rout Grant's army before the arrival of Buell.

\* For four nights of inelement winter weather, amid snow and sleet, with no tents, shelter, fire, and many with no blankets, these hardy western troops maintained their position. The wounded suffered intensely, and numbers of them froze to death as they lay on the icy ground.

† When General Buckner, commander of the fort, wrote to General Grant, offering capitulation, Grant replied that no terms would be received except an "unconditional surrender", and that he "proposed to move immediately upon their works". These expressions have been much quoted, and U. S. Grant has often been said to signify "Unconditional Surrender Grant".

On Sunday morning, at daylight, moving out of the woods in line of battle, they suddenly fell on the Union camps.\* On the one side were the Southern dash, daring, and vigor; on the other, the Northern firmness and determination. The Federals slowly yielded, but for twelve hours obstinately disputed every inch of the way. At last, pushed to the very brink of the river, Grant massed his artillery, and gathered about it the fragments of regiments for the final stand. The Confederates, to meet them, had to cross a deep ravine, where, struggling through the mud and water, they melted away under the fire of cannon and musketry from above, and the shells from the gun-boats below. Few reached the slippery bank beyond. At the same time, Buell's advance came shouting on the field. The tide of battle was already stayed. The Confederates fell back. They possessed, however, the substantial fruits of victory. They had taken the Union camps, three thousand prisoners, thirty flags, and immense stores; but they had lost their commander, General Albert Sidney Johnston, who fell in the heat of the action (map opp. p. 222).

The next morning, the tide turned. Buell's army had come, and fresh troops were poured on the wearied Confederates. Beauregard, obstinately resisting, was driven from the field. He retreated, however, in good order, and, unmolested, returned to Corinth.

\* Whether or not this attack was a surprise, has been one of the mooted questions of the war. Le Comte de Paris says, "The surprise was complete and unquestionable; the Union commanders sought in vain to excuse themselves"; and it was currently stated at the time that so unexpected was the attack that many of the "men were bayoneted in their beds". On the other hand, General Sherman asserts that his "troops were in line of battle and ready" before the engagement began, and he personally assures the writer that after the battle he offered in vain a reward for the body of any person killed by a bayonet-wound. General Grant, also, denies that the attack was a surprise to him, and declares that so well satisfied was he with the result of the first day's struggle, that at night he gave orders for a forward movement early in the morning.

General Halleck now assumed command, and by slow stages followed the Confederates. Beauregard, finding himself outnumbered, evacuated Corinth, and Halleck took possession (May 30).

**Island No. 10.**—The Confederates, on retreating from Columbus, fell back to Island No. 10.\* There they were bombarded by Commodore Foote for three weeks with little effect. General Pope, crossing the Mississippi† in the midst of a fearful rain-storm, took the batteries on the opposite bank, and prepared to attack the fortifications in the rear. The garrison, seven thousand strong, surrendered (April 7) the very day of the conflict at Shiloh.

*The Effects* of the desperate battle at Shiloh were now fully apparent.‡ The Union gun-boats moved down the river and (May 10) defeated the Confederate iron-clad fleet. On the evacuation of Corinth, Fort Pillow was abandoned. The gun-boats, proceeding, destroyed the Confederate flotilla in front of Memphis, took possession of that city, and secured the Memphis and Charleston railroad. Kentucky and Western Tennessee had been wrenched from the Confederacy. The Union army§ now held a line running from

\* The islands in the Mississippi are numbered in order from the mouth of the Ohio to New Orleans.

† Pope, with his army, was on the Missouri side of the river. He could not cross, as the Confederate batteries were planted on the opposite shore. A canal was therefore dug through Donaldson's Point. It was twelve miles long and fifty feet wide. Part of the distance was among heavy timber, where the trees had to be cut off four feet below the surface of the water. Yet the work was accomplished in nineteen days. Through this canal, steamboats and barges were safely transferred below the newly-made island, while the two largest gun-boats ran the batteries. Under their protection, Pope crossed the river.

‡ Besides the results here named, the concentration of troops at Corinth had absorbed the troops from the South. Thus New Orleans, as we shall see hereafter, fell an easy prey to Farragut (p. 231).

§ Gen. Halleck having been called to Washington as General-in-Chief of the armies of the United States, General Grant was appointed to the command of this army.



DONALDSON'S POINT,  
AND ISLAND NO. 10.

Memphis through Corinth, nearly to Chat ta noo'ga, toward which point General Buell was steadily pushing his troops.

We shall next consider the efforts made by the Confederates to break through this line of investment. At this time, they were concentrated under Bragg at Chattanooga, Price at I u'ka, and Van Dorn at Holly Springs.

**Bragg's Expedition.**—The first movement was made by General Bragg, who, by rapid marches, hastened toward Louisville. General Buell fell back to Nashville, where he found out his enemy's plan. Now commenced a race between them of three hundred miles. Buell came out one day ahead. He was heavily reinforced to the number of one hundred thousand men. Bragg\* then fell back, Buell slowly following. At PERRYVILLE (October 8), Bragg fiercely turned upon Buell, and a desperate battle was fought. In the darkness, however, Bragg retreated, and finally escaped, though his wagon train extended a distance of forty miles. At this juncture (October 31), General Buell was superseded by General Rosecrans.

**Battles of Iuka and Corinth** (September 19, October 4).—Every one of Grant's veterans who could possibly be spared had been sent north to help Buell. Price and Van Dorn, taking advantage of the opportunity, were maneuvering to get possession of Corinth. Grant, thinking that he could capture Price and then get back to Corinth before Van Dorn could reach it from Holly Springs, ordered Rosecrans to move upon Iuka. Through some mistake, Rosecrans failed to occupy Price's line of retreat, and, after a severe conflict (September 19), the latter escaped. Thereupon,

\* At Frankfort, Bragg was joined by the part of his army under Kirby Smith, who had marched from Knoxville, routed a Union force under General Manson at Richmond, Ky., inflicting a heavy loss, and had then moved north as far as Cynthiana. There he threatened to attack Cincinnati, but was repelled by the extensive preparation made by General Lew Wallace.

the two Confederate generals joined their forces, and attacked Rosecrans in his intrenchments at Corinth. The Confederates exhibited brilliant courage,\* but were defeated and pursued forty miles with heavy loss.

**Battle of Murfreesboro** (December 31, January 2).—Rosecrans, on assuming command of Buell's army, concentrated his forces at Nashville. Thence he marched to meet Bragg, who, with a heavy column moving north on a second grand expedition, had already reached Murfreesboro (map opp. p. 222). Both generals had formed the same plan † for the approaching contest. As the Union left was crossing Stone River to attack the Confederate right, the strong Confederate left fell heavily on the weak Union right. At first, the onset was irresistible. But General Sheridan was there, and by his consummate valor held the ground until Rosecrans could recall his left, replant his batteries, and establish a new line. Upon this fresh front, the Confederates charged four times, but were driven back. Two days after, Bragg renewed the attack, but, being unsuccessful, retreated. This was one of the bloodiest contests of the war, the loss being about one fourth of the number engaged.

*The Effect of this Battle.*—The attempt of the Confederates to recover Kentucky was now abandoned. The way was

\* The Texas and Missouri troops made a heroic charge upon Fort Robinette. They advanced to within fifty yards of the intrenchments, received a shower of grape and canister without flinching, and were driven back only when the Ohio brigade poured a volley of musketry into their ranks. They were then rallied by Colonel Rogers, of the Second Texas, who led them up through the abattis, when, with the colors in his hand, he sprung upon the embankment and cheered on his men. An instant more and he fell, with five brave fellows who had dared to leap to his side. The Union troops admiringly buried his remains, and neatly rounded off the little mound where they laid the hero to rest.

† This coincidence reminds one of the battle of Camden (p. 133). The plan was to mass the strength on the left, and with that to fall upon and crush the enemy's right. The advantage clearly lay with the army which struck first. Bragg secured the initiative, and Rosecrans' only course was to give up all thought of an attack and endeavor to save his right and center from a rout.

open for another Union advance on Chattanooga. Bragg's force was reduced from an offensive to a defensive attitude.

**First Vicksburg Expedition.**—While Rosecrans was repelling this advance of Bragg, an expedition against Vicksburg had been planned by Grant. He was to move along the Mississippi Central Railroad, while Sherman was to descend the river from Memphis with the gun-boats under Porter. In the meantime, however, by a brilliant cavalry dash, Van Dorn destroyed Grant's depot of supplies at Holly Springs. This spoiled the whole plan. Sherman, ignorant of what had happened, pushed on, landed up the Yazoo' River, and made an attack at Chickasaw Bayou (bī'ōō), north of Vicksburg. After suffering a bloody repulse, and learning of Grant's misfortune, he fell back. The capture of Arkansas Post (Jan. 11, 1863), by a combined army and naval force, closed the campaign of 1862 on the Mississippi River.

**The War in Missouri.**—In February, General Curtis pushed General Price out of Missouri into Arkansas. The Confederates, by great exertion, increased their army to twenty thousand,—General Van Dorn now taking command. General Curtis, in a desperate battle, totally defeated him at PEA RIDGE\* (March 7, 8). During the rest of the war, no important battles were fought in this State.†

#### THE WAR ON THE SEA AND THE COAST.

**Capture of New Orleans** (April 25).—The effort to open the Mississippi was not confined to the north. Early in

\* Some four or five thousand Indians had joined the Confederate army, and took part in this battle. "They were difficult to manage", says Pollard, "in the deafening roar of the artillery, which drowned their loudest war-whoops. They were amazed at the sight of guns which ran around on wheels; annoyed by the falling of the trees behind which they took shelter; and, in a word, their main service was in consuming rations."

† The next year, Quantrell, a noted guerrilla, with three hundred men, entered Lawrence, Kansas, plundered the bank, burned houses, and murdered one hundred and forty persons. Before a sufficient force could be gathered, he escaped.

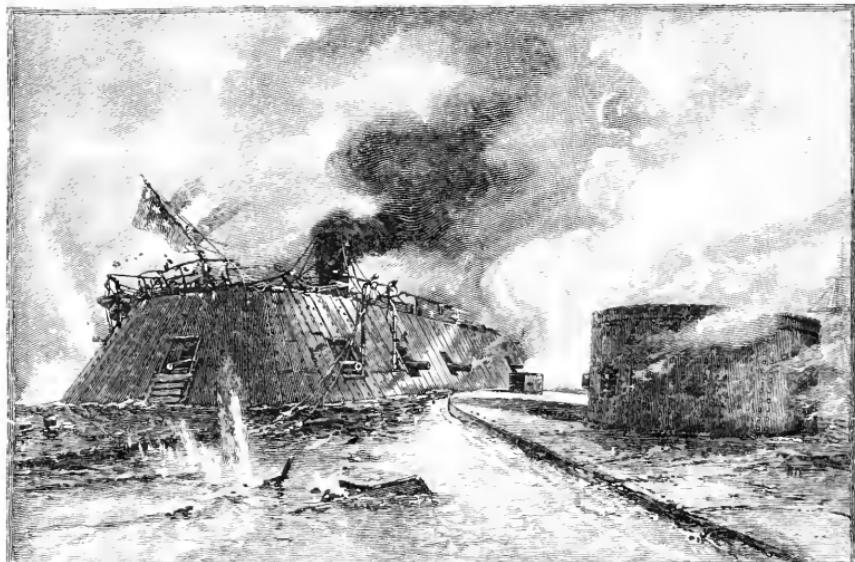
the spring, Captain Far'ragut, with a fleet of over forty vessels, carrying a land force under General Butler, attempted the capture of New Orleans, which commands the mouth of the river. The mortar-boats,\* anchored along the bank under the shelter of the woods, threw thirteen-inch shells into Forts Jackson and St. Philip for six days and nights, with little effect. Farragut then boldly resolved to carry the fleet past the defenses of New Orleans. A chain supported on hulks and stretched across the river closed the channel. An opening broad enough to admit the passage of the gun-boats† having been cut through this obstruction, at three o'clock in the morning (April 24) they advanced, and poured grape and canister into the forts at short range, receiving in return heavy volleys from the forts and batteries on shore. After running a fearful gauntlet of shot, shell, and the flames of fire-rafts, they next encountered the Confederate fleet of thirteen armed steamers, including the steam-battery Louisiana and the iron-plated ram Manassas. In the desperate struggle, twelve of the Confederate flotilla were destroyed. The fleet then steamed up to New Orleans,‡

\* To conceal the vessels, they were dressed out with leafy branches, which, except by close observation, rendered them undistinguishable from the green woods. The direction had been accurately calculated, so that the gunners did not need to see the points toward which they were to aim. So severe was the bombardment, that "windows at the Belize (bä leez), thirty miles distant, were broken. Fish, stunned by the explosion, lay floating on the surface of the water."

† The vessels were made partly iron-clad by looping two layers of chain cables over their sides, and their engines were protected by bags of sand, coal, etc.

‡ Steamers, ships, vast quantities of cotton, etc., were now burned to prevent their falling into the Federal hands. Pollard says: "No sooner had the Federal fleet turned the point and come within sight of the city, than the work of destruction commenced. Vast columns of smoke darkened the face of heaven and obscured the noon-day sun; for five miles along the levee (lēv'ee) fierce flames darted through the lurid atmosphere. Great ships and steamers wrapped in fire floated down the river, threatening the Federal vessels with destruction. Fifteen thousand bales of cotton, worth one million and a half of dollars, were consumed. About a dozen large river steamboats, twelve or fifteen ships, a great floating battery, several unfinished gun-boats, the immense ram Mississippi, and the docks on the other side of the river were all embraced in the fiery sacrifice."

which lay helpless under the Union guns. The forts, being now threatened in the rear by the army, soon surrendered. Captain Farragut afterward ascended the river, took possession of Bat'on Rouge (rōozh) and Natchez, and, running the batteries at Vicksburg, joined the Union fleet above.



BATTLE BETWEEN THE MONITOR AND MERRIMAC.

Burnside's Expedition against Roanoke Island\* was an important step toward the enforcement of the blockade. The Confederate forts were captured, and the ships destroyed. New Bern—an excellent sea-port, Elizabeth City, and, finally, Fort Macon, at the entrance to Beaufort (bō'fūrt) harbor, were taken. Thus the coast of upper North Carolina, with its intricate network of water communication, fell into the Union hands.

\* Roanoke Island, the scene of Raleigh's colonization scheme, was the key to the rear defenses of Norfolk. "It unlocked two sounds, eight rivers, four canals, and two railroads." It controlled largely the transmission of supplies to that region, afforded an excellent harbor and a convenient rendezvous for ships, and exposed a large country to attack.

**Florida and Georgia Expeditions.**—After its capture in the autumn of 1861, Port Royal became the base of operations against Florida and Georgia. Fernandina, Fort Clinch, Jacksonville, Darien, and St. Augustine were taken. Fort Pulaski, also, was reduced after a severe bombardment, and thus the port of Savannah was closed. At the end of the year, every city of the Atlantic sea-coast, except Savannah, Charleston, and Wilmington, was held by the Federal armies.

**The Merrimac and the Monitor.**—About noon, March 8, the long-looked-for iron-clad Merrimac,\* convoyed by a fleet of small vessels, steamed into Hampton Roads. Steering directly for the sloop-of-war Cumberland, whose terrific broadsides glanced harmlessly "like so many peas" from the Merrimac's iron roof, she struck her squarely with her iron beak, making a hole large enough for a man to enter. The Cumberland, with all on board, went down.† Warned by the fate of the Cumberland, the captain of the frigate Congress ran his vessel ashore, but the Merrimac, taking a position astern, fired shells into the frigate till the helpless crew were forced to surrender. At sunset, the Merrimac returned to Norfolk, awaiting, the next day, an easy victory over the rest of the Union fleet. All was delight and anticipation among the Confederates; all was dismay and dismal foreboding among the Federals.

\* When the United States navy-yard at Portsmouth, near Norfolk, Va., was given up, the steam-frigate Merrimac, the finest in the service, was scuttled. The Confederates afterward raised this vessel, razed the deck, and added an iron prow and a sloping roof made of heavy, iron plates (not railroad iron, as is often stated). The ship thus prepared looked not unlike a great house sunk in the water to the eaves. To deflect hostile balls, and also to prevent boarding, the iron roof was covered with a thick coating of tallow and plumbago. The Federals knew that the Merrimac was fitting for battle, and her coming was eagerly expected.

† As the Cumberland sunk, the crew continued to work their guns until the vessel plunged beneath the sea. Her flag was never struck, but floated above the water from the mast-head after she had gone down. —A curious fact is told con-

That night, the Monitor\* arrived in harbor, and immediately prepared to meet her giant adversary. Early in the morning, the Merrimac appeared, moving toward the steam-frigate Minnesota. Suddenly, from under her lee, the little Monitor darted out, and hurled at the monster two one hundred and sixty-six pound balls. Startled by the appearance of this unexpected and queer-looking antagonist, the Merrimac poured in a broadside, such as the night before had destroyed the Congress, but the balls rattled harmlessly off the Monitor's turret, or broke and fell in pieces on the deck. Then began the battle of the iron ships. It was the first of the kind in the world. Close against each other, iron rasping on iron, they exchanged their heaviest volleys. Five times the Merrimac tried to run down the Monitor, but her huge beak only grated over the iron deck, while the Monitor glided out unharmed. Despairing of doing any thing with her doughty little antagonist, the Merrimac now steamed back to Norfolk.†

*The Effect* of this contest can hardly be overestimated. Had the Merrimac triumphed, aided by other iron vessels

cerning this engagement. A large number of Confederates collected on the shore opposite Newport News, in order to witness the battle; but, to their amazement, they could not hear a sound of it. They could see the flash and smoke of each discharge, but the strong wind bore off entirely the noise of the cannonade. It was as if the spectators were gazing at the *picture* of a battle instead of the *reality*. Read articles on the "First Fight of the Iron-clads", in the *Century*, March, 1885.

\* This "Yankee cheese-box", as it was nicknamed at the time, was the invention of Captain Ericsson. It was a hull, with the deck a few inches above the water, and in the center a curious round tower made to revolve slowly by steam-power, thus turning in any direction the two guns it contained. The upper part of the hull, which was exposed to the enemy's fire, projected several feet beyond the lower part, and was made of thick white oak, covered with iron plating five inches thick on the sides and one inch on deck.

† As the Merrimac drew off, she hurled a last shot, which, striking the Monitor's pilot-house, broke a bar of iron nine by twelve inches, seriously injuring the eyes of the gallant commander, Lieutenant Worden, who was at that moment looking out through a narrow slit and directing the movements of his ship.



SEMMES

FOOTE



Naval Heroes of the Civil War.

then preparing by the Confederacy, she might have destroyed the rest of the Union fleet in Hampton Roads, reduced Fort Monroe, prevented the Peninsular Campaign (see below), sailed along the coast and broken up the blockade, swept through the shipping at New York, opened the way for foreign supplies, made an egress for cotton, and perhaps secured the acknowledgment of the Confederacy by European nations. On this battle hinged the fate of the war.

#### THE WAR IN THE EAST.

**The Peninsular Campaign.**—Richmond was here the objective point. It having been decided to make the advance by way of the Peninsula, the Army of the Potomac was carried in transports down\* the river from Washington. Landing at Fort Monroe about one hundred thousand strong (April 4), they slowly marched toward Yorktown.

*Siege of Yorktown.*—At this place, General Magruder, with only five thousand men (exclusive of the garrison of eight thousand at Yorktown), by his masterly skill, maintained so bold a front along a line thirteen miles in length, that McClellan was brought to a stop. Heavy guns were ordered from Washington, and a regular siege was begun. As McClellan was ready to open fire, Magruder, having delayed the Union army a month, quietly retired.†

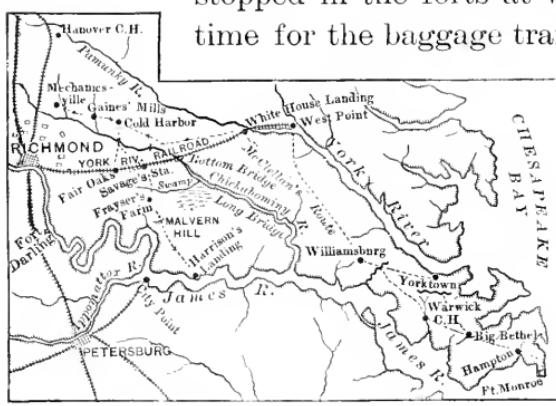
\* Previous to this (March 10), McClellan made an advance toward Manassas, where the Confederates had remained intrenched since McDowell's defeat. The fortifications, which were evacuated on his approach, were found to be quite insignificant, and to be mounted partly with "Quaker guns", *i.e.*, logs shaped and painted to imitate artillery.

† On the evacuation of Yorktown—the Confederate forces being concentrated for the defense of Richmond—Norfolk was abandoned, the Navy-yard burned, and the Merrimac, the pride of the South, blown up. United States troops from Fort

When the Confederate movement was discovered, a vigorous pursuit was commenced.

*Battle of Williamsburg* (May 5).—The Confederate rear-guard, now reinforced from Johnston's\* army at Richmond, stopped in the forts at Williamsburg to gain time for the baggage train, and a fierce battle

ensued. General Hooker, "Fighting Joe", with his division, maintained the contest for nine hours. Other troops at last arrived on the bloody field, and, Williamsburg having



MAP OF THE PENINSULA.

been evacuated in the night, the pursuit was continued to within seven miles of Richmond.

*Richmond Threatened*.—There was a great panic in that city, and the Confederate Congress hastily adjourned. Every thing looked like an immediate attack, when McClellan discovered that a Confederate force was at HANOVER COURT HOUSE. This threatened his communications by rail with White House Landing, and also with General McDowell, who, with thirty thousand men, was marching from Fredericksburg to join him. General Fitz John Porter, after a sharp skirmish, captured Hanover Court House. The army looked now hourly for McDowell's aid

Monroe took possession of the city, and gun-boats sailed up James River as far as Fort Darling. Here a plunging fire from the bluff forbade further advance.

\* This was General Joseph E. Johnston, who so unexpectedly brought his men to take part in the battle of Bull Run (p. 220). He was wounded in the battle of Seven Pines, but appeared again in two campaigns against Sherman (pp. 256, 272). General Albert Sidney Johnston was killed in the battle of Shiloh (p. 226).

in the approaching great contest. "McClellan's last orders at night were that McDowell's signals were to be watched for and without delay reported to him." But General Johnston was too shrewd to permit this junction. He accordingly ordered General Jackson to move along the Shen an do'ah Valley and threaten Washington.

*Jackson in the Shenandoah.*—Stonewall Jackson having been reinforced by General Ewell's division of ten thousand men, hurried down the valley after Banks at Strasburg. The Union troops fell back, and by tremendous exertion—"marching thirty-five miles in a single day"—succeeded in escaping across the Potomac. Great was the consternation in Washington. The President took military possession of the railroads. The governors of the Northern States were called upon to send militia for the defense of the capital. Fremont at Franklin, Banks at Harper's Ferry, and McDowell at Fredericksburg were ordered to capture Jackson. It was high time for this dashing leader to be alarmed. He rapidly retreated, burning the bridges as he passed. Fremont brought him to bay at CROSS KEYS (June 8), but was hurled off. Shields struck at him at PORT REPUBLIC, the next day, but was driven back five miles, while Jackson made good his escape from the Shenandoah Valley, having burned the bridges behind him.\*

*The Effect* of this adroit movement was evident. With fifteen thousand men, Jackson had occupied the attention of three major-generals and sixty thousand men, prevented

\* When the Federal forces took possession of the bridge over the Shenandoah, Jackson and his staff were on the south side, his army being on the north side. It is said that "he rode toward the bridge, and rising in his stirrups, called sternly to the Federal officer commanding the artillery placed to sweep it: 'Who ordered you to post that gun there, sir? Bring it over here!' The bewildered officer bowed, limbered up his piece, and prepared to move. Jackson and his staff seized the lucky moment and dashed across the bridge before the gun could be brought to bear upon them."

McDowell's junction with McClellan, alarmed Washington, and saved Richmond.

*Battle of Fair Oaks* (May 31, June 1).—While these stirring events were going on in the Shenandoah Valley, McClellan had pushed his left wing across the Chickahominy. But a terrible storm flooded the swamps, turned the roads to mud, and converted the Chickahominy Creek into a broad river. Johnston seized the opportunity to fall with tremendous force upon the exposed wing. At first, the Confederates swept all before them; but General Sumner, throwing his men across the tottering bridges over the Chickahominy, checked the column which was trying to seize the bridges and thus separate the two portions of the army. General Johnston was severely wounded. Night put an end to the contest. In the morning, the Confederates renewed the attack; but the loss of their general was fatal, and they were repulsed in great disorder.

*The Union Army Checked*.—General Lee,\* who now took command of the Confederate army, was anxious to assume the offensive. General Stuart led off (June 12) with a bold cavalry raid, in which he seized and burned supplies along the railroad leading to White House, made the entire circuit

\* Robert Edward Lee was born in Stratford, Virginia, 1807; died in Lexington, 1870. His father, Henry Lee, was the celebrated "Light-horse Harry" of Revolutionary fame. Robert early evinced a love for a military life, and during his West Point course was devoted to his studies. In the Mexican war, he was Scott's chief engineer and was thrice brevetted for his services. When Virginia seceded, he threw in his fortunes with his native State, although Scott had intimated his intention of nominating him as his successor. Lee was immediately appointed major-general of the Virginia forces, and was soon after designated to fortify Richmond. His wonderful success in the Seven-Days fight made "Uncle Robert", as he was familiarly called, the most trusted of the Confederate leaders. For three years, he baffled every attempt to take Richmond, which fell only with the government of which it was the capital, and the army and general that were its defense. General Lee was handsome in face and figure, a graceful rider, grave and silent in deportment—just the bearing to captivate a soldier; while his deep piety, truth, sincerity, and honesty won the hearts of all.

of the Union army, and returned to Richmond in safety. McClellan, also, meditated an advance, and Hooker pushed his pickets within sight of the Richmond steeples. At this moment, there came news of the "same apparition which had frightened Banks" in the Shenandoah. Stonewall Jackson had appeared near Hanover Court House, and threatened the Union communications with White House. There was no longer any thought of moving on Richmond. Hooker was recalled. McClellan resolved to "change his base" of supply from the York River to the James.

*The Seven-Days Battles.*—The very morning McClellan came to this decision, and ere the flank movement commenced, Lee, massing his strength on his left, fell upon the Union right at MECHANICSVILLE (June 26). Having repulsed this attack, at dawn the troops retired to GAINES' MILL, where, by the most desperate exertions, Porter held the bridges across the Chickahominy until night, and then, burning them, withdrew to the south bank. That night (June 28), Lee detected McClellan's movement, and instantly started columns along the roads that intersected the line of retreat. Magruder struck the Federal rear (June 29) at SAVAGE'S STATION. The Union troops maintained their position till night and then continued the movement. Longstreet and Hill encountered the line of march as it was passing FRAYSER'S FARM (June 30), but could not break it. During the darkness, the Union troops, worn out by the constant marching or fighting and the terrible heat and dust, collected at MALVERN HILL. On an elevated plateau rising in the form of an amphitheatre, on whose sloping sides were arranged tier upon tier of batteries, with gun-boats protecting the left, the broken fragments of the splendid Army of the Potomac made their last stand (July 1). Here Lee received so bloody a check

that he pressed the pursuit no farther. The Union troops retired undisturbed to Harrison's Landing.

*The Effect* of this campaign was a triumph for the Confederates. The Union retreat had been conducted with skill, the troops had shown great bravery and steadiness, the repulse at Malvern Hill was decided, and Lee had lost fully 20,000 men; yet the siege of Richmond had been raised, 16,000 men killed, wounded, or captured, immense stores taken or destroyed, and the Union army was now cooped up on James River, under the protection of the gun-boats. The discouragement at the North was as great as after the battle of Bull Run. Lincoln called for a levy of three hundred thousand troops.

**Campaign against Pope.**—Richmond being relieved from present peril, Lee threatened to march his victorious army against Washington. General Pope, who commanded the troops for the defense of that city, was stationed at the Rapidan. General McClellan was directed to transfer his army to Acquia Creek (map, p. 261), and put it under the command of General Pope. Lee, now relieved from all fear for Richmond, immediately massed his troops against Pope to crush him before the Army of the Potomac could arrive.\*

Pope being held in check by the main army in front, General Jackson was sent around Pope's right wing, to flank him. Passing through Thoroughfare Gap, he reached the railroad at Bristoe's Station, in the rear of Pope's army (August 26). General Pope, seeing an opportunity while Lee's army was thus divided to cut it up in detail, turned upon Jackson. But the Army of the Potomac not promptly reinforcing him, his plans failed, and instead of "bagging" Jackson's division, he

\* In the meantime, Jackson attacked Banks at *Cedar Mountain* (August 9) and defeated him after a bloody battle; but, unable to maintain his position, fell back on Lee's advancing army. Pope, seeing the fearful odds against which he was to contend, took post behind the Rappahannock.

was compelled, with only forty thousand men, to fight the entire Confederate army on the old battle-field of Bull Run. Exhausted, cut off from supplies, and overwhelmed by numbers, the shattered remains of the Union forces were glad to take refuge within the fortifications of Washington.\*

*The Effect.*—In this brief campaign, the Union army lost thirty thousand men and vast supplies, while the way to Washington was opened to the Confederates. The Capital had not been in such peril since the war began. Without, was a victorious army; within, were broken battalions and no general.

**Invasion of Maryland.**—Flushed with success, Lee now crossed the Potomac and entered Maryland,† hoping to secure volunteers and excite an insurrection. McClellan, who had been restored to the command of the Army of the Potomac, reorganized the shapeless mass and set out in pursuit. On the way, he found a copy of Lee's order of march. Learning from this that Lee had divided his forces,‡ and that but a portion remained in his front, he hastened in pursuit. Overtaking the Confederate rear at SOUTH MOUNTAIN, and forcing the passes, the Union army poured into the valley beyond (map opp. p. 223).

*Battle of Antietam* (September 17).—Lee, perceiving his mistake, fell back across Antietam (an te'tam) Creek and hurried off couriers to hasten the return of his scattered corps. Fortunately for him, McClellan delayed his attack a day, and,

\* During the pursuit by Lee's forces, an engagement took place at *Chantilly* (September 1). It cost the Union army two able officers—Generals Stevens and Kearney. The latter, especially, was devotedly loved by his soldiers. On the battle-field, brandishing his sword in his only hand, and taking the reins in his teeth, he had often led them in the most desperate and irresistible charges.

† This was Sept. 5, the very day that Bragg entered Kentucky on his great raid.

‡ Lee had sent Jackson with twenty-five thousand men against *Harper's Ferry*. That redoubtable leader quickly carried the heights which overlook the village, forced Colonel Miles, with eleven thousand men, to surrender, and then hastened back to take part in the approaching contest.

in the meantime, Jackson returned. At early dawn, Hooker fell upon the Confederate left, while Burnside, as soon as affairs looked favorable there, was to carry the bridge and attack their right. The Union army was over eighty thousand strong, and the Confederate but half that number. The Union advance was impetuous, but the Confederate defense was no less obstinate. Hooker was wounded, and his corps swept from the field. Both sides were reinforced. Burnside advanced, but too late to relieve the pressure on the Union right. Night ended this bloody fight. The morning found neither commander ready to assail his opponent. That night, Lee retired unmolested across the Potomac.\* Six weeks after, the Union army crossed into Virginia.

*The Effect* of this indecisive battle was that of a Union victory. The North was saved from invasion, and Washington from any danger of attack. Lincoln now determined to issue the Emancipation Proclamation, declaring freedom to all the slaves in the seceded States.†

**Battle of Fredericksburg.**—General dissatisfaction being expressed at the slowness with which McClellan pursued the retreating army, General Burnside was appointed his successor. Crossing the Rapahannock on pontoon bridges at Fredericksburg, he attempted (December 13) to storm

\* During this invasion, the Confederate soldiers endured every privation; one half were in rags, and thousands barefooted marked their path with crimson. Yet, shoeless, hatless, and ragged, they marched and fought with a heroism like that of the Revolutionary times. But they met their equals at Antietam. Jackson's and Hooker's men fought until both sides were nearly exterminated, and when the broken fragments fell back, the windrows of dead showed where their ranks had stood.

† Lincoln prepared the original draft in the July preceding, when the Union forces were in the midst of reverses. Carpenter repeats President Lincoln's words thus: "I put the draft of the proclamation aside, waiting for a victory. Well, the next news we had was of Pope's disaster at Bull Run. Things looked darker than ever. Finally came the week of the battle of Antietam. I determined to wait no longer. The news came, I think, on Wednesday, that the advantage was on our side. I was then staying at the Soldiers' Home. Here I finished writing the second draft of the proclamation; came up on Saturday; called the Cabinet together to hear it, and it was pub-

the works in the rear of the town. The Confederates, intrenched behind a long stone wall, and on heights crowned with artillery, easily repulsed the repeated assaults of the Union troops. Night mercifully put an end to the fruitless massacre. The Federal loss was over twelve thousand, nearly half of whom fell before the fatal stone wall.\* The survivors drew back into the city, and the next night passed quietly across the bridges to their old camping-ground.

**General Review of the Second Year of the War.**—The Confederates had gained the victories of Jackson in the Shenandoah; of Lee in the Peninsular campaign and those against Pope; Bragg's great raid in Kentucky; and the battles of Cedar Mountain, Chickasaw Bluff, and Fredericksburg.

The Federals had taken Forts Henry, Donelson, Pulaski, Macon, Jackson, St. Philip, and Island No. 10; had opened the Mississippi to Vicksburg; occupied New Orleans, Roanoke Island, New Bern, Yorktown, Norfolk, and Memphis; gained the battles of Pea Ridge, Williamsburg, Fair Oaks, South Mountain, Antietam, Iuka, Corinth, and Murfreesboro, and had checked the career of the Merrimac. The marked successes were mainly at the West and along the coast; while in Virginia, as yet, defeats had followed victories so soon as to hide their memory.

lished the following Monday. *I made a solemn vow before God, that if General Lee was driven back from Maryland I would crown the result by the declaration of freedom to the slaves.*"

\* This solid stone wall, four feet high, completely sheltered the troops, while they poured a murderous fire upon the attacking party. In the assault, Meagher's Irish troops especially distinguished themselves, leaving two thirds of their number on the field of their heroic action. The London Times' correspondent, who watched the battle from the heights, speaking of their desperate valor, says: "Never at Fontenoy, Albuera, nor at Waterloo, was more undoubted courage displayed by the sons of Erin than during those six frantic dashes which they directed against the almost impregnable position of their foe. That any mortal man could have carried the position, defended as it was, it seems idle for a moment to believe. But the bodies which lie in dense masses within forty-eight yards of the muzzles of Colonel

**The Sioux War.**—In the midst of this civil strife, the Sioux (soo) Indians became dissatisfied with the Indian traders, and the non-payment of the money due them. Bands of warriors under Little Crow and other chiefs perpetrated horrible massacres in Minnesota, Iowa, and Dakota. Over seven hundred whites were slain, and many thousands driven from their homes. Colonel Sibley routed the savages, and took five hundred prisoners. Thirty-nine were hanged on one scaffold at Mankato, Minn.

### 1863.

**The Situation.**—The plan of the war was the same as in the preceding year, but included also the occupation of Tennessee. The Federal army was about seven hundred thousand strong; the Confederate, not more than half that number. The Emancipation Proclamation was issued at the opening of the year.

#### THE WAR IN THE WEST.

**The Second Expedition against Vicksburg.**—Grant continued his great task of opening the Mississippi. After several weeks of fruitless effort against Vicksburg upon the north, he marched down the west side of the river, while the gun-boats, running the batteries,\* passed below the city and

Walton's guns are the best evidence what manner of men they were who pressed on to death with the dauntlessness of a race which has gained glory on a thousand battle-fields, and never more richly deserved it than at the foot of Marye's Heights, on the 13th day of December, 1862."

\* The running of the batteries with transports was considered so hazardous that the officers would not order their crews to take the risk, but called for volunteers. So many privates offered that they were compelled to draw lots. One boy, drawing a lucky number, was offered \$100 for his chance, but refused it, and lived to tell the story. The gauntlet of batteries extended eight miles. The first gun-boat crept silently down in the shadow of the trees which lined the bank. The Confederates at Vicksburg discovering the movement, kindled a bonfire which lighted up the whole scene, and made the other vessels a fair target for their gunners.

ferried the army across. Hastening forward, he defeated the Confederate advance under Pemberton, at PORT GIBSON (May 1). Learning that Gen. Jos. E. Johnston was coming to Pemberton's assistance, he rapidly pushed between them to Jackson, that, while holding back Johnston with his right hand, with his left he might drive Pemberton into Vicksburg, and thus capture



VICINITY OF VICKSBURG.

his whole army. Pursuing this design, he defeated Johnston at JACKSON (May 14), and then, turning to the west, drove Pemberton from his position at CHAMPION HILLS (May 16); next, at BIG BLACK RIVER (May 17); and in seventeen days after crossing the Mississippi, shut up Pemberton's army within the works at Vicksburg. Two desperate assaults upon these having failed, the Union troops began to throw up intrenchments. Mines and countermines were now dug. Not one of the garrison could show his head above the works without being picked off by the watchful riflemen. A hat, held above a port-hole, in two minutes was pierced with fifteen balls. Shells reached all parts of the city, and the inhabitants burrowed in caves to escape the iron storm. The garrison, worn out by forty-seven days of toil in the trenches, surrendered on the 4th of July.\*

*The Effect.*—This campaign cost the Confederates five battles, the cities of Vicksburg and Jackson, thirty-seven thousand prisoners, ten thousand killed and wounded, and immense stores. On the fall of Vicksburg, PORT HUDSON, which had been besieged by General Banks for many

\* This was the day after the fight at Gettysburg (p. 254).

weeks, surrendered.\* The Mississippi was now open to the Gulf, and the Confederacy cut in twain. One great object of the North was accomplished.

#### THE WAR IN TENNESSEE AND GEORGIA.

Rosecrans, after the battle of Murfreesboro, made no forward movement until June.† With sixty thousand men, he then marched against Bragg, and, by threatening his communications, compelled him to evacuate Chattanooga‡ (Sept. 8). Rosecrans pushed on in pursuit of Bragg, whom he supposed to be in full retreat. Bragg, however, having received powerful reinforcements, turned upon his pursuers so suddenly that they narrowly escaped being cut up in detail, while scattered along a line forty miles in length. The Union forces rapidly concentrated, and the two armies met on the Chickamauga.§

**Battle of Chickamauga** (Sept. 19, 20).—The first-day's fight was indecisive. About noon of the second day, the Federal line became broken from the movement of troops to

\* To escape the fiery tempest which constantly swept over Port Hudson, and to provide for the safety of their magazines, the garrison dug deep recesses in the bluffs, approached by steps cut out of the earth. An eye-witness says: "As we rode along the earth-works inside, after the siege, it was curious to mark the ingenious ways in which they had burrowed holes to shelter themselves from shell and from the intolerable rays of the sun; while at work, they must have looked like so many rabbits popping in and out of their warrens."

† One objection which Rosecrans opposed to a forward movement was his inferiority in cavalry. This was removed in July, when General John H. Morgan, with about four thousand Confederate cavalry, crossed the Ohio at Brandenburg, swept around Cincinnati, and struck the river again near Parkersburg. During his entire route, he was harassed by militia. At this point, he was overtaken by his pursuers, while gun-boats in the river prevented his crossing. Nearly the entire force was captured. Morgan escaped, but was finally taken and confined in the penitentiary at Columbus. Four months afterward, he broke jail and reached Richmond in safety.

‡ General Bragg had here an opportunity to be shut up in Chattanooga, as Pemberton had been in Vicksburg; but, a more acute strategist, he knew the value of an army in the field to be greater than that of any fortified city.

§ In the Indian language, the "River of Death"—an ominous name!

help the left wing, then hard pressed. Longstreet seized the opportunity, pushed a brigade into the gap, and swept the Federal right and center from the field. The rushing crowd of fugitives bore Rosecrans himself away. In this crisis of the battle, all depended on the left, under Thomas. If that yielded, the army would be utterly routed. All through the long afternoon, the entire Confederate army surged against it. But Thomas held fast.\* At night, he deliberately withdrew to Chattanooga, picking up five hundred prisoners on the way. The Union army, however, defeated in the field, was now shut up in its intrenchments. Bragg occupied the hills commanding the city, and cut off its communications. The garrison was threatened with starvation.†

**Battle of Chattanooga**‡ (Nov. 24, 25).—Grant, having been appointed successor to Rosecrans, immediately hastened to Chattanooga.§ Affairs soon wore a different look. Hooker came with two corps from the Army of the Potomac;|| and Sherman hastened by forced marches from



### VICINITY OF CHATTANOOGA.

\* Thomas was thenceforth styled the "Rock of Chickamauga". He was in command of men as brave as himself. Col. George, of the Second Minnesota, being asked, "How long can you hold this pass?" replied, "Until the regiment is mustered out of service."

† "Starvation had destroyed so many of the animals that there were not artillery horses enough to take a battery into action. The number of mules that perished was graphically indicated by one of the soldiers of the Army of the Tennessee: 'The mud was so deep that we could not travel by the road, but we got along pretty well by stepping from mule to mule as they lay dead by the way.'—Draper.

‡ In the Cherokee language, "The Hawk's Nest".

§ Thomas held command after Rosecrans left, and Grant was afraid he might surrender before reinforcements could reach him, and therefore telegraphed him to hold fast. The characteristic reply was, "I will stay till I starve."

¶ Twenty-three thousand strong, they were carried by rail from the Rapidan, in Virginia, to Stevenson, in Alabama, eleven hundred and ninety-two miles, in seven days. The Confederates did not know of the change of base until Hooker appeared in front.

Iuka, two hundred miles away. Communications were re-established. Thomas made a dash\* and seized Orchard Knob (Nov. 23). The following day, Hooker charged the fortifications on Lookout Mountain.† His troops had been ordered to stop on the high ground; but, carried away by the ardor of the attack, they swept over the crest, driving the enemy before them. Through the mist that filled the valley, the anxious watchers below caught only glimpses of this far-famed "battle above the clouds". The next morning, Hooker advanced on the south of Missionary Ridge. Sherman, during the whole time, had been heavily pounding away on the northern flank. Grant, from his position on Orchard Knob, perceiving that the Confederate line in front of him was being weakened to repel these attacks on the flanks, saw that the critical moment had come,‡ and launched Thomas' corps on its center. The orders were to take the rifle-pits at the foot of Missionary Ridge, then halt and re-form; but the men forgot them all, carried the works at

\* It was a beautiful day. The men had on their best uniforms, and the bands disengaged the liveliest music. The hills were crowded with spectators. The Confederates on Lookout Mountain and Missionary Ridge could see every movement. Bragg's pickets stood leaning on their muskets watching Thomas' columns drawn up as if on parade. Suddenly, the Union line broke into a double-quick, and the review was turned into a battle.

† The first day, the Confederate left rested on Lookout Mountain, there two thousand four hundred feet high; the right, along Missionary Ridge—so called because, many years ago, Catholic missionaries had Indian schools upon it; and the center, in the valley between. The second day their army simply occupied Missionary Ridge, in the center of their former line, in front of Grant at Orchard Knob.—On Lookout Mountain, Hooker met with so feeble a resistance, that Grant is reported to have declared the so-called "battle above the clouds" to be "all poetry, there having been no action there worthy the name of battle".

‡ The signals for the attack had been arranged: six cannon-shots, fired at intervals of two seconds. The moment arrived. "Strong and steady the order rang out: 'Number one, fire! Number two, fire! Number three, fire!' It seemed to me like the tolling of the clock of destiny. And when at 'Number six, fire!' the roar throbbed out with the flash, you should have seen the dead line, that had been lying behind the works all day, come to resurrection in the twinkling of an eye, and leap like a blade from its scabbard."—*B. F. Taylor.*

the base, and then swept on up the ascent. Grant caught the inspiration, and ordered a grand charge along the whole front. Up they went, over rocks and chasms, all lines broken, the flags far ahead, each surrounded by a group of the bravest. Without firing a shot, and heedless of the



BATTLE OF MISSIONARY RIDGE.

tempest hurled upon them, they surmounted the crest, captured the guns, and turned them on the retreating foe. That night, the Union camp-fires, glistening along the heights about Chattanooga, proclaimed the success of this the most brilliant of Grant's achievements, and the most picturesque of the battles of the war.

*The Effects* of this campaign were the rout of Bragg's army, the resignation of that general, and the possession of Chattanooga by the Union forces. This post gave control of East Tennessee, and opened the way to the heart of the Confederacy. It became the door-way by which

the Union army gained easy access to Virginia, North and South Carolina, Georgia, and Alabama.

#### THE WAR IN EAST TENNESSEE.

While Rosecrans was moving on Chattanooga, Burnside, being relieved of the command of the Army of the Potomac, was sent into East Tennessee, where he met with great success. In the meantime, the Confederate President, Davis, visited Bragg, and, thinking Chattanooga was sure to be captured, sent Longstreet with his corps to the defense of Tennessee. His men were in a deplorable state—hungry, ragged, and tentless; but, under this indefatigable leader, they shut up Burnside's force in the works at Knoxville. Meanwhile, Grant, in the moment of his splendid triumph at Chattanooga, ordered Sherman's torn, bleeding, barefoot troops over terrible roads one hundred miles to Burnside's relief. Longstreet, in order to anticipate the arrival of these reinforcements, made a desperate assault upon Burnside (November 29), but it was as heroically repulsed. As Sherman's advance-guard reached Knoxville (December 4), Longstreet's troops filed out of their works in retreat.

#### THE WAR IN THE EAST.

**Battle of Chancellorsville** (May 2, 3).—Burnside, after the defeat at Fredericksburg, was succeeded by General Hooker (January 26). The departure of Longstreet from his force, leaving Lee only sixty thousand to oppose to the Potomac army of over one hundred thousand, offered a favorable opportunity for an attack. Accordingly, Sedgwick was left to carry the intrenchments at Fredericksburg, while the main body crossed the Rappahannock some miles above, and took position in the wilderness, near Chancel-

lorsville (map 4, opp. p. 223). Lee, relying on the dense woods to conceal his movements, risked the perilous chance of dividing his army in the presence of a superior enemy. While he kept up a show of fight in front, Jackson, by a detour of fifteen miles, got to the rear with twenty thousand men, and, suddenly bursting out of the dense woods, routed the Union right. That night, Hooker took a new position; but, by constant attacks through the next day, Lee gradually forced the Union line from the field of battle, and captured Chancellor House.\* As he was preparing for a final grand charge, word was received that Sedgwick had crossed the Rappahannock, taken Fredericksburg, and had fallen on his rear. Drawing back, he turned against this new antagonist, and, by severe fighting that night and the following day, compelled him to recross the river. Lee then went to seek Hooker, but he was already gone. The Army of the Potomac was soon back on its old camping-ground opposite Fredericksburg.†

**Lee's Second Invasion of the North.**—Lee, encouraged by his success, now determined to carry the war into the Northern States, and dictate terms of peace in Philadelphia or New York.‡ With the finest army the South had

\* A pillar on the veranda of this house, against which Hooker was leaning, being struck by a cannon-ball, that general was stunned, and for an hour, in the heat of the fight, the Union army was deprived of its commander.

† In this battle, the South was called to mourn the death of Stonewall Jackson, whose magical name was worth to its cause more than an army. In the evening after his successful onslaught upon the flank of the Union line, while riding back to camp from a reconnaissance at the front, he was fired upon by his own men, who mistook his escort for Federal cavalry.

‡ The Union disasters which had happened since the beginning of the year encouraged this hope. Galveston, Texas, had been retaken by General Magruder, whereby not only valuable stores had been acquired, but a sea-port had been opened, and the Union cause in that State depressed. Burnside had been checked in his victorious career in Tennessee (p. 250). The naval attack on Charleston had proved a failure (p. 254). An attempt to capture Fort McAlister had met with no success. Rosecrans had made no progress against Bragg. Banks had not then taken Port Hudson. Vicksburg still kept Grant at bay. The Army of the Potomac had been checked at Fredericksburg and Chancellorsville, and at one time two hundred sol-

ever sent forth, the flower of her troops, carefully equipped and confident of success, he rapidly moved down the Shenandoah, crossed the Potomac, and advanced to Chambersburg. The Union army followed along the east side of the Blue Ridge and South Mountains. Lee, fearing that Meade, who now commanded the Federals, would strike through some of the passes and cut off his communications with Richmond, turned east to threaten Baltimore, and thus draw off Meade for its defense.



VICINITY OF GETTYSBURG.

**Battle of Gettysburg (July 1-3).**  
FIRST DAY.—The Confederate advance unexpectedly met the Union cavalry just westward from Gettysburg, on the Chambersburg road.\* Reinforcements came up on both sides; but the Federal troops were finally forced back, and, becoming entangled in the streets of the village, lost many prisoners. All that night, the troops kept arriving and

taking their positions by moonlight, to be ready for the contest which they saw was now close at hand.†

diers per day were deserting its ranks. The term of service of forty thousand men had expired, and the total Union strength was now only eighty thousand. The cost of the war was enormous, and a strong peace party had arisen at the North. The draft was very unpopular. Indeed, during Lee's invasion, a riot broke out in New York to resist it; houses were burned, negroes were pursued in the streets, and, when captured, were beaten, and even hanged; for three days the city was a scene of outrage and violence.

\* "Neither general had planned to have the fight at this place; Lee had intended not to fight at all, except a defensive battle, and Meade proposed to make the contest at Pipe Creek, about fifteen miles south-east from Gettysburg. The movement of cavalry which brought on this great battle, was only a screen to conceal the Union army marching toward Meade's desired battle-field."—*Draper*.

† The Union line was upon a fish-hook-shaped ridge about six miles long, with Culp's Hill at the barb, Cemetery Ridge along the side, and Little Round Top and Round Top, two eminences, at the eye. The Confederate line was on Seminary Ridge, at a distance of about a mile and a half. The Union troops lay behind rock

*Second Day.*—In the afternoon, Longstreet led the first grand charge against the Union left, in order to secure Little Round Top. General Sickles, by mistake, had here taken a position in front of Meade's intended line of battle. The Confederates, far out-flanking, swung around him; but, as they reached the top of the hill, they met a brigade which Warren had sent just in time to defeat this attempt. Sickles was, however, driven back to Cemetery Ridge, where he stood firm. Ewell, in an attack on the Federal right, succeeded in getting a position on Culp's Hill.\*

*Third Day.*—At one o'clock p.m., Lee suddenly opened on Cemetery Ridge with one hundred and fifty guns. For two hours, the air was alive with shells.† Then the cannonade lulled, and out of the woods swept the Confederate double battle-line, over a mile long, and preceded by a cloud of skirmishers. A thrill of admiration ran along the Union ranks, as, silently and with disciplined steadiness, that magnificent column of eighteen thousand men moved up the slope of Cemetery Ridge. A hundred guns tore great gaps in their front. Infantry volleys smote their ranks. The line was broken, yet they pushed forward. They planted their battle-flags on the breastworks. They bayoneted the cannoneers at their guns. They fought, hand to hand, so close that the exploding powder scorched their clothes. Upon this struggling mass, the Federals converged from every side. No human endurance could stand the storm. Out

ledges and stone walls, while the Confederates were largely hidden in the woods. In the valley between, were fields of grain and pastures where cattle were feeding all unconscious of the gathering storm.

\* Lee, encouraged by these successes, resolved to continue the fight. The Confederate victories, however, were only apparent. Sickles had been forced into a better position than at first, and the one which Meade had intended he should occupy; while Ewell was driven out of the Union works early the next morning.

† It is customary in battle to demoralize the enemy before a grand infantry charge, by concentrating upon the desired point a tremendous artillery fire.

of that terrible fire, whole companies rushed as prisoners into the Union lines, while the rest fled panic-stricken from the field.\*

The Federal loss in the three-days fight was twenty-three thousand; the Confederate was not officially reported, but probably much exceeded that number. Meade slowly followed Lee, who re-crossed the Potomac, and took position back of the Rapidan.

*The Effect* of this battle was to put an end to the idea of a Northern invasion. Lee's veterans who went down in the awful charges of Gettysburg could never be replaced.

#### THE WAR ON THE SEA AND THE COAST.

**Attack on Charleston** (April 7).—Such was the confidence felt in the ability of the iron-clads to resist cannon-balls, that Admiral Dupont determined to run the fortifications at the entrance to Charleston, and force his way up to the city. The attempt was a disastrous failure.† General Gillmore then took charge of the Union troops, and, landing on Morris Island,‡ by regular siege approaches and a terrible bombardment, captured Fort Wagner§ and reduced Fort

\* At the very moment when the last charge was being repulsed, Pemberton was negotiating for the surrender of Vicksburg to Grant. This was the turning point of the war. From that time, the Confederacy began to wane.

† The Keokuk was sunk, and nearly all the vessels were seriously injured. The officers declared that the strokes of the shots against the iron sides of their ships were as rapid as the ticks of a watch.

‡ In a marsh west of Morris Island, piles were driven in the mud twenty feet deep, and a platform made on which was placed an eight-inch rifled Parrot gun, nicknamed the "Swamp Angel". It threw shells five miles into Charleston, but burst on the thirty-sixth round. The bombardment of the city was afterward continued from the other batteries.

§ Two unsuccessful charges were made on this fort. In one, the 54th regiment, Colonel Shaw, bore a prominent part. It was the first colored regiment organized in the free States. In order to be in season for the assault, it had marched two days through heavy sands and drenching storms. After only five minutes rest, it took its place at the front of the attacking column. The men fought with unflinching gallantry, and planted their flag on the works; but their Colonel, and so many of the offi-

Sumter to a shapeless mass of rubbish. A short time after, a party of sailors from the Union fleet essayed to capture it by night, but its garrison, upstarting from the ruins, drove them back with heavy loss.

**General Review of the Third Year of the War.**—The Confederates had gained the great battles of Chickamauga and Chancellorsville, seized Galveston, and successfully resisted every attack on Charleston.

The Federals had gained the important battles before Vicksburg, and those at Chattanooga and at Gettysburg. They had captured the garrisons of Vicksburg and Port Hudson. The Mississippi was patrolled by gun-boats, and the Confederate army was entirely cut off from its western supplies. Arkansas, East Tennessee, and large portions of Louisiana, Mississippi, and Texas had been won for the Union.

1864.

**The Situation.**—In March, General Grant was made Lieutenant-General in command of all the forces of the United States. Heretofore, the different armies had acted independently. They were now to move in concert, and thus prevent the Confederate forces from aiding each other. The strength of the South lay in the armies of Lee in Virginia, and Joseph E. Johnston in Georgia. Grant was to attack the former, Sherman the latter, and both were to keep at work, regardless of season or weather. While the Army

ers were shot, that what was left of the regiment was led off by a boy—Lt. Higginson. No measure of the war was more bitterly opposed than the project of arming the slaves. It was denounced at the North, and the Confederate Congress passed a law which threatened with death any white officer captured while in command of negro troops, leaving the men to be dealt with according to the laws of the State in which they were taken. Yet, so willing were the negroes to enlist, and so faithful did they prove themselves in service, that, in December, 1863, over fifty thousand had been enrolled, and before the close of the war that number was quadrupled.

of the Potomac was crossing the Rapidan (May 4), Grant, seated on a log by the road-side, penciled a telegram to Sherman to start.



GRANT WRITING THE TELEGRAM TO SHERMAN.

#### THE WAR IN TENNESSEE AND GEORGIA.

**Advance upon Atlanta.**—Sherman, with one hundred thousand men, now moved upon Johnston, who, with nearly fifty thousand, was stationed at Dalton, Ga. (map opp. p. 222). The Confederate commander, foreseeing this advance, had selected a series of almost impregnable positions, one behind the other, all the way to Atlanta. For one hundred miles, there was continued skirmishing among mountains and woods, which presented every opportunity for such a warfare. Both armies were led by profound strategists. Sherman would drive Johnston into a stronghold, and then with consummate skill outflank him, when Johnston with equal

skill would retreat to a new post and prepare to meet his opponent again.\* At DALTON, RESACA, DALLAS, and LOST and KENESAW MOUNTAINS, bloody battles were fought. Finally, Johnston retired to the intrenchments of Atlanta (July 10).

**Capture of Atlanta.**—Davis, dissatisfied with this Fabian policy, now put Hood in command. He attacked the Union army three times with tremendous energy, but was repulsed with great slaughter. Sherman, thereupon re-enacting his favorite flank movement, filled his wagons with fifteen-days rations, dexterously shifted his whole army on Hood's line of supplies, and compelled the evacuation of the city.†

*The Effect.*—This campaign, during four months of fighting and marching, day and night, in its ten pitched battles and scores of lesser engagements, cost the Union army thirty thousand men, and the Confederate, thirty-five thousand. Georgia was the workshop, store-house, granary, and arsenal of the Confederacy. At Atlanta, Rome, and the neighboring towns, were manufactories, foundries, and mills, where

\* When either party stopped for a day or two, it fortified its front with an abattis of felled trees and a ditch with a head-log placed on the embankment. The head-log was a tree twelve or fifteen inches in diameter resting on small cross-sticks, thus leaving a space of four or five inches between the log and the dirt, through which the guns could be pointed.

† During this campaign, Sherman's supplies were brought up by a single line of railroad from Nashville, a distance of three hundred miles, and exposed throughout to the attacks of the enemy. Yet so carefully was it garrisoned and so rapidly were bridges built and breaks repaired, that the damages were often mended before the news of the accident reached camp. Sherman said that the whistle of the locomotive was quite frequently heard on the camp-ground before the echoes of the skirmish-fire had died away.



GUARDING A TRAIN.

clothing, wagons, harnesses, powder, balls, and cannon were furnished to all its armies. The South was henceforth cut off from these supplies.

**Hood's Invasion of Tennessee.**—Sherman now longed to sweep through the Atlantic States. But this was impossible so long as Hood, with an army of forty thousand, was in front, while the cavalry under Forrest was raiding along his railroad communications toward Chattanooga and Nashville. With unconcealed joy, therefore, Sherman learned that Hood was to invade Tennessee.\* Relieved of this anxiety, he prepared his army for its celebrated “March to the Sea”.

*Battle of Nashville* (December 15, 16).—Hood crossed the Tennessee, and, after a desperate struggle with Schofield's army at FRANKLIN, shut up General Thomas within the fortifications at Nashville. For two weeks little was done.† When Thomas was fully ready, he suddenly sallied out on Hood, and in a terrible two-days battle drove the Confederate forces out of their intrenchments into headlong flight. The Union cavalry thundered upon their heels with remorseless energy. The infantry followed closely behind. The entire Confederate army, except the rear-guard, which fought bravely to the last, was dissolved into a rabble of demoralized fugitives, who escaped across the Tennessee.

*The Effect.*—For the first time in the war, an army was destroyed. The object which Sherman hoped to attain when he moved on Atlanta, was accomplished by Thomas, three hundred miles away. Sherman could now go where he pleased

\* Hood's expectation was that Sherman would follow him into Tennessee, and thus Georgia be saved from invasion. Sherman had no such idea. “If Hood will go there”, said he, “I will give him rations to go with.” Now was presented the singular spectacle of these two armies, which had so lately been engaged in deadly combat, marching from each other as fast as they could go.

† Great disappointment was felt at the North over the retreat to Nashville, and still more at Thomas' delay in that city. Grant ordered him to move, and had actually started to take charge of his troops in person, when he learned of the splendid

with little danger of meeting a foe. The war at the west, so far as any great movements were concerned, was finished.

**Sherman's March to the Sea.**—Breaking loose from his communications with Nashville, and burning the city of Atlanta, Sherman started (Nov. 16), with sixty thousand men, for the Atlantic coast (map opp. p. 222). The army moved in four columns, with a cloud of cavalry under Kilpatrick,\* and skirmishers in front to disguise its route.† The wings destroyed the Georgia Central and Augusta railroads, and the troops foraged on the country as they passed. In five weeks, they had marched three hundred miles, reached the sea,‡ stormed Fort McAlister, and captured Savannah.§

*The Effect* of this march can hardly be over-estimated. A fertile region, sixty miles wide and three hundred long, was desolated; three hundred miles of railroad were destroyed; the eastern portion of the already-sundered Confederacy was cut in twain; immense supplies of provisions were captured, and the hardships of war brought home to those who had hitherto been exempt from its actual contact.

victory his slow but sure general had achieved. The rock of Chickamauga had become the sledge of Nashville.

\* The ubiquity of the cavalry movements of the war is remarkable. In February preceding, Kilpatrick, who now opened up the way for Sherman's march through Georgia, made a dash with the cavalry of the Army of the Potomac to rescue the Union prisoners at Richmond. He got within the defenses of the city, but not fully appreciating his success, withdrew, while Colonel Ulric Dahlgren, who headed a co-operating force, through the ignorance or treachery of his guide, lost his route, was surrounded by the enemy, and fell in an attempt to cut his way out. Great damage was done to railroads and canals near Richmond.

† A feint which Sherman made toward Augusta led to a concentration at that city of the cavalry and militia called out to dispute his progress. The real direction of his march was not discovered until he had entered the peninsula between the Savannah and Ogeechee rivers.

‡ The first news received at the North from Sherman was brought by three scouts, who left the Union army just as it was closing in on Savannah. They hid in the rice swamps by day, and paddled down the river by night. Creeping past Fort McAlister undiscovered, they were picked up by the Federal gun-boats.

§ Sherman sent the news of its capture, with 25,000 bales of cotton and 150 cannon, to President Lincoln, as a Christmas present to the nation.

**THE WAR IN VIRGINIA.**

**Battle of the Wilderness** (May 5, 6).—After crossing the Rapidan, the Union army plunged into the Wilderness. While the columns were toiling along the narrow roads, they were suddenly attacked by the Confederate army.\* The dense forest forbade all strategy. There was none of the pomp or glory of war, only its horrible butchery. The ranks simply dashed into the woods. Soon came the patter of shots, the heavy rattle of musketry, and then there streamed back the wreck of the battle—bleeding, mangled forms, borne on stretchers. In those gloomy shades, dense with smoke, this strangest of battles, which no eye could follow, marked only by the shouts and volleys, now advancing, now receding, as either side gained or lost, surged to and fro. The third day, both armies, worn out by this desperate struggle, remained in their intrenchments. Neither side had conquered. It was generally supposed that the Federals would retire back of the Rapidan. Grant thought differently. He quietly gathered up his army and pushed it by the Confederate right flank toward Spottsylvania Court House.

**Battle of Spottsylvania** (May 8-12).—Lee detected the movement, and hurried a division to head off the Union advance. When Grant reached the spot, he found the Confederate army planted directly across the road, barring his progress. Five days of continuous maneuvering † and fighting ‡

\* This was near the old battle-ground of Chancellorsville, and just a year and two days after that fierce fight.

† During this time, the sharp-shooters on both sides, hidden in the trees, were busy picking off officers. On the 9th, General Sedgwick was superintending the placing of a battery in the front. Seeing a man dodging a ball, he rebuked him, saying, "Pooh! they can't hit an elephant at this distance." At that moment, he was himself struck, and fell dead.

‡ On the morning of the 12th, Hancock's corps, hidden by a dense fog, charged upon the Confederate line, broke the abattis, surrounded a division, and took nearly

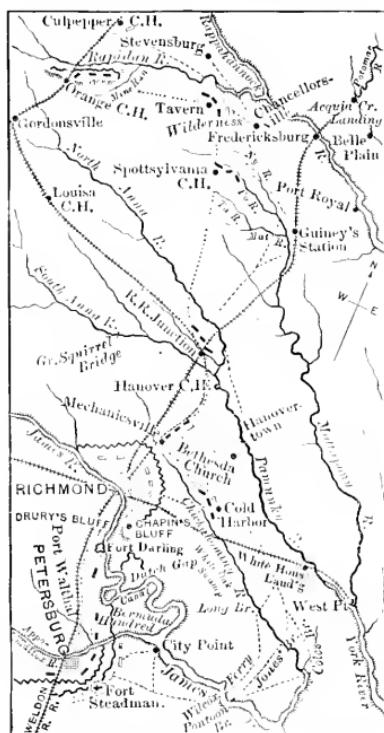
having given no advantage, Grant concluded to try the favorite movement of the year, and turn Lee's right flank again.\*

**Battle of Cold Harbor (June 3).**—Lee, however, moving on the inner and shorter line, reached the NORTH ANNA first. Here some severe fighting occurred, when, Grant moving to flank again, Lee slipped into the intrenchments of Cold Harbor. At daybreak, a general assault was made. "Twenty minutes after the first shot was fired, ten thousand Union men were stretched writhing on the sod, or still and calm in death, while the enemy's loss was little over one thousand."†

four thousand prisoners, including two generals. So complete was the surprise, that officers were captured at breakfast. Lee, however, rallied, and the fighting was so fierce to regain this lost position, that a "tree eighteen inches in diameter was cut in two by the bullets which struck it. Ten thousand men fell on each side. Men in hundreds, killed and wounded together, were piled in hideous heaps, some bodies, which had lain for hours under the concentric fire of the battle, being perforated with wounds. The writhing of the wounded beneath the dead moved these masses at times; while often a lifted arm or quivering limb told of an agony not quenched by the Lethe of death around."

\* It was during this fearful battle that Grant sent his famous dispatch, "I propose to fight it out on this line if it takes all summer." Badeau's Military History of Grant asserts that the Federal loss has been greatly exaggerated, not exceeding 7,000 in all; and that Cold Harbor was but a part of the "unceasing play of the terrible hammer by which Grant was crushing the Confederate army".

† Grant had arranged, in the general plan of the campaign, for three co-operative movements to attract the attention and divide the strength of the Confederate army before Richmond: 1. General Sigel, with ten thousand men, was to advance up the Shenandoah Valley and threaten the railroad communication with Richmond. He was, however, totally routed at *New Market* (May 15). General Hunter, who super-



GRANT'S CAMPAIGN AROUND RICHMOND.

**Attack on Petersburg.**—Grant now rapidly pushed his army over the James, and fell upon Petersburg; but here again Lee was ahead, and the works could not be forced. Grant was therefore compelled to throw up intrenchments and sit down in front of the Confederate lines. The campaign now resolved itself into a siege of Richmond, with Petersburg as its advanced post.

*The Effect.*—The campaign had cost the Union army forty thousand men, and the Confederates thirty thousand.\* The weakened capabilities of the South were now fairly pitted against the almost exhaustless resources of the North. Grant's plan was to keep constantly hammering Lee's army, conscious that it was the last hope of the Confederacy. The idea of thus annihilating an army was terrible, yet it seemed the only way of closing the awful struggle.

**The Siege of Richmond** continued until the spring campaign of 1865. It was marked by two important events:

1. *Mine Explosion* (July 30).—From a hidden ravine in front of Petersburg, a mine had been dug underneath a strong Confederate fort. Just at dawn, the blast of eight thousand pounds of powder was fired. Several cannon, the

seduced him, defeated the Confederates at *Piedmont* (June 5), but pushing on to Lynchburg with about twenty thousand men, he found it too strong, and prudently retired into West Virginia. 2. On the night that the Army of the Potomac crossed the Rapidan, General Butler, with thirty thousand men, ascended the James River, under the protection of gun-boats, and landed at *Bermuda Hundred*. After some trifling successes, he was surprised in a dense fog by Beauregard, and driven back into his defenses with considerable loss. Beauregard then threw intrenchments across the narrow strip which connects *Bermuda Hundred* with the main land, and, as Grant tersely said, "hermetically sealed up" the Union force from any further advance. 3. General Sheridan, while the army was at *Spottsylvania*, passed in the rear of the Confederate position, destroyed miles of railroad, recaptured four hundred prisoners *en route*, and defeated a cavalry force with the loss of their leader, General J. E. B. Stuart, the best cavalry officer in the South.

\* The above statement of the enormous losses of this campaign is based upon the most recent data. Careful authorities, however, have placed the Union loss as high as over seventy thousand, while certain Southern writers put the Confederate as low as nineteen thousand. It is impossible to reconcile the different accounts.

garrison of three hundred men, and huge masses of earth were thrown high in air. The Federal guns opened fire at once along the entire line. An assaulting column rushed forward, but stopped in the crater produced by the explosion. The Confederates, rallying from their confusion, concentrated from every side, and poured shot and shell upon the struggling mass of men huddled within the demolished fort. To retreat was only less dangerous than to stay, yet many of the soldiers jumped out of this slaughter-pen and ran headlong back to the Union lines. The Federals lost about four thousand men in this ill-starred affair.

2. *Attack upon the Weldon Railroad* (August 18).—By threatening Richmond upon the north, Grant induced Lee to move troops to that city from Petersburg. The opportunity was at once seized, and the Weldon Railroad captured. Lee, aware of the great importance of this means of communication with the South, for several days made desperate attempts for its recovery. They were, however, unsuccessful, and the Union lines were permanently advanced to this point.

**Early's Raid.**—Hunter's retreat (p. 262) having laid open the Shenandoah Valley, Lee took advantage of it to threaten Washington, hoping thus to draw off Grant from the siege of Richmond. General Early, with twenty thousand men, accordingly hurried along this oft-traveled route. Defeating General Wallace at MONOCACY RIVER, he appeared before FORT STEVENS, one of the defenses of Washington (July 10). Had he rushed by forced marches, he might have captured the city; but he stopped a day. Reinforcements having now arrived, he was compelled to retreat. Laden with booty, he rapidly recrossed the Potomac; but, not being pursued, he returned, and sent a party of cavalry into Pennsylvania. They entered Chambersburg, and, on failing to obtain a ran-

som of \$500,000, set fire to the village, and escaped safely back into the Shenandoah.

**Sheridan's Campaign.**—Sheridan was now put in command of all the troops in this region. He defeated Early at



“TURN, BOYS, TURN; WE'RE GOING BACK.”

WINCHESTER and FISHER'S HILL, and in a week destroyed half his army, and sent the rest “whirling up the valley of the Shenandoah”.\* Early was quickly reinforced, and, returning during Sheridan's absence, surprised his army at CEDAR CREEK (October 19), and drove it in confusion. Sheridan arrived at this critical moment,† reformed his ranks, ordered an advance, and, attacking the Confederates, now busy

\* In order to prevent any further raids upon Washington from this direction, Sheridan devastated the valley so thoroughly that it was said that “if a crow wants to fly down the Shenandoah, he must carry his provisions with him”.

† Early's attack was made under cover of a dense fog and the darkness of the early morning. General Wright, the Union commander, though wounded, remained on the field and managed to get his troops into a new position, about seven miles in the rear. Sheridan heard the cannonading, while riding from Winchester, nearly twenty miles from Cedar Creek. Knowing the importance of his presence, he put spurs to his coal-black steed, and never drew rein for almost twelve miles, when, his horse covered with foam, he dashed to the new front. As he passed the fugitives

plundering the captured camp, routed them with great slaughter.

• *The Effect.*—This campaign of only a month was one of the most brilliant of the war. Sheridan lost seventeen thousand men, but he virtually destroyed Early's army. This was the last attempt to threaten Washington.

**Red River Expedition.**\*—A joint naval and land expedition, under the command of General Banks, was sent up the Red River in the hope of destroying the Confederate authority in that region and in Texas (map opp. p. 222). Fort de Russy was taken (March 14), whence Banks moved on toward Shreveport. The line of march became extended a distance of nearly thirty miles along a single road. At SABINE CROSS ROADS (April 8), the Confederate forces, under General Dick Taylor, attacked the advance, and a miniature Bull Run retreat ensued. The Union troops, however, rallied at PLEASANT HILL, and the next day, reinforcements coming up from the rear, they were able to repulse the Confederates. The army thereupon returned to New Orleans,† and Banks was relieved of the command.

along the road, he shouted, "Turn, boys, turn; we're going back." Under the magnetism of his presence, the men followed him back to the fight and victory.

\* Troops having been sent from Vicksburg to join the Red River expedition, West Tennessee and Kentucky were left exposed to attack from the Confederates. Forrest, with five thousand men, captured Union City, Tenn., with its garrison of about five hundred troops, occupied Hickman, and advanced rapidly upon Paducah, Ky. This, protected by the gun-boats, maintained so stout a defense, that Forrest retired. Moving south, he next fell upon *Fort Pillow* (April 12). His men crept along under shelter of a ravine until very near, and then charged upon the intrenchments. Rushing into the fort, they raised the cry "No quarter!" "The Confederate officers", says Pollard, "lost control of their men, who were maddened by the sight of negro troops opposing them", and an indiscriminate slaughter followed.

† Porter, who commanded the gun-boats in the Red River, hearing of Banks' retreat, attempted to return with his fleet; but the river fell so rapidly that this became impossible. It was feared that it would be necessary to blow up the vessels to prevent their falling into the enemy's hands, when, by the happy suggestion of Colonel Bailey, formerly a Wisconsin lumber-man, they were saved. He constructed a series of wing-dams below the rapids, and, when the water rose, the boats were safely floated over. This skillful expedient was almost the only relieving feature of the

*The Effect.*—This campaign was a great Confederate triumph.\* Banks lost five thousand men, eighteen guns, and large supplies.

#### THE WAR ON THE SEA AND ON THE COAST.

**The Expedition against Mobile** (August 5) was under the command of Admiral Farragut. That he might oversee the battle more distinctly, he took his position in the rigging of his flag-ship—the Hartford. The vessels, lashed together in pairs for mutual assistance, in an hour fought their way past the Confederate forts, and engaged the iron-clad fleet beyond. After a desperate resistance, the great iron-ram Tennessee was taken, and the other vessels were captured or put to flight. The forts were soon after reduced, and the harbor was thenceforth closed to blockade runners.†

**The Expedition against Fort Fisher**, which defended the harbor of Wilmington, N. C., was commanded by Commodore Porter. It consisted of seventy vessels and a land force under General Butler. After a fierce bombardment (December 24, 25), Butler decided that the fort could not be taken by assault, and the army returned to Fort Monroe. Commo-

campaign, which was believed by some to have been undertaken simply as a gigantic cotton speculation in behalf of certain parties, who seemed to be more intent on gathering that staple than on conserving the interests of the Union cause. The failure was, therefore, at the North a source of great mortification and reproach.

\* General Steele, who commanded in Arkansas, had moved from Little Rock to co-operate in this advance; but, on nearing Shreveport, learned of Banks' retreat. He immediately turned around, and, with great difficulty and severe fighting, managed to escape back to Little Rock. This disaster enabled the Confederates to recover half of the State.

† The city of Mobile was not captured until the next year, when Generals Granter's, Steele's, and A. J. Smith's commands were collected for this purpose by Gen. Canby. The forts were gallantly defended by General Maury, but were taken within less than two weeks. The city itself was evacuated April 11. The next day, the Union troops entered, ignorant that Lee had surrendered three days before, and that the Confederacy was dead.

dore Porter, dissatisfied with the result, lay off the place, and asked for a second trial. The same troops, with fifteen hundred additional men, were sent back under General Terry. Protected by a terrible fire from the fleet, a column of sailors and one of soldiers worked their way, by a series of trenches, within two hundred yards of the fort. At the word, the former leaped forward on one side and the latter on another. The sailors were repulsed, but the soldiers burst into the fort. The hand-to-hand fight within lasted for hours. Late at night, the garrison, hemmed in on all sides, surrendered (January 15, 1865). One knows not which to admire the more, the gallantry of the attack or the heroism of the defense. In such a victory is glory, and in such a defeat, no disgrace.

**The Blockade** was now so effectual that the prices of all imported goods in the Confederate States were fabulous.\* Led by the enormous profits of a successful voyage, foreign merchants were constantly seeking to run the gauntlet. Their swift steamers, long, narrow, low, of a mud color, and making no smoke, occasionally escaped the vigilance of the Federal squadron. During the war, it is said, over fifteen hundred blockade runners were taken or destroyed. With the capture of Fort Fisher, the last Confederate port of entry was sealed.

\* Flour brought, in Confederate currency, \$40 per barrel; calico, \$30 per yard; coffee, \$50 per pound; French gloves, \$150 per pair; and black pepper, \$300 per pound. Dried sage, raspberry, and other leaves were substituted for the costly tea. Woolen clothing was scarce, and the army depended largely on captures of the ample Federal stores. Pins were so rare that they were picked up with avidity in the streets. Paper was so expensive that matches could no longer be put in boxes. Sugar, butter, and white bread became luxuries even for the wealthy. Salt being a necessity, was economized to the last degree, old pork and fish barrels being soaked and the water evaporated so that not a grain of salt might be wasted. Women wore garments that were made of cloth carded, woven, spun, and dyed by their own hands. Large thorns were fitted with wax heads and made to serve as hair-pins. Shoes were manufactured with wooden soles, to which the uppers were attached by means of small tacks. As a substitute for the expensive gas, the "Confederate candle" was used. This consisted of a long wick coated with wax and resin, and wound on a little wooden frame, at the top of which was nailed a bit of tin. The end of the wick being passed through a hole in the tin, was lighted and uncoiled as needed.

**Confederate Cruisers** had now practically driven the American commerce from the ocean. They were not privateers, like those named on p. 222, for they were built in England and manned by British sailors, and were only officered



SINKING THE ALABAMA.

and commissioned by the Confederate government. They sailed to and fro upon the track of American ships, recklessly plundering and burning, or else bonding them for heavy sums.

*The Alabama* was the most noted of these British steamers. Against the urgent remonstrances of the United States Minister at the Court of England, she was allowed to sail, although her mission was well known. An English captain took her to the Azores, where other English vessels brought her arms, ammunition, and the Confederate Captain Semmes with additional men. Putting out to sea, he read his commission and announced his purpose. After capturing over sixty vessels, he sailed to Cherbourg, France. While there, he sent out a challenge to the national ship-of-war KEARSARGE (keer' sarj). This was accepted, and a battle took place off that harbor. Captain Winslow, of the Kearsarge, so maneuvered that the Alabama was compelled to move round in a circular track, while he trained his guns upon her with fearful effect. On the seventh rotation, the Confederate vessel ran up the white flag and soon after sunk. Captain Winslow rescued a part of the sinking crew, and others were picked up, at his request, by the Deer-hound, an English yacht; but this vessel steamed off to the British coast with those she had saved, among whom was Captain Semmes.

**The Sanitary and Christian Commissions** were "splendid examples of organized mercy", furnished by the people of the North. They devised and provided every possible comfort for the sick and wounded, besides distributing religious reading to every soldier in the field. Ambulances, stretchers, hot coffee, postage-stamps, paper and envelopes, prayer-meetings, medicines, Christian burial,—no want of body or soul was overlooked. "Homes" and "Lodges" for men on sick-leave, and for those not yet under or just out of the care of the government, or who had been left by their regiments; "Feeding Stations" for the tired and hungry; and even "Homes for the Wives, Mothers, and Children of Soldiers" who had come to visit their sick or wounded were established. On every flag-of-truce boat, were placed clothing, medicines, and cordials for the prisoners who had been exchanged. With boundless mercy, they cared for all while living, and gave Christian burial and marked graves to the dead. Over seventeen millions of dollars in money and supplies were expended by these two Commissions.

**Political Affairs.**—At the North, there was much dissatisfaction with the conduct of the war. The debt had become about \$2,000,000,000. In July of this year, paper money reached its greatest depreciation, and it required two dollars and ninety cents in greenbacks to buy one dollar in gold. It was at the time of Grant's repulse from Cold Harbor and of Early's raid. Yet, in the midst of these discouragements, Abraham Lincoln was renominated by the republican party. George B. McClellan was the democratic candidate; he stood firmly for the prosecution of the war, and the maintenance of the Union, but was not in full sympathy with the policy of the administration. He carried only three States. Lincoln had a popular majority of over four hundred thousand.

**General Review of the Fourth Year of the War.**—The Confederates had gained the battles of Olustee,\* Sabine Cross Roads, the Wilderness, Bermuda Hundred, Spottsylvania, New Market, Cold Harbor, and Monocacy; had defeated the expeditions into Florida and the Red River country, the two attacks upon Petersburg, and one against Fort Fisher, and yet held Grant at bay before Richmond. They had, however, lost ground on every side. Of the States east of the Mississippi, only North and South Carolina were fully retained. Mississippi, Alabama, Tennessee, Virginia, Georgia, and Florida were overrun by the Union armies. The Federals had gained the battles of Pleasant Hill, Resaca, Dallas, Kenesaw, Atlanta, Winchester, Fisher's Hill, Cedar Creek, and Nashville. They had captured Fort de Russy, the forts in Mobile harbor, and Fort McAlister, and had taken Atlanta and Savannah. Sherman had swept across Georgia; Sheridan had devastated the Shenandoah, driving its defenders before him; Thomas had annihilated Hood's army; Grant held Lee firmly grasped at Richmond, and the navy swept the entire coast.

1865.

**The Situation.**—The plan of the campaign was very simple. The end of the war was clearly at hand. Sherman was to move north from Savannah against Johnston, and then join Grant in the final attack upon Lee. Sheridan, with ten thousand troopers, had swept down from the Shenandoah, cut the railroads north of Richmond, and taken his place

\* This battle ended an expedition fitted out by General Gillmore, at Hilton Head, S. C., to recover Florida. After some success, his troops, under General Seymour, advanced to *Olustee*, where (February 20) they met a disastrous defeat and were forced to relinquish much they had gained. The men were afterward taken to Virginia to engage in more important work.

in the Union lines before Petersburg. Wilson, with thirteen thousand horsemen, rode at large through Alabama and Georgia, and at Macon held a line of retreat from Virginia westward. Stoneman, with five thousand cavalry from Tennessee, poured through the passes of the Alleghanies and waited in North Carolina for the issue in Virginia.



SHERMAN'S ARMY ON ITS MARCH TO THE SEA.

**Sherman's March through the Carolinas.**—In the meantime, Sherman had given his troops only a month's rest in Savannah. Early in February, they were put in motion northward. There was no waiting for roads to dry nor for bridges to be built, but the troops swept on like a tornado. Rivers were waded, and "one battle was fought while the water was up to the shoulders of the men". The army, sixty thousand strong, moved in four columns, with a front of

more than fifty miles. Cavalry and foragers swarmed on the flanks. Before them was terror; behind them were ashes.

Columbia was captured (Feb. 17). That night, nearly the entire city was burned to the ground. Charleston, threatened in the rear, was evacuated the next day. In this emergency, Johnston was recalled to the command of the Confederates. He gathered the scattered troops and vigorously opposed Sherman's advance. After fierce engagements at **EVERYSBORO** and **BENTONVILLE**, he was driven back. While Johnston was now guarding the route to Raleigh, Sherman pressed forward to Goldsboro, in order to join Schofield, who had made his way thither from Wilmington, and Terry, who had come up from New Bern. Soon, the three armies united, and 100,000 men upheld the flag of the Union along the banks of the Neuse.\* Sherman then went to City Point, to arrange with Grant the plan of the final struggle.

**Siege of Richmond.**—Lee's position was fast becoming desperate. His only hope lay in getting out of Richmond and joining with Johnston. Their united armies might prolong the struggle. Grant was determined to prevent this, and compel Lee to surrender, as he had forced Pemberton to do.

**Attack on Fort Steadman** (March 25).—Lee decided to attack Grant's right, in order to hide his plan of retreat, and especially in the hope that Grant would send troops from the left to succor the threatened point. In that case, he would slip out, with the main body of his army, by the nearest road southward, which ran close by the Union left. The assault was made on Fort Steadman, but it was a signal failure. Three thousand out of five thousand engaged in the attempt

\* The distance traversed by the army in going from Savannah to Goldsboro was about 425 miles. The country was generally wild and swampy. To make the mud roads passable, each column "corduroyed" with rails and logs over a hundred miles, besides building bridges across the many streams and rivers. Yet in fifty days after breaking camp upon the Savannah, the troops bivouacked upon the Neuse.

were lost. To make matters worse, a Union assault followed directly afterward, and a portion of the Confederate outer defenses was captured. Thus Grant's grip was only tightened. He had made no change in the position of his troops; and this sortie neither hastened nor delayed the grand final attack.

**Battle of Five Forks** (April 1).—This movement began Wednesday morning, March 29. Sheridan with his cavalry—nine thousand sabers, and heavy columns of infantry, pushed out from Grant's left wing, to get around in Lee's rear. Cloaking his plan by a thick screen of cavalry to conceal the movements of his infantry, he threw a heavy force behind the Confederate position at **FIVE FORKS**.\* Assailed in front and rear, the garrison was overwhelmed, and five thousand men were taken prisoners.

*The Effect* of this brilliant affair was at once to render Lee's position untenable. His right was turned and his rear threatened.

**Capture of Petersburg and Richmond** (April 2, 3).—The next morning, at four o'clock, the Union army advanced in an overwhelming assault along the whole front. By noon, the Confederate line of intrenchments, before which the Army of the Potomac had lain so long, was broken, and thousands of prisoners were captured. That night, Petersburg and Richmond were evacuated. The next morning, the Union troops took possession of the Confederate capital,† the

\* Five Forks is situated twelve miles south-west from Petersburg. (See map opposite p. 223, and of *VIth Epoch*.)

† Sunday, the day before, the Confederate President, Davis, was at church, when a note was handed him by a messenger. It was from Lee, informing him that the Confederate army was about to leave Richmond. His pallid face and unsteady footsteps, as he passed out, betrayed the news. Pollard says: "Men, women, and children rushed from the churches, passing from lip to lip news of the impending fall of Richmond. . . . It was late in the afternoon when the signs of evacuation became apparent to the incredulous. Suddenly, as if by magic, the streets became filled with men, walking as though for a wager, and behind them excited negroes with trunks,

coveted goal of the Army of the Potomac for four long bloody years.

**Lee's Surrender.**—Meanwhile, Lee, having only the wreck of that proud array with which he had dealt the Union army so many crushing blows, hurried west, seeking some avenue of escape. Grant urged the pursuit with untiring energy. Sheridan, "with a terrible daring which knew no pause, no rest", hung on his flanks. Food now failed the Confederates, and they could get only the young shoots of trees to eat. If they sought a moment's repose, they were awakened by the clatter of pursuing cavalry. Lee, like a hunted fox, turned hither and thither; but, at last, Sheridan planted himself squarely across the front. Lee ordered a charge. His half-starved troops, with a rallying of their old courage, obeyed. But the cavalry moving aside, as a curtain is drawn, revealed dense bodies of infantry in battle line. The Civil War was about to end in one of its bloodiest tragedies, when the Confederate advance was stopped. General Grant had already sent in a note demanding the surrender of the army. Lee accepted the terms;\* and, April 9, eight thousand men—the remains of the Army of Virginia, laid

bundles, and luggage of every description. All over the city, it was the same—wagons, trunks, bandboxes, and their owners, a mass of hurrying fugitives filling the streets. Night came, and with it confusion worse confounded. There was no sleep for human eyes in Richmond that night. About the hour of midnight, hundreds of barrels of liquor were rolled into the street, and the heads knocked in, by order of the City Council, to prevent a worse disorder. As the work progressed, some straggling soldiers managed to get hold of a quantity of the liquor. From that moment, law and order ceased to exist." By order of General Ewell, the four principal tobacco warehouses, in different parts of the city, were fired, and soon the flames became unmanageable. "Morning broke upon a scene such as those who witnessed it can never forget. The roar of an immense conflagration sounded in their ears; tongues of flame leaped from street to street; and in this baleful glare were to be seen, as of demons, the figures of busy plunderers, moving, pushing, rioting through the black smoke, bearing away every conceivable sort of plunder."

\* The officers and men were allowed to go home on their paroles not to take up arms against the United States until exchanged, and the former to retain their private baggage and horses. After the surrender had been concluded, General Lee said





Military Heroes of the Civil War.

down their arms near Appomattox Court House, and then turned homeward, no longer Confederate soldiers, but American citizens.

*The Effect.*—This closed the war. The other Confederate armies promptly surrendered.\* Jefferson Davis fled southward, hoping to escape, but was overtaken near Irwingsville, Georgia (May 10), and sent a prisoner to Fort Monroe.

**Cost of the War.**—In the Union armies, probably three hundred thousand men were killed in battle or died of wounds or disease, while doubtless two hundred thousand more were crippled for life. If the Confederate armies suffered as heavily, the country thus lost one million able-bodied men. The Union debt, when largest (Aug. 31, 1865), was \$2,844,000,000. The Confederate war debts were never paid, as that government was overthrown.

**Assassination of Lincoln.**—In the midst of the universal rejoicings over the advent of peace, on the evening of April 14 the intelligence was flashed over the country that Lincoln had been assassinated.† While seated with his wife and friends in his box at Ford's Theater, he was shot by John Wilkes Booth,‡ who insanely imagined he

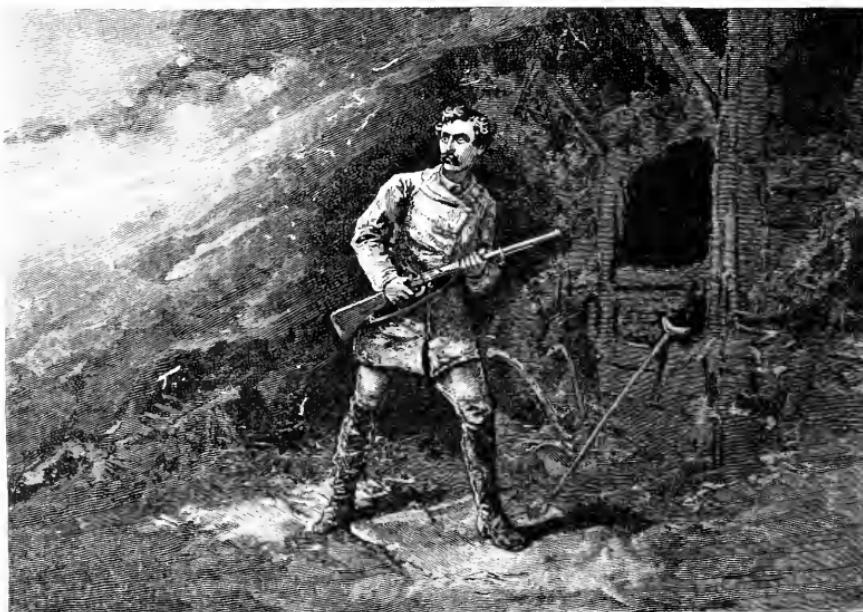
that he had forgotten to mention that many of his soldiers rode their own horses. Grant at once replied that such should keep their horses to aid them in their future work at home. The two armies so fiercely opposed for four years parted with no words but those of sympathy and respect—an assured presage of a day when all the wounds of the cruel war should be fully healed. The Confederate accounts place the number who surrendered at 8,000. The Federal authorities, however, state that 27,516 officers and men were paroled at Appomattox C. H., and 22,633 small arms were given up. The total number paroled from all the Confederate armies was 174,223.

\* The last fight of the war happened near Brazos Santiago, Texas, May 13. A small expedition sent out to surprise a Confederate camp was overtaken, on its return, by a larger force and defeated with a loss of eighty men.

† A nearly fatal attempt was also made at the same time upon William H. Seward, Secretary of State, who was lying sick in his bed at home.

‡ Booth stealthily entered the box, fastened the door, that he might not be followed, shot the President, then, waving his pistol, shouted, "Sic semper tyrannis" (so be it always to tyrants), and leaped to the stage in front. As he jumped, the American

was ridding his country of a tyrant. The stricken President was carried to a private house near by, where, about his unconscious body, gathered the most prominent men of the nation, who mourned and watched, waiting in vain for some sign of recognition until the next morning, when he



CAPTURE OF BOOTH.

died. The funeral was held on the 19th. It was a day of mourning throughout the land. In most of the cities and towns, funeral orations were pronounced. The body was borne to Springfield over the same route along which Lincoln had come as President elect to Washington. The

flag draped before the box—mute avenger of the nation's chief,—caught his spur, and, throwing him heavily, broke his leg. The assassin, however, escaped from the house in the confusion, mounted a horse which was waiting for him, and fled into Maryland. He was at length overtaken in a barn, where he stood at bay. The building was fired to drive him out, but, being determined to defend himself against arrest, he was shot by one of the soldiers. The accomplices of Booth were arrested, tried, and convicted. Harrold, Payne, Atzerott, and Mrs. Surratt were hanged; Arnold, Mudd, and McLaughlin were imprisoned for life; and Spangler was sentenced for six years.

procession may be said to have extended the entire distance. The churches, principal buildings, and even the engines and cars were draped in black. Almost every citizen wore the badge of mourning.

**States Added during this Epoch.**—*West Virginia*, the thirty-fifth State, was admitted to the Union, June 19, 1863. During the Civil War, this portion of Virginia remaining loyal, it was organized as a separate State.

*Nevada*, the thirty-sixth State, was admitted to the Union, October 31, 1864. Its name was derived from the range of mountains on the west, the Sierra Nevada, a Spanish title, signifying “Snow-covered mountains”. It was the third State carved out of the Territory acquired by the Mexican war, Texas being the first, and California the second. Its first settlement was at Carson City. It is one of the richest mineral States in the Union.

#### CHRONOLOGICAL SUMMARY.

	PAGE
1861. Abraham Lincoln inaugurated, March 4 . . . . .	215
Fort Sumter fired upon, April 12 . . . . .	216
Massachusetts troops fired upon in Baltimore, April 19 . . . . .	217
Battle of Philippi, Va., June 3 . . . . .	218
“ Big Bethel, Va., June 10 . . . . .	218
“ Boonville, Mo., June 17 . . . . .	221
“ Carthage, Mo., July 5 . . . . .	221
“ Rich Mountain, Va., July 11 . . . . .	218
“ Carrick's Ford, Va., July 14 . . . . .	218
Battle of Bull Run, Va., July 21 . . . . .	219
“ Wilson's Creek, Mo., August 10 . . . . .	221
Forts at Hatteras Inlet, N. C., captured, August 29 . . . . .	222
Battle of Carnifex Ferry, Va., September 10 . . . . .	218
“ Lexington, Mo., September 20 . . . . .	221
“ Ball's Bluff, Va., October 21 . . . . .	220
Port Royal, S. C., taken, November 7 . . . . .	222
Battle of Belmont, Mo., November 7 . . . . .	221
Seizure of Mason and Slidell, November 8 . . . . .	223
Skirmish of Dranesville, Va., December 20 . . . . .	221
1862. Battle of Mill Spring, Ky., January 19 . . . . .	224
Fort Henry, Tenn., taken, February 6 . . . . .	224

	PAGE
1862. Roanoke Island, N. C., taken, February 8 . . . . .	232
Fort Donelson, Tenn., taken, February 16 . . . . .	225
Battle of Pea Ridge, Ark., March 7, 8 . . . . .	230
" of the Monitor and the Merrimac, March 9 . . . . .	233
New Bern, N. C., taken, March 14 . . . . .	232
Battle of Shiloh (Pittsburg Landing), Tenn., April 6, 7 . . . . .	225
Island No. 10 captured, April 7 . . . . .	227
Fort Pulaski, Ga., captured, April 11 . . . . .	233
New Orleans captured, April 25 . . . . .	230
Beaufort, N. C., captured, April 25 . . . . .	232
Yorktown, Va., taken, May 4 . . . . .	235
Battle of Williamsburg, Va., May 5 . . . . .	236
Norfolk, Va., surrendered, May 10 . . . . .	235
Corinth, Miss., taken, May 30 . . . . .	227
Battle of Fair Oaks or Seven Pines, Va., May 31, June 1 . . . . .	238
Memphis, Tenn., surrendered, June 6 . . . . .	227
Seven-Days battles, June 25-July 1 . . . . .	239
Battle of Cedar Mountain, Va., August 9 . . . . .	240
Second Battle of Bull Run, Va., August 29, 30 . . . . .	241
Battle of Richmond, Ky., August 30 . . . . .	228
" Chantilly, Va., September 1 . . . . .	241
" South Mountain, Md., September 14 . . . . .	241
Harper's Ferry surrendered, September 15 . . . . .	241
Battle of Antietam, Md., September 17 . . . . .	241
" Iuka, Miss., September 19 . . . . .	228
" Corinth, Miss., October 4 . . . . .	228
" Perryville, Ky., October 8 . . . . .	228
" Fredericksburg, Va., December 13 . . . . .	242
First attack on Vicksburg, Miss., December 29 . . . . .	230
Battle of Murfreesboro, Tenn., December 31, and January 2, 1863 . . . . .	229
1863. Emancipation Proclamation, January 1 . . . . .	242, 244
Arkansas Post taken, January 11 . . . . .	230
Fort Sumter, S. C., bombarded by fleet, April 7 . . . . .	254, 255
Grant's campaign before Vicksburg, May 1-17 . . . . .	244
Battle of Chancellorsville, Va., May 2, 3 . . . . .	250
West Virginia admitted to the Union, June 19 . . . . .	218, 277
Battle of Gettysburg, Penn., July 1-3 . . . . .	252
Vicksburg, Miss., surrendered, July 4 . . . . .	245
Port Hudson surrendered, July 8 . . . . .	245
Draft Riot in New York City, July 13-16 . . . . .	252
Fort Wagner, S. C., taken, September 7 . . . . .	254
Battle of Chickamauga, Ga., September 19, 20 . . . . .	246
" Chattanooga, Tenn., November 24, 25 . . . . .	247
Siege of Knoxville, Tenn., raised, December 4 . . . . .	250
1864. Battle of Olustee, Fla., February 20 . . . . .	270
Fort de Russy captured, March 14 . . . . .	265
Fort Pillow, Tenn., captured, April 12 . . . . .	265
Butler landed at Bermuda Hundred, May 5 . . . . .	262
Battle of Wilderness, Va., May 5, 6 . . . . .	260

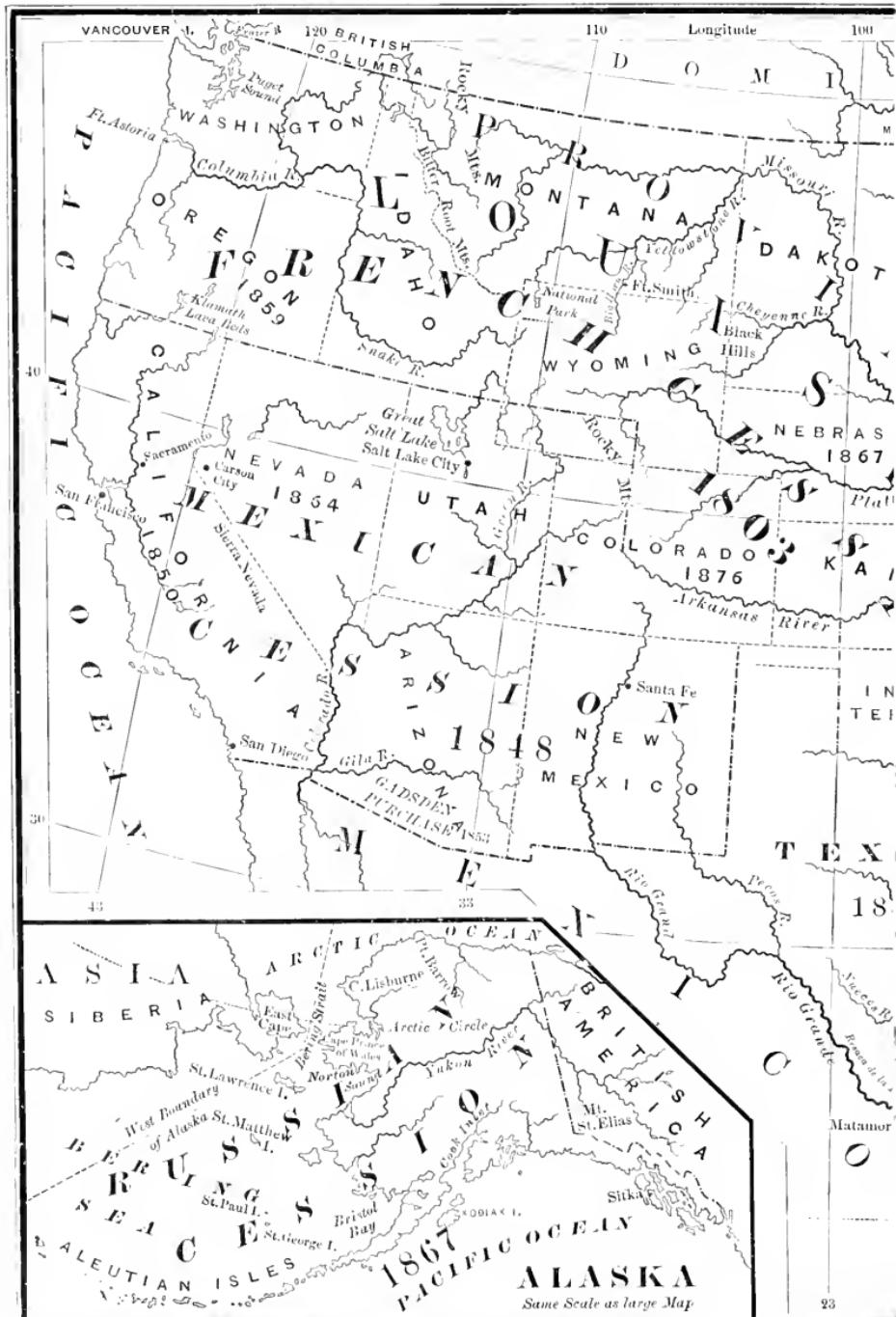
	PAGE
1864. Battle of Spottsylvania, Va., May 8-12 . . . . .	260
" Resaca, Ga., May 14, 15 . . . . .	257
" New Market, Va., May 15 . . . . .	261
" Dallas, May 25-28 . . . . .	257
" Cold Harbor, Va., June 3 . . . . .	261
" Lost Mountain, Ga., June 15-17 . . . . .	257
Battle between the Kearsarge and the Alabama, June 19 . . . . .	268
Battle of Kenesaw Mt., Ga., June 27 . . . . .	257
" Monocacy, Md., July 9 . . . . .	263
Battles before Atlanta, Ga., July 20, 22, 28 . . . . .	257
Chambersburg, Pa., burned, July 30 . . . . .	264
Mine explosion, Petersburg, Va., July 30 . . . . .	262
Farragut entered Mobile Bay, Ala., August 5 . . . . .	266
Weldon Railroad seized, August 18 . . . . .	263
Atlanta, Ga., taken, September 2 . . . . .	257
Battle of Winchester, Va., September 19 . . . . .	264
" Fisher's Hill, Va., September 22 . . . . .	264
" Cedar Creek, Va., October 19 . . . . .	264
Nevada admitted to the Union, October 31 . . . . .	277
Fort McAlister, Ga., taken, December 13 . . . . .	259
Battle of Nashville, Tenn., December 15, 16 . . . . .	258
1865. Fort Fisher, N. C., taken, January 15 . . . . .	267
Columbia, S. C., taken, February 17 . . . . .	272
Charleston, S. C., taken, February 18 . . . . .	272
Battles of Averysboro and Bentonville, N. C., March 15, 18 . . . . .	272
Attack on Fort Steadman, Va., March 25 . . . . .	272
Battle of Five Forks, Va., April 1 . . . . .	273
Petersburg and Richmond taken, April 2, 3 . . . . .	273
Lee's army surrendered, April 9 . . . . .	274, 275
President Lincoln assassinated, April 14 . . . . .	275
Johnston's army surrendered, April 26 . . . . .	275
Jefferson Davis captured, May 10 . . . . .	275

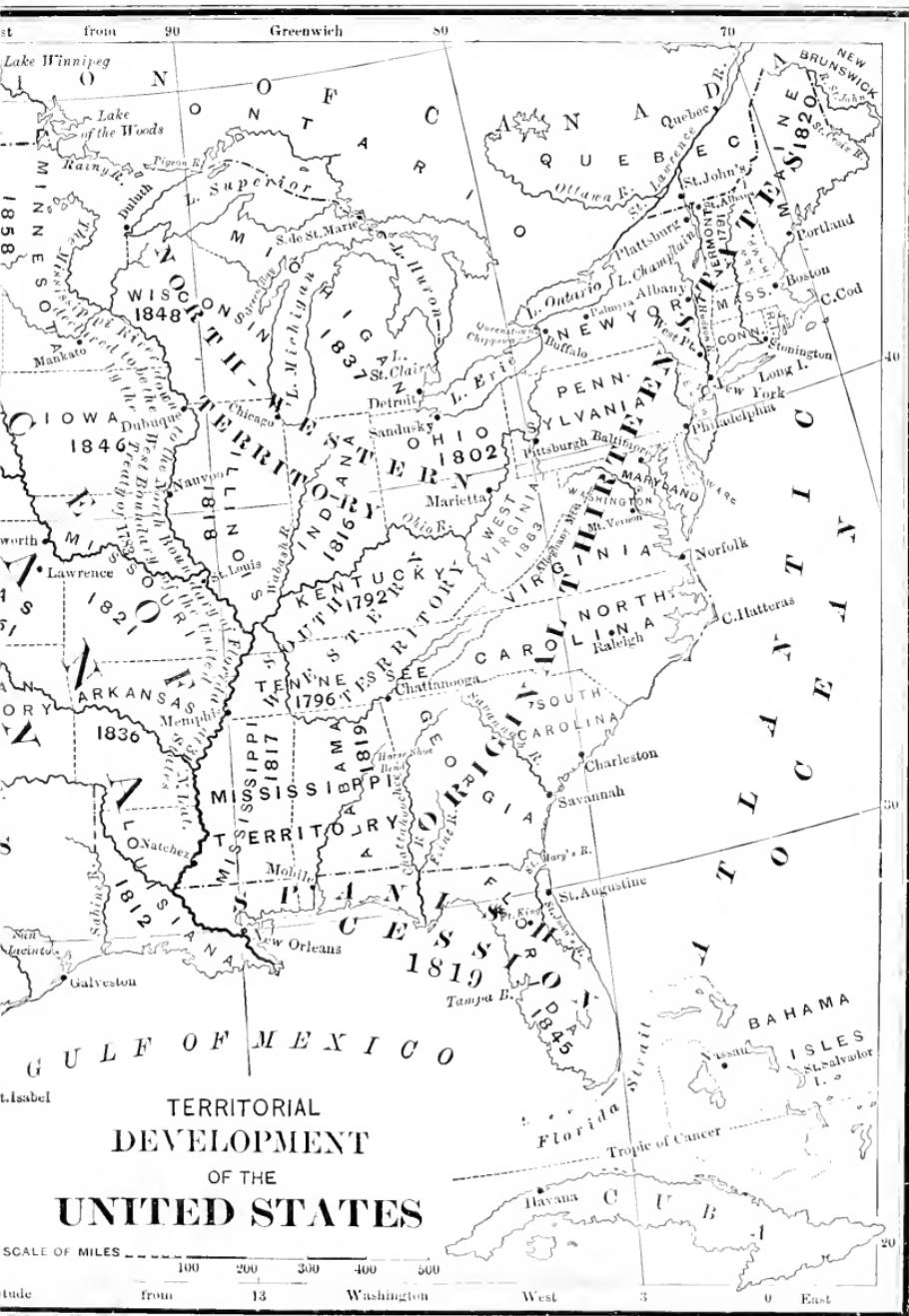
## REFERENCES FOR READING.

*Draper, Greeley, Stephens, Abbott, Pollard, Lossing, and Headley on the Civil War.—Nichols' Story of the Great March.—Swinton's Army of the Potomac, and Twelve Decisive Battles.—Dubney's Life of Stonewall Jackson.—Badeau's Military History of General Grant.—Headley's Farragut, and Our Naval Commanders.—Coffin's Days and Nights on the Battle Field.—Boydton's American Navy.—Stille's History of the Sanitary Commission.—Johnston's Narrative of Military Operations.—Harper's Pictorial History of the War.—Duyckinck's History, and Lives of Eminent Americans.—Harrington's Inside.—Gillmore's Among the Guerrillas, and Down in Tennessee.—W. G. Simms' War Poetry of the South.—Richardson's Field, Dungeon, and Escape.—Hotchkiss and Allan's Battle Fields of Virginia.—Early's Army of Northern Virginia.—Whittier's In War Time (Poem).—Cooke's Life of General Robert E. Lee.—Memoirs of Gen. W. T. Sherman.—Davis' Rise and Fall of the Southern Confederacy.—A Series of Articles on the Battles and Leaders of the Civil War, *Century Magazine*, Vol. 29.—Campaigns of the Civil War.—Coffin's "The Boys of '61."—Personal Memoirs of General U. S. Grant.*

EPOCH V. THE CIVIL WAR.	1861.	1. Inauguration of Lincoln.
		2. Condition of the Country.
		3. Capture of Fort Sumter.
		1. Capture of Arlington Heights. 2. Battle of Big Bethel.
		3. Campaign in West Virginia. 4. Battle of Bull Run. 5. Ball's Bluff.
		6. War in Virginia. 7. War in Missouri.
		6. War on the Sea and the Coast. 7. General Review of the First Year of the War.
		1. The Situation.
		1. The Federal Strategy. 2. Capture of Forts Henry and Donelson. 3. Battle of Shiloh. 4. Capture of Island No. 10. 5. Bragg's Expedition. 6. Battles of Iuka and Corinth. 7. Battle of Murfreesboro. 8. First Vicksburg Expedition. 9. War in Missouri.
		3. War on the Sea and the Coast. 1. Capture of New Orleans. 2. Burnside's Expedition. 3. Florida and Georgia Expeditions. 4. Merrimac and Monitor.
	1862.	1. The Peninsular Campaign.
		2. Campaign against Pope. 3. Invasion of Maryland. 4. Battle of Fredericksburg.
		5. General Review of the Second Year of the War.
		1. The Situation.
		2. Second Expedition against Vicksburg. 3. War in Tennessee and Georgia. 4. War in East Tennessee.
		5. The War in the East. 6. The War on the Sea and the Coast.
		7. General Review of the Third Year of the War.
		1. The Situation.
		2. The War in Tennessee and Georgia. 3. The War in Virginia.
		4. The Red River Expedition. 5. The War on the Sea and the Coast. 6. The Sanitary and Christian Commissions. 7. Political Affairs at the North 8. General Review of the Fourth Year of the War.
1865.	1861.	1. Situation. 2. Sherman's March through the Carolinas.
		3. Siege of Richmond. 4. Lee's Surrender.
		5. Cost of the War.
		6. Assassination of Lincoln.
		7. States added during this Epoch.
		a. <i>General McClellan.</i> b. <i>General Rosecrans.</i> c. <i>General Lee.</i>
		a. <i>Siege of Yorktown.</i> b. <i>Battle of Williamsburg.</i> c. <i>Richmond Threatened.</i> d. <i>Jackson in the Shenandoah.</i> e. <i>Battle of Fair Oaks.</i> f. <i>The Union Army Checked.</i> g. <i>Seven-Days Battles.</i> a. <i>The Situation.</i> b. <i>Lee's Plan.</i> c. <i>Second Battle of Bull Run.</i> a. <i>The Situation.</i> b. <i>Battle of South Mountain.</i> c. <i>Capture of Harper's Ferry.</i> d. <i>Battle of Antietam.</i>









# EPOCH VI.

RECONSTRUCTION AND  
PASSING EVENTS.



## JOHNSON'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(SEVENTEENTH PRESIDENT: 1865-1869.)

THE death of Lincoln produced no disorder, and within three hours thereafter the Vice-President, Andrew Johnson, quietly assumed the duties of the Presidency.

**Disbanding of the Army.**—At the close of the war, the Union army numbered 1,000,000 soldiers. Within six months, they had nearly all returned home. Thus the mightiest host ever called to the field by a republic went back without disturbance to the tranquil pursuits of civil life. In a short time, there was nothing to distinguish the soldier from the citizen, except the recollection of his bravery. Other nations prophesied that such a vast army

*Questions on the Geography of the Sixth Epoch.*—Locate Raleigh. Heart's Content, and St. John's, Newfoundland (see map, Epoch II.). Alaska. St. Albans, Vt. Buffalo. Mt. Pleasant, O. (map, Epoch V.). West Point. Chicago. Boston. Duluth. Puget's Sound. San Francisco. Klamath Lava Beds, Oregon.

---

\* Andrew Johnson was born in Raleigh, N. C., 1808; died, 1875. When ten years old, he was apprenticed to a tailor. Never having been at school, he yet determined to secure an education. From a fellow-workman, he learned the alphabet, and from a friend, something of spelling. Thenceforth, after working ten to twelve hours per day at his trade, he spent two or three hours every night in study. In 1826, he went west to seek his fortune, with true filial affection carrying with him his mother, who was dependent on his labor for support. After his marriage at Greenville, Tenn.,

could not be disbanded peaceably. The republic, by this final triumph of law and order, proved itself the most stable government in the world.\*

**Domestic Affairs.**—*Reconstruction Policy of the President.*—Johnson recognized the State governments that, during the war, had been formed in Virginia, Tennessee, Arkansas, and Louisiana, under the protection of the Union army. In the other States, he appointed provisional governors, and authorized the calling of conventions to form loyal governments. These conventions accordingly met, repealed the ordinances of secession, repudiated the Confederate war debt, and ratified the amendment which Congress had offered abolishing slavery. On these conditions, Johnson claimed that the States, having never been legally out of the Union, should be restored to their rights in the Union. He also issued a proclamation of pardon to those who had engaged in secession, except certain classes,† on the condition of taking the oath of allegiance to the United States.

In 1868, on Christmas day—most fitting time for deeds of good-will—a UNIVERSAL AMNESTY was declared.

*The Thirteenth Amendment*, abolishing slavery, having been ratified by the States, was declared (December 18, 1865) duly adopted as a part of the Constitution of the United States.

He continued his studies under the instruction of his wife, pursuing his trade as before by day. His political life commenced with his election as alderman. He was successively chosen mayor, member of legislature, presidential elector, State senator, twice governor, and thrice U. S. senator.

\* A grand review of the armies of Grant and Sherman, two hundred thousand strong, took place in the presence of the President and his Cabinet. For twelve hours, this triumphal procession, thirty miles long, massed in solid column twenty men deep, rolled through the broad avenues of the Capital.

† Many of the persons thus excluded obtained pardons from the President by personal application. One complaint against him was the readiness with which he granted such pardons.

*Public Debt.*—The annual interest on the debt was now (August 31, 1865) over \$150,000,000. The revenue from duties on imported goods, taxes on manufactures, incomes, etc., and from the sale of revenue stamps, was \$322,000,000. This provided not only for the current expenses of the government, and the payment of interest, but also for the gradual extinction of the debt. It is a striking evidence of the abundant resources of the country that, in 1866, before all the extra troops called out by the war had been discharged, the debt had been diminished \$71,000,000.

*Reconstruction Policy of Congress.*—On the assembling of Congress, decided ground was taken against the policy of the President. It was claimed that Congress alone had power to prescribe the conditions for the admission of the seceded States. His proclamation and orders were treated as of no value. The Freedmen's Bureau, Civil Rights, and Tenure-of-Office bills\* were all passed over the President's veto.

*The Seceded States Admitted.*—Tennessee promptly ratified the Fourteenth Amendment, and was restored to her former position in the Union. The other provisional governments having refused to do so, a bill was passed placing those States under military rule. The generals in command caused a registry of voters to be made, and elections to be held for conventions to remodel the State constitutions. After a bitter and protracted struggle, governments were established in Arkansas, Alabama, Florida, Georgia, Louisiana, and North and South Carolina,† and their repre-

\* The first bill provided for the establishment of a department of the national government for the care and protection of the freedmen, *i.e.*, the emancipated slaves, and also of the destitute whites at the South. The second bill guaranteed to the negroes the rights of citizenship. The third bill made the consent of the Senate necessary to the removal by the President of any person from a civil office.

† As a requisite demanded by Congress for holding office, every candidate was obliged to swear that he had not participated in the secession movement. Since

sentatives admitted to Congress (1868), over the President's veto, after an unrepresented period of seven years.

*Impeachment of the President.*—The constantly-increasing hostility between the President and Congress came to an issue when the former attempted to remove Edwin M. Stanton, Secretary of War. This being considered a violation of the Tenure-of-Office bill, the impeachment of the President was at last ordered (1868). After a tedious trial, he was acquitted, the two thirds majority necessary for conviction lacking one vote.

*The Fourteenth Amendment* proposed by Congress, guaranteeing equal civil rights to all, regardless of race or color, and basing representation in each State on the number of voters, was adopted (July 28, 1868).

*Fenian Excitement* (1866).—The Fenians, a secret society organized for the purpose of delivering Ireland from British rule, crossed the Canadian frontier at Buffalo, N. Y., and St. Albans, Vt., in large numbers. President Johnson issued a proclamation declaring the movement a violation of our neutrality, and sent thither General Meade to execute the laws. After some skirmishing with British troops, the expedition returned.

*Foreign Affairs.*—*Purchase of Alaska* (October, 1867).—Through the diplomacy of William H. Seward, Secretary of State, Alaska was purchased of Russia for \$7,200,000 in gold. It contains about 500,000 square miles, but is principally valuable for its harbors, furs, and fisheries.

*The French in Mexico.*—While the United States was absorbed in the civil war, Napoleon III., Emperor of France, took advantage of the opportunity to secure a foothold in

few Southerners could take this "iron-clad oath", as it was termed, most of the representatives were Northern men who had gone south after the war, and were, therefore, called "carpet-baggers".

America. By the assistance of the French army, the imperialists of Mexico defeated the liberals, and Maximilian, Archduke of Austria, was chosen emperor. The United States government protested against the measure, but was unable to enforce the "Monroe doctrine". When the American people were relieved from the pressure of civil strife, they turned their attention to the Mexicans hope-



LANDING THE ATLANTIC CABLE AT HEART'S CONTENT.

lessly struggling for liberty, and the United States government demanded of Napoleon the recall of the French troops. Maximilian, deprived of foreign aid, was defeated, and, falling into the hands of the Mexican liberals, was shot (June 19, 1867). This ended the dream of French dominion on this continent.

*Laying of the Atlantic Cable.*—While these great political events were happening, science achieved a peaceful triumph whose importance far transcended the victories of

diplomatic or military skill. A telegraphic cable 1,864 miles in length, was laid from Valentia Bay, in Ireland, to Heart's Content, Newfoundland.\* The two continents were thus brought into almost instant communication.

*Treaty with China* (1868).—An embassy from the Chinese Empire, under the charge of Anson Burlingame, American ambassador to China, visited the United States. It was the first event of its kind in the history of that exclusive nation. A treaty was perfected, granting to us valuable commercial privileges.

**Political Parties.**—The republican party nominated General Ulysses S. Grant, of Illinois, for President, and Schuyler Colfax, of Indiana, for Vice-President. The democratic party nominated Horatio Seymour, of New York, and General Frank P. Blair, of Missouri. Virginia, Mississippi, and Texas were not allowed to vote. As the other Southern States had been “reconstructed”, had granted negro suffrage, and enforced a strict registry law, they were permitted to participate in the election. Grant and Colfax were elected.

\* The success of this enterprise was due to the energy of Cyrus W. Field. In 1856, the line was finished from New York to St. John's, Newfoundland, a distance of over 1,000 miles. A company was then formed with a capital of about \$1,750,000. A cable was made, but in an attempt to lay it (August, 1857), the cable parted. A second attempt, in June, 1858, failed after repeated trials. A third effort, in July, was successful. A message was sent from the Queen of England to the President, and a reply transmitted. A celebration was held in New York in honor of the event, but on that very day (September 1) the cable ceased to work. The time and money spent seemed a total loss. Mr. Field alone was undismayed. The company was revived, \$3,000,000 were subscribed, and a new cable was manufactured. In July, 1865, the Great Eastern commenced laying this cable, but in mid-ocean it parted and sunk to the bottom. Again Mr. Field went to work, raised a new company with a capital of \$3,000,000, and made a third cable. The Great Eastern sailed with this in June, 1866, and successfully accomplished the feat. To make the triumph more complete, the vessel sailed back to the very spot where the cable of 1865 had parted, and, dropping grappling-irons, caught the lost cable, brought it to the surface, and, splicing it, laid the remaining portion. The two cables were found to work admirably. A dispatch has been sent across the ocean by a battery made in a gun-cap.

## GRANT'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(EIGHTEENTH PRESIDENT—TWO TERMS: 1869-1877.)

**Domestic Affairs.**—*Pacific Railroad.*—The year 1869 was made memorable by the opening of this road, which completed the union between the Atlantic and the Pacific. The traveler can now pass from New York to San Francisco, a distance of about 3,300 miles, in less than a week. This great highway has linked the West to the East by iron bands, has carried thousands of pioneers into the hitherto wild country along its route, developed fresh sources of industry and mines of wealth, and opened the United States to the silks, teas, and spices of Asia. American ingenuity has solved the problem which foiled

\* Hiram Ulysses Grant was born at Mount Pleasant, Ohio, April 27, 1822. He was unwilling to follow his father's trade, that of a tanner, and, at seventeen, he secured an appointment to West Point. His name having been wrongly registered, Grant vainly attempted to set the matter right, but finally accepted his "manifest destiny", assumed the change thus forced upon him, and thenceforth signed himself "Ulysses Simpson", the latter being his mother's family name. Two years after completing his four-years course as cadet, the Mexican War broke out, in which Grant conducted himself with great gallantry, receiving especial mention and promotion. He then retired to private life, where he remained until the opening of the Civil War. Having been appointed to command a company of volunteers, he took it to Springfield, where he became aid to Governor Yates, and was finally commissioned as colonel of the 21st Illinois regiment. His military and political career was henceforth a part of the country's history. A plain, quiet, gentle, unostentatious, reticent man, he attracted little attention to himself personally. But his inflexible resolution, that held steadily to its purpose through every delay and disaster; his fertility of resource to meet each movement of his wary opponents; his power of handling great masses of men, and of maneuvering in concert the widely-separated Federal armies; his unruffled calmness, alike in moments of defeat and of triumph; his quick decision and prompt action in a great emergency, as if he had foreseen and prepared for it; above all, his sublime faith in his ultimate and perfect success, inspired his companions-in-arms with an intense devotion, and made him seem to them the very "incarnation of the cause for which they were fighting". After the close of his presidential terms, he made the tour of the world. During this extended journey, he was every-where received with marked enthusiasm and honor, and his dignified and consistent conduct shed luster upon the country he represented. He died at Mount McGregor, N. Y., July 23, 1885. People from all parts of the once-severed country united in sympathy for his loss.

Columbus and the olden navigators. It has made for itself a route to India.

*The Fifteenth Amendment*, which guarantees to all the right of suffrage, irrespective of “race, color, or previous condition of servitude”, having been ratified by the requisite number of States, was formally announced as a part of the Constitution (March 30, 1870).

*Prosperity of the Country*.—The nation rapidly recovered from the effects of war. The price of gold fell to 110, and the national debt was reduced \$200,000,000 during the first two years of this administration. The bitter feelings engendered by fraternal strife fast melted away.\* The census of 1870 showed that the population of the United States was over 38,000,000, an increase of about 7,000,000, while the manufacturing establishments of the country had nearly, if not quite, doubled in number and value during the preceding decade.

*Fires*.—1. A great fire broke out in Chicago, Sunday night, October 8, 1871. For two days, it raged with tremendous violence, devastating 3,000 acres. Twenty-five thousand buildings were burned, \$200,000,000 worth of property was destroyed, and 100,000 persons were ren-

\* Though the nation was still agitated by political strife—the ground-swell, as it were, of the recent terrible storm—the country was rapidly taking on the appearance and ways of peace. The South was slowly adjusting herself to the novel conditions of free labor. The soldiers retained somewhat their martial air; but “blue-coats” and “gray-coats” were every-where to be seen engaged in quiet avocations. The ravages of war were fast disappearing. Nature had already sown grass and quick-growing plants upon the battle-fields where contending armies had struggled.

“There were domes of white blossoms where swelled the white tent;  
There were plows in the track where the war-wagons went;  
There were songs where they lifted up Rachel’s lament.”—*B. F. Taylor*.

Strangely symbolical of the new era of growth which had dawned on the nation, a wanderer over the cannon-plowed slope of Cemetery Ridge found a broken drum, in which a swarm of bees were building their comb and storing honey gathered from the flowers growing on that soil so rich with Union and Confederate blood.

dered homeless. Contributions for the sufferers were taken in nearly all parts of the world, and over \$7,500,000 were raised. 2. During the same autumn, wide-spread conflagrations raged in the forests of Wisconsin, Minnesota, and Michigan. Entire villages were consumed. One thousand five hundred people perished in Wisconsin alone. 3. An extensive fire occurred in Boston, November 9, 1872. It swept over sixty acres in the center of the wholesale trade of that city, and destroyed \$70,000,000 worth of property.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*Treaty of Washington.*—The refusal of the English government to pay the damages to American commerce caused by the Alabama and other Confederate cruisers (p. 268), produced bitter feeling, and even threatened war. A high commission, composed of distinguished statesmen and jurists from both countries, met in Washington, and arranged the basis of a treaty between the United States and Great Britain, settling this and other causes of dispute (1871). According to its provisions, the claim for losses was submitted to a board of arbitrators, who, having convened at Geneva, Switzerland, awarded the United States \$15,500,000. The difficulty with regard to the North-western boundary between the United States and British America was submitted to the Emperor of Germany, and was decided in favor of the United States. Thus, happily, all danger of war was averted, and the great principle of the settlement of disputes by peaceful arbitration rather than by the sword was finally established.

*Proposed Annexation of San Domingo.*\*—This republic,

\* The island of San Domingo is the new world's classic land. Here Columbus founded the first white colony on this side of the Atlantic, and, transporting hither animals, trees, shrubs, vines, and grains, grafted the old world upon the new. Hither, also, flocked the adventurous, ambitious Spanish multitude (p. 26). Great cities sprung up, rivaling the majestic proportions of Moorish capitals. Mag-

comprising a large part of the island of Hayti, applied for admission to the United States. A commission of eminent men, appointed by the President to visit the island and examine its condition, reported favorably. The measure, however, was rejected by Congress.

**Political Parties.**—The liberal republican party, consisting of republicans opposed to the administration, nominated Horace Greeley,\* of New York, for the presidential term commencing 1873. The democratic party indorsed

nificent enterprises were set on foot and prospered. Here Ponce de Leon renewed his ambition, and set forth afresh on an expedition to Porto Rico, and thence to Florida, in search of the Fountain of Youth (p. 26). A century before Henry Hudson sailed up the noble river that perpetuates his name—more than a century before the Puritans landed at Plymouth Rock—the city of San Domingo was a rich and populous center of industry and trade.

\* Horace Greeley was born at Amherst, N. H., 1811; died, 1872. At two years of age, he began to study the newspapers given him for amusement; and at four, could read any thing placed before him. At six, he was able to spell any word in the English language, was somewhat versed in geography and arithmetic, and had read the entire Bible. His passion for books increased with his years, and, at an early age, he determined to be a printer. At fifteen, he entered the office of the Northern Spectator, in East Poultney, Vt. His wages were forty dollars a year, the greater part of which was saved and sent to his father, then struggling in poverty upon a farm in Pennsylvania. The Spectator having failed, in 1831 Greeley went to New York. He landed with ten dollars and a scanty outfit tied in a handkerchief. Franklin-like, he traversed the streets in search of work,—a long, stooping, stockingless figure, in linen round-about, short trousers, and drooping hat, with his out-grown cotton wristbands made to meet with twine. Diligence, integrity, and ability won him a ready rise when



HORACE GREELEY, FOUNDER OF THE TRIBUNE.

this nomination. The republicans renominated President Grant, who was elected.

**Grant's Second Term—Domestic Affairs.**—THE Modoc INDIANS having refused to stay upon their reservation in Oregon, troops were sent against them. The savages thereupon retreated to their fastnesses in the Lava Beds. The peace commissioners, hoping to arrange the difficulty, held a conference with the chiefs. In the midst of the council, the Indians treacherously slew General Canby and Rev. Dr. Thomas, and wounded Mr. Meachem. The Modocs were then bombarded in their stronghold, and finally forced to surrender.

*Railroad Panic.*—In the autumn of 1873, Jay Cooke & Co., bankers of Philadelphia, having engaged too extensively in railroad schemes, failed. A financial crisis ensued, and hundreds of prominent firms all over the Union were involved in ruin. A settled stringency of the money market and a stagnation of business followed.

*Centennial Junirersaries.*—The year 1875, being the hundredth anniversary of the first year of the Revolutionary War, was marked by various centennial observances. April 19, the battles of Lexington and Concord were celebrated with patriotic pride. May 20, the citi-

employment was at last secured. Ten years later, he founded the New York Tribune. He served in Congress in 1848-'49, where he was known for his opposition to the abuses of the mileage system. When civil war seemed imminent, he advocated a peaceable division of the country; but after it opened, he urged a vigorous prosecution of hostilities. At the close of the war, he pleaded for immediate conciliation, and was a signer of the bail-bond which restored Jefferson Davis to liberty after two-years imprisonment in Fort Monroe. Horace Greeley was pure, simple, and conscientious in character. He had a peculiar disregard for dress, and neglected many of the courtesies of society; but he was a true gentleman at heart, and possessed rare gifts in conversation. He was fond of agriculture, and spent his leisure days on his farm at Chappaqua. Just before the close of the presidential canvass, his wife died, and this, together with the desertion of friends and the excitement of the contest, unsettled his mind. He was carried to a private asylum, where he died (1872).

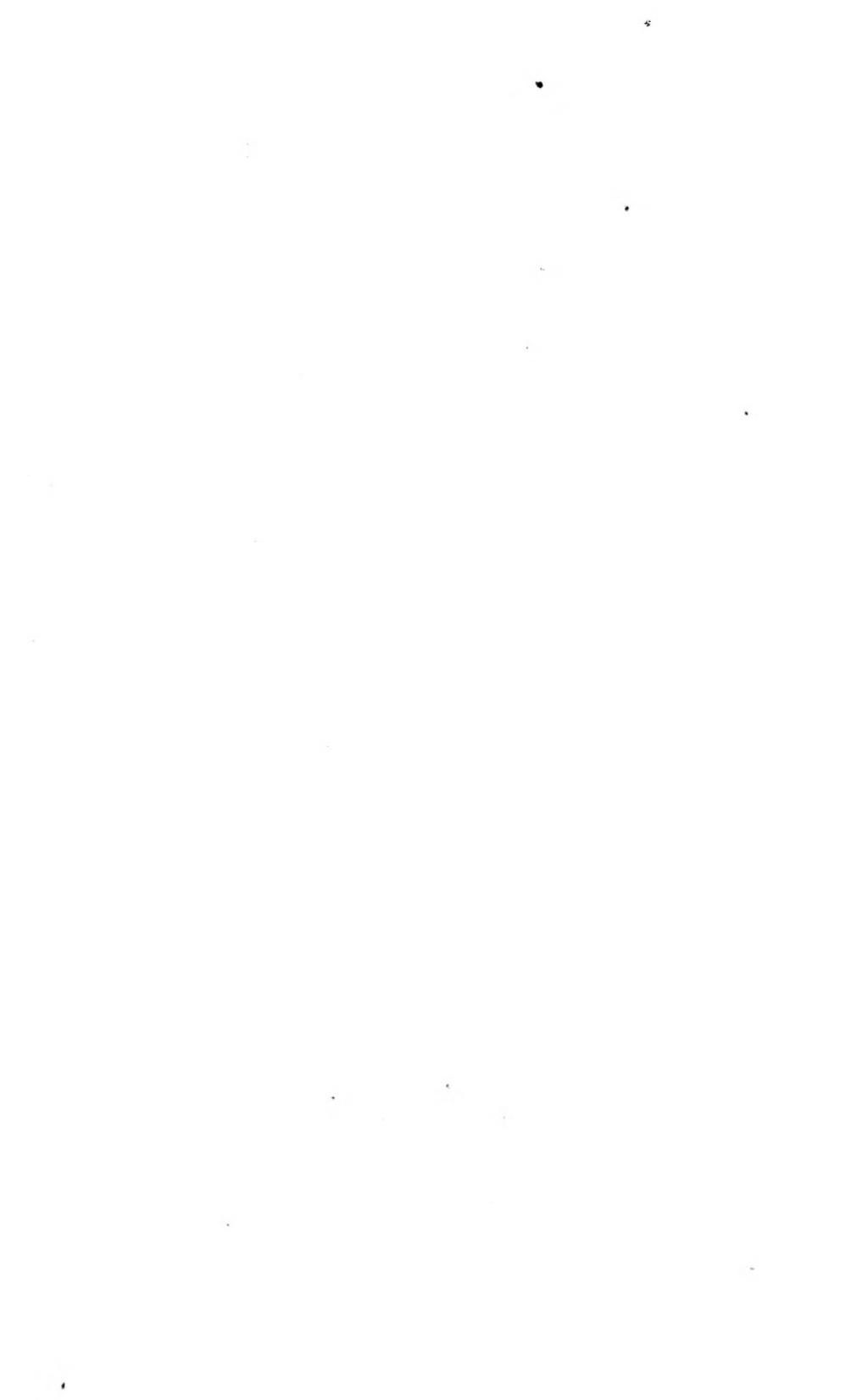
zens of Mecklenburg County, North Carolina, honored the memory of those who, at Charlotte, signed a Declaration of Independence only ten days after the capture of Ticonderoga. June 17 witnessed, at Bunker Hill, an unprecedented gathering from all parts of the country, Northern and Southern soldiers vying in devotion to the flag of the Union.

*The Centennial Exhibition.*—To commemorate the signing of the Declaration of Independence, an exhibition of the arts and industries of all nations was held at Philadelphia, during the summer of 1876. The beautiful grounds of Fairmount Park were the scene of this imposing display. The Main Exhibition Building covered an area of over twenty-six acres. There were more than two hundred smaller structures scattered over the extensive grounds.\* The exhibition lasted six months. The average daily attendance was about 61,000 persons.

*War with the Sioux (1876).*†—The Sioux Indians having refused to go upon the reservation assigned them by treaty, a force of regular troops was sent against them. General Custer led the advance with the Seventh Cavalry, while General Terry moved up the Big Horn to attack them in the rear. On the 25th of June, General Custer suddenly came upon the enemy. Without waiting for support, he detached Colonel Reno with four companies to fall upon the back of the Indian village, while he charged the savages in front. A desperate conflict ensued. General Custer, his two brothers, his nephew, and every one

\* See Barnes' *Hundred Years of American Independence*, a chapter of which is devoted to the Centennial Exhibition.

† The Black Hills, which are in Dakota and Wyoming, belonged to the Sioux Reservation. But gold having been found there, bands of miners began to prospect on the Indian domain; a bill was introduced into Congress to extinguish the Indian title to a portion of the Black Hills region; and, finally, a new treaty was negotiated. But the unwillingness of the Indians to leave, the encroachments of the whites, and the advent of surveyors and troops, all combined to provoke hostilities.





Battle of the Big Horn. Death of Custer.

of his men were killed. Colonel Reno was surrounded, but held his ground on the bluffs until reinforcements arrived. The Indians were soon beaten on every hand.

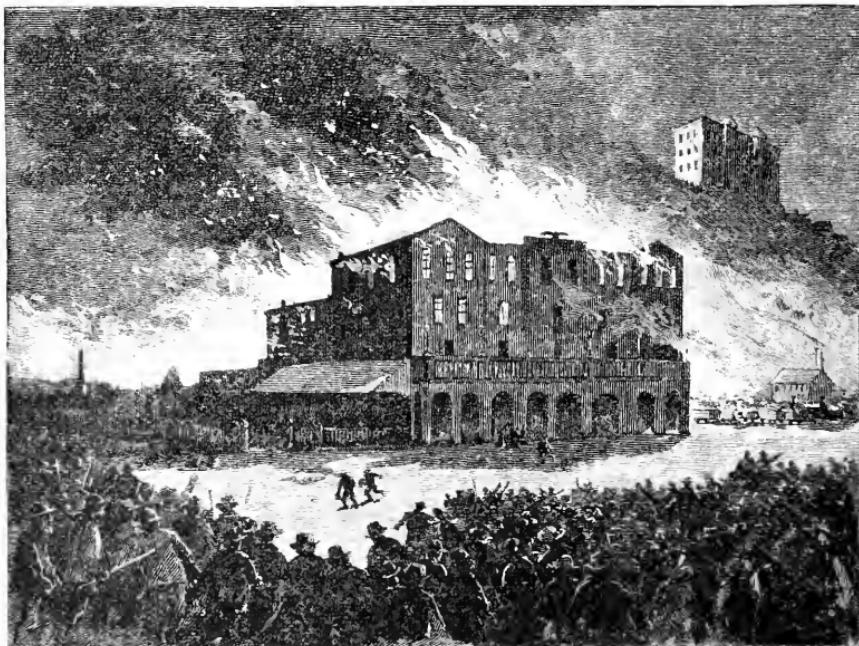
**Political Parties.**—The republican party nominated Rutherford B. Hayes, of Ohio, for President, and Wm. A. Wheeler, of New York, for Vice-President. The democratic party chose Samuel J. Tilden, of New York, and Thomas A. Hendricks, of Indiana. The independent greenback party selected Peter Cooper, of New York, and Samuel F. Cary, of Ohio. This presidential campaign was so hotly contested between the republicans and the democrats, and such irregularities were charged against the elections in Oregon, South Carolina, Florida, and Louisiana, that both these parties claimed the victory. In order to settle the dispute, Congress agreed to refer the contested election returns to a JOINT ELECTORAL COMMISSION, composed of five senators, five representatives, and five judges of the Supreme Court. This body decided that 185 electoral votes had been cast for Hayes and Wheeler, and 184 for Tilden and Hendricks. The republican candidates were therefore declared to be elected.\*

\* The principal political questions which agitated the country during this campaign were the Southern policy of the government, and the civil service reform. (1.) It was held on one side that negroes and republicans at the South were intimidated by force and prevented from voting, and that the presence of the United States troops was necessary to the preservation of the rights of the citizens, free discussion, a free ballot, and an enforcement of the laws. It was asserted, on the other side, that the use of the troops for such purposes was unconstitutional; that the intimidation was only imaginary, or could be readily controlled by the local authorities; and that the presence of the military provoked violence, and was a constant insult and menace to the States. (2.) President Jackson, as we have seen (p. 175), introduced into our politics the principle of "rotation in office". This policy steadily gained favor until Marcy's maxim, "To the victors belong the spoils", became the commonly-accepted view; and, after every important election, the successful party was accustomed to fill even the menial offices of government with its favorites. Under such a system, the qualification of the applicant was of much less importance than the service he had done the party. Hayes promised to make "no dismissal except for cause, and no promotion except for merit".

## HAYES' ADMINISTRATION.\*

(NINETEENTH PRESIDENT: 1877-1881.)

**Domestic Affairs.**—*U. S. Troops at the South Withdrawn.*—President Hayes' Southern policy was one of conciliation. The troops which had hitherto sustained



RIOT AT PITTSBURGH, PA.

the republican State governments in South Carolina and Louisiana were withdrawn, and democratic officials at once took control of the local affairs.

\* Rutherford B. Hayes was born in Delaware, Ohio, 1822. At sixteen, he entered Kenyon College, where he was graduated as valedictorian of his class. After passing through the Harvard Law School, he was admitted to the bar in 1845. At the breaking out of the Civil War, he received a commission as major of the Twenty-third Ohio Volunteers. In camp, he proved attentive to the wants of his men; in battle, he inspired them with his own dashing bravery. While yet in the field, he was elected to Congress, where he served two terms. Soon after, he was chosen governor of Ohio, being twice re-elected—the last time after a brilliant, hard-money campaign which attracted national attention.

*A Railroad Strike* (1877), caused by a general reduction of wages, took place on nearly all the principal railroads in the Northern States. Travel was suspended, and business came to a stand-still. A tumult in Baltimore was suppressed with some bloodshed. There was a terrible riot at Pittsburgh, Pa., and an immense amount of property was destroyed, the loss of the Pennsylvania Railroad being estimated at \$3,000,000. The troops quelled the mob, but at the cost of about one hundred lives. There were alarming disturbances also at Hornellsville, N. Y., Chicago, Ill., Louisville, Ky., and Reading, Pa. These were suppressed, in part, by regular troops; but the citizen soldiery in this perilous crisis merited the gratitude of the republic.

*"Bland Silver Bill."*—In 1873, Congress demonetized silver, and made gold the sole standard of our currency. Opposition to this idea gradually arose, and, in 1878, a bill was passed making silver a legal tender in payment of all debts.

*The Yellow Fever* broke out in New Orleans during the summer of 1878, and spread with alarming rapidity northward along the Mississippi into Missouri and Tennessee. Over 7,000 deaths were reported.

*The Resumption of Specie Payments* (1879) brought gold and silver once more into general circulation. On December 17, 1879, gold, for the first time since January, 1862, sold in New York at par.

*Indian Difficulty* (1879).—The Ute Indians at the White River agency, dissatisfied at the encroachments of the miners and the non-payment of money promised by the government, took up arms and massacred the white men at the station. The U. S. troops were hurried thither, and peace was restored.

*Prosperity of the Country.*—The census of 1880 showed

that the population of the United States was over 50,000,000, a gain of about 12,000,000 in the decade.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*Fishery Award* (1878).—Difficulties having arisen between the United States and Great Britain concerning the fisheries of the North-eastern coast, the matter was referred, by the Treaty of Washington (p. 289), to a commission for adjudication. This body sat at Halifax, Nova Scotia, and awarded Great Britain the sum of \$5,500,000.

*Treaty with China* (1880).—Two treaties between China and the United States were signed at Pekin,—one in relation to commerce, and the other granting to our government the regulation of the Chinese immigration.

**Political Parties.**—The republican party nominated James A. Garfield, of Ohio, for President, and Chester A. Arthur, of New York, for Vice-President. The democratic party nominated Winfield S. Hancock, of Pennsylvania, for President, and William H. English, of Indiana, for Vice-President. The greenback-labor party nominated James B. Weaver, of Iowa, for President, and Benjamin J. Chambers, of Texas, for Vice-President. The republican candidates were elected.

## GARFIELD AND ARTHUR'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(TWENTIETH AND TWENTY-FIRST PRESIDENTS: 1881-1885.)

**The Inauguration** of the twentieth President marked the hundredth year after the close of the Revolutionary War, and the twentieth year from the beginning of the Civil War.

\* James Abram Garfield was born in Cuyahoga County, Ohio, 1831. His father cleared a small farm in what was then a wilderness, and dying soon after the birth of his illustrious son, left his family in poverty. James, at an early age, was com-

**Domestic Affairs.**—*The Star Route Frauds.*—The new administration promptly set to work reforming abuses in the public service. A gigantic scheme of fraud in connection with the letting of mail contracts in the West was early discovered in the Post-office Department. Within two months, contracts to the amount of nearly \$2,000,000 were annulled.

*Assassination of President Garfield (1881).*—On the morning of July 2, the country was shocked by the news that the President, while standing in



JAMES A. GARFIELD.

peled to work upon the little farm which his father left, and often sought employment for his spare hours among the farmers of the neighborhood, and for a time even worked upon a canal as a tow-boy. Brought up amidst such stern surroundings, his education was neglected; but in his eighteenth year he was seized with a desire for knowledge, and during one or two winters attended a school at some distance from his home, paying his way by working afternoons and holidays at such employment as he could procure. After mastering the elementary branches, he taught a district school, meanwhile preparing himself for college. He entered Williams College in 1854, from which he was graduated with great credit. Soon after, he accepted a Professorship in Hiram College, Ohio. On the outbreak of the war, Garfield offered his services to his country, and was commissioned as Lieutenant-Colonel, and, subsequently, as Colonel of the 42d Ohio Volunteers. He took part in the siege of Corinth and in the battle of Chickamauga, and was promoted to Major-General. While in the field, he was elected to Congress. In this new sphere, he found opportunity for the development of those rare political abilities which he exhibited in so marked a degree. Well versed in the science of government, he was a wise and prudent legislator. As a member of some of the most important committees of the House, he molded and influenced many important economic measures, and was, in 1871, recognized as the leader of his party in the House. So acceptably had he served his constituents during his long period of office as Representative, that he was chosen United States Senator from Ohio. Before, however,

the railroad station at Washington, had been shot by a man named Charles J. Guiteau. The startling tidings produced a profound and universal sorrow similar to that occasioned by the death of Lincoln. Party differences were hushed, and so intense was the national grief that the preparations for the celebration of the approaching holiday were generally abandoned. The wounded President lay for weeks hovering between life and death, while the whole nation looked on in alternating hope and despair. The patience, fortitude, and courage exhibited by the distinguished sufferer won all hearts. In the hope that the sea air would strengthen his wasted system, he was removed to Long Branch, N. J. Here he died on the 19th of September. His body was conveyed to Washington, where it lay in state in the Capitol, after which it was borne to Cleveland, Ohio, and consigned to its last resting-place.\*

*Accession of Arthur.*†—On receiving official information of the death of President Garfield, Chester A. Arthur, the Vice-President, immediately took the oath and assumed the duties of President.

*Flood in the Mississippi Valley.*—In the spring of 1882, a disastrous flood in the Mississippi Valley rendered 100,000 persons homeless.

he could take his seat, he was nominated for the Presidency. Frank, generous, modest, and winning in manner, he was beloved and respected even by his political opponents. An earnest and diligent student, a profound thinker and an able orator, he brought to the Presidency a wealth of knowledge, accomplishments, and experience such as few of our Presidents ever possessed. In breadth and grasp of mind he has been compared with the younger Adams.

\* Through this long journey there lay upon the coffin a wreath of flowers, placed there by the direction of the widowed Queen of England, in loving sympathy with the martyred President's wife.

† Chester A. Arthur was born at Albany, N. Y., 1830. He was graduated at Union College, and, having studied law, was admitted to the bar, where he soon obtained a high position. During the Civil War, he served as Quartermaster-General of the State of New York. In 1872, he was appointed Collector of the Port of New York City, and retained this post six years.

*The Brooklyn Bridge,\** a suspension bridge connecting New York and Brooklyn, was opened to the use of the public in 1883.

*A Civil Service Bill* (p. 293), was passed (1883). It aimed to regulate, by means of examinations, the system of appointments and promotions in the civil service of the United States.

*Letter-postage* was reduced from three cents to two cents (October 1, 1883).

*The Order of the Presidential Succession*, in case of the death, resignation, etc., of the President and Vice-President, was fixed (1884) as follows: In that event, the office is to be vested successively in the Secretaries of State, Treasury, and War, the Attorney-General, the Postmaster-General, and the Secretaries of the Navy and Interior, until other provisions can be made.

*An Industrial and Cotton Exposition* was held at New Orleans in the winter of 1884-'85. Its object was to commemorate the centenary of the beginning of the cotton industry on this continent.

**Foreign Affairs.**—*Chinese Immigration* into the United States was forbidden for ten years (1882).

*A Treaty with Mexico* was passed (1884).

**Political Parties.**—The democratic party nominated Grover Cleveland, of New York, for President, and Thomas A. Hendricks (p. 293), of Indiana, for Vice-President. The republican party selected James G. Blaine, of Maine, for

\* This remarkable structure was begun January 3, 1870. The bridge roadway, from its terminus in Brooklyn to its terminus in New York, is 5,989 feet long—a little over a mile. The height of the towers is 278 feet. The length of the suspended span, from tower to tower, is 1,596 feet, and its height from the water (high-tide), at the center, is 135 feet. The four great cables are  $15\frac{3}{4}$  inches in diameter, each cable containing 5,296 parallel (not twisted) galvanized steel, oil-coated wires, closely wrapped, and weighing, with its covering,  $897\frac{1}{8}$  tons. The heat of the sun causes these cables to vary in length as much as six inches in the course of the day.

President, and John A. Logan, of Illinois, for Vice-President. The people's party chose B. F. Butler, of Massachusetts, for President, and A. M. West, of Mississippi, for Vice-President. The national prohibition party nominated J. P. St. John, of Kansas, for President, and William Daniel, of Maryland, for Vice-President. The candidates of the democratic party were elected.

## CLEVELAND'S ADMINISTRATION.\*

(TWENTY-SECOND PRESIDENT: 1885-1889.)

The Inauguration of the new President marked a change of policy and feeling in the country. The re-

publican party had controlled the government since Buchanan left the White House, in 1861. The following cabinet was chosen: Thomas F. Bayard, of Delaware, Secretary of State; Daniel Manning, of New York, Secretary of the Treasury; William C. Endicott, of Mas-



GROVER CLEVELAND.

sachusetts, Secretary of War; William C. Whitney, of New York, Secretary of the Navy; L. Q. C. Lamar, of Missis-

\* Grover Cleveland was born in Caldwell, New Jersey, March 18, 1837. Shortly after, his father, a Presbyterian clergyman, moved to Central New York. It was before the days of railroads, and the journey was made by schooner up the Hudson

sippi, Secretary of the Interior; William F. Vilas, of Wisconsin, Postmaster-General; A. H. Garland, of Arkansas, Attorney-General.

**The Funeral of General Grant** was attended at New York (Aug. 8, 1885), by ceremonies unparalleled in the history of our country. Ex-Federal and ex-Confederate soldiers vied in paying the last solemn rites in honor of one who was as generous in peace as he was relentless in war; and whose closing days were filled with efforts to harmonize the North and the South about the bedside of the Conqueror of Lee.

---

**States Admitted during the Sixth Epoch.**—NEBRASKA, the thirty-seventh State, was admitted to the Union, March 1, 1867. The name signifies "water valley". COLORADO, the thirty-eighth State, was received March 3, 1875. Its constitution, however, was not ratified by the people until July 1, 1876; whence it is known as the "Centennial State". This region was explored by Coronado in 1540, while De Soto was rambling over the site of the future Gulf States.

to Albany, and thence by packet on the Erie Canal. Young Grover was pursuing his academic studies when his father's death left him, at sixteen, without a dollar to continue his education. Having made several efforts to earn his living, he borrowed \$25, and started west to carve his fortune. At Buffalo, he entered a law office, began on Blackstone at once, and, in 1859, was admitted to the bar. His "marked industry, unpretentious courage, and unswerving honesty" won him rapid promotion. In 1863, he entered political life, filling, in succession, the offices of Assistant District-Attorney, Sheriff, and Mayor. Being nominated as the candidate of reform, he was elected, in 1882, as Governor of New York by a majority of 192,854. This remarkable vote gave him a national reputation, and, ere his term expired, he was nominated for President.

## PROGRESS IN CIVILIZATION.

**Territorial Development** (Map of VIth Epoch).—The Treaty with Great Britain (Sept. 3, 1783) fixed the boundaries of the United States as: the Atlantic Ocean, the Gulf of Mexico, the Mississippi River, and the Great Lakes. From this, however, was to be excluded Florida, which belonged to Spain, and the part of Louisiana east of the Mississippi. The Thirteen Colonies occupied only a narrow strip along the Atlantic sea-board. Pennsylvania was a frontier State, with Pittsburgh as an advanced military post. The interior of the continent, as far as the Mississippi, was called the “Wilderness”. These broad lands belonged to the states individually, since the original English grants extended from the Atlantic to the Pacific (p. 40). They were finally given up to the general Government (p. 194).\*

In 1787, the great region north of the Ohio was organized into the North-western Territory (p. 201). This was slowly settled. As late as 1819 even, the Territory of Michigan was thought to be a “worthless waste”. The province of Louisiana was purchased of France in 1803 (p. 155). Little was known of the country thus acquired, and that same year it was said, “The Missouri has been navigated for 2,500 miles; there appears a probability of a communication by this channel with the Western Ocean.” The famous expedition (p. 209) under the command of Lewis and Clarke,† in 1804–5, gave the first accurate information concerning this vast territory. Florida was purchased of Spain (p. 173) by a treaty proposed Feb. 22, 1819,

\* The little value then placed upon “wild lands” may be seen from the fact that, in 1791, the State of New York sold five and one half millions of acres at an average price of eighteen cents per acre.

† See Barnes’ Popular History of United States, p. 361.

though not signed by the King of Spain until Oct. 20, 1820, and the United States did not obtain full possession before July 17, 1821.\* The treaty also relinquished all Spanish authority over the region west of the Rocky Mountains, claimed by the United States as belonging to the Louisiana purchase, but not previously acknowledged by Spain.†

In the beginning of the war of 1812, a strip of coast about fifty miles wide, lying between Florida and Louisiana, considered by Spain as a part of Florida, had been taken by the United States under the claim that it belonged to the Louisiana purchase. Texas was annexed in 1845 (p. 205). The Mexican cession of 1848 gave the United States California and several other States (p. 208). Alaska, the latest acquisition, was purchased in 1867.

When the Declaration of Independence was made, the area of the young republic was about 800,000 square miles. Our domain now reaches from ocean to ocean and comprises nearly 4,000,000 square miles.

**The Population.**—A century ago, Portland, Me., Providence, R. I., and Richmond, Va., were only small towns. Springfield and Lawrence were mere hamlets. Rude frontier forts occupied the present sites of Oswego, Utica,

\* This fact explains the varying dates given by different historians.

† The map of the VIth Epoch is based upon one given in the Census of 1870. This represents the Louisiana purchase as reaching to the Pacific Ocean. Some maps, accepting the Spanish version, extend Louisiana only to the Rocky Mountains. Such authorities hold that the title of the United States to Oregon antedates the French cession and is based upon the discovery of the mouth of the Columbia by Capt. Gray (p. 208) in 1792. A full discussion of our claim to Oregon may be found in "Barrows' Oregon," chap. XXI. In a brief work like this, it is not possible to enter upon such a topic. In fact, it has no real importance. It is enough for the pupil to know that Gray discovered, Lewis and Clarke explored, and the American Fur Company (p. 209) occupied, the fertile region drained by the Columbia; and that, during the progress of these events, France ceded to the United States her claim to all territory west of the Mississippi (1803)—a claim which France had received from Spain only three years before (1800) and had herself ceded to Spain in 1763 (p. 90). Lieut. Pike was sent, in 1805, to search for the source of the Mississippi; and, in 1806 '7, he ventured into what is now Kansas.

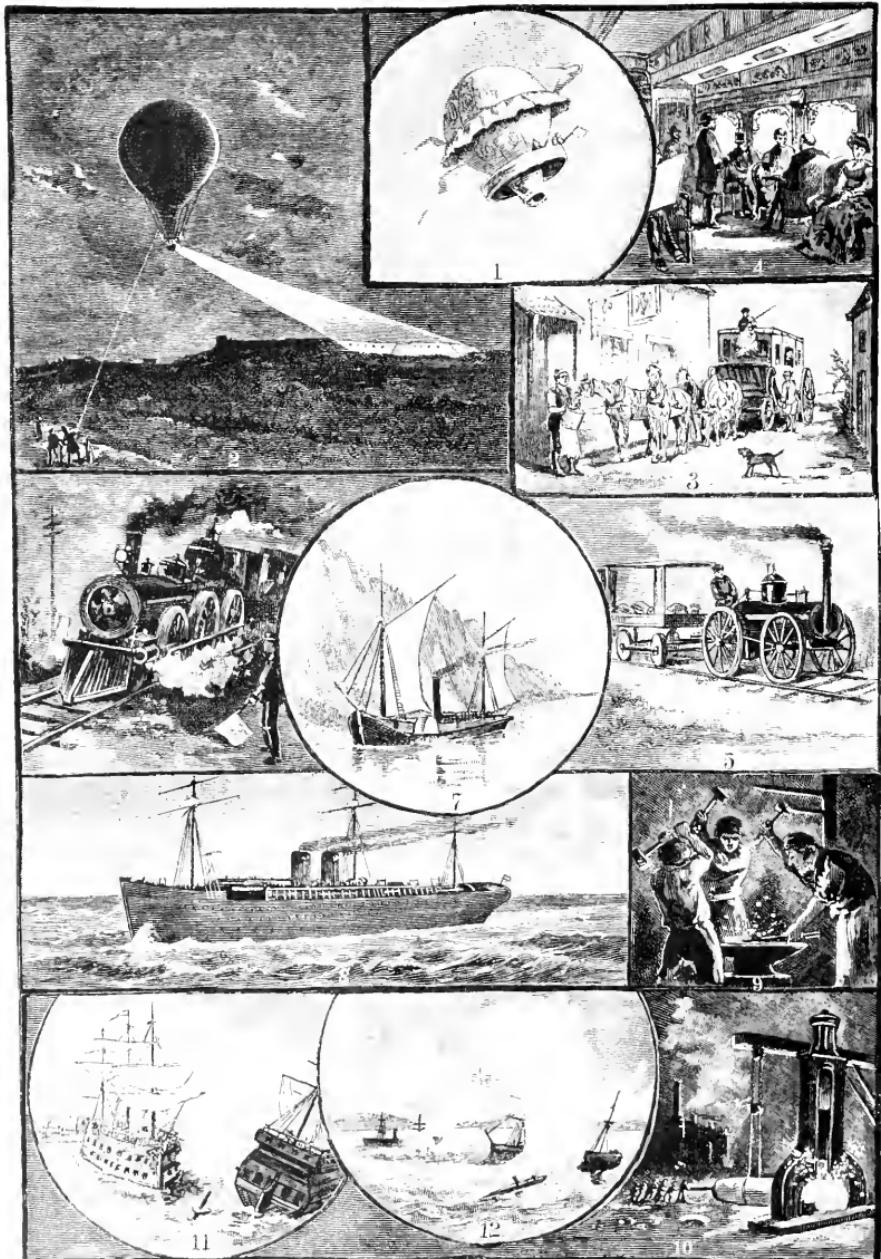
and Rome, N. Y. At Saratoga a single spring bubbled up in an old barrel. Lancaster, Pa., with a population of 6,000 (1777), was the largest inland place. The first store in Louisville, Ky., was opened in 1783, being the only one in that part of the country. In 1795, Cincinnati had only 94 cabins with 300 inhabitants. St. Louis, New Orleans, and Mobile were then in foreign territory; the first of these contained only about 800 people, who lived mostly in log houses, no brick dwelling being erected before 1813. At the beginning of the century, Washington was described as "a little village in the midst of the woods". Chicago, even for years after the admission of Illinois into the Union (1818), was a mere trading-station surrounded by the wigwams of the savage.

The population of the entire United States at the time of the first census was less than 4,000,000. The census of 1880 showed over 50,000,000. The center of population in 1790 was 23 miles east of Baltimore; in 1880, it had moved westward to a point 8 miles south-west of Cincinnati. At the former date, there were only five cities—Philadelphia, New York, Boston, Charleston, and Baltimore—having a population of over 10,000; at the latter date, there were 245.

**The Post-offices** in 1790 numbered 75. Between New York and Philadelphia, there were only five mails per week, and it required two days for a letter to go this short distance.\* They were generally carried throughout the

\* The tedious mode of travel in the early days is well illustrated in the following incident: In 1824-'25, an effort was made in Congress to admit Oregon. Mr. Dickinson, of New Jersey, declared that "the project of a State upon the Pacific was an absurdity. The distance that a member of Congress from Oregon would be obliged to travel in coming to the seat of Government and returning home, would be 9200 miles. If he should travel thirty miles per day, it would require 306 days; allowing for Sundays, forty-four, it would amount to 350 days. This would leave the member a fortnight to rest at Washington before he commenced his journey home."





### Progress of Invention.

1. ONE OF THE FIRST BALLOONS MADE. 2. WAR BALLOON, WITH ELECTRIC LIGHT ATTACHED TO ILLUMINATE FORTIFICATIONS AT NIGHT. 3. AN OLD STAGE-COACH. 4. A PARLOR CAR. 5. FIRST LOCOMOTIVE. 6. MODERN LOCOMOTIVE. 7. FULTON'S STEAM-BOAT. 8. OCEAN STEAM-SHIP. 9. THE OLD ANVIL. 10. THE MODERN TRIP-HAMMER. 11. OLD-STYLE NAVAL BATTLE. 12. NEW-STYLE—THE TORPEDO-BOAT.

country by men on horseback, the saddle-bags easily holding the scanty number of letters and papers then sent. Mails were forwarded between New York and Boston three times per week in summer, and twice in winter. In remote places, the mail was allowed to accumulate until enough was secured to pay the cost of transmission. It was a favored rural village that had a weekly mail. The time of its arrival was locally known as the "post-day", and when the postman came he found a crowd assembled to receive the few letters he brought, and to hear the newspaper read by the minister or landlord.

From 1789 until 1816, the postage on a single letter carried under 40 miles was 8 cents; over 40 and under 90 miles, 10 cents; over 500 miles, 25 cents. In 1884, we had over 50,000 post-offices, while the length of the post-routes had increased from 1875 miles to 360,000 miles.

**Manufactures and the Mechanic Arts.**—The Revolutionary War was fought by men clad mainly in homespun, and using a flint-lock hunting rifle. Manufactures had been steadily repressed by the mother country (p. 101), and agriculture was the favorite pursuit. The mechanic arts—save ship-building in New England—had made little progress. The farm-house was a manufactory of all the articles of daily use. Clothes, hats, shoes, and harnesses were made at home. Even nails were hammered out in the winter time. The hand-cart, spinning-wheel, and loom were common pieces of furniture. The land was turned by a plow whose mold-board was faced with strips of iron made by straightening old horse-shoes. The grass was cut by a scythe; the grain, by a sickle. Wheat, oats, rye, etc. were threshed out on the barn floor with a flail, or trodden out by cattle. The flax and wool were carded, spun, and woven into cloth by the women of the household.

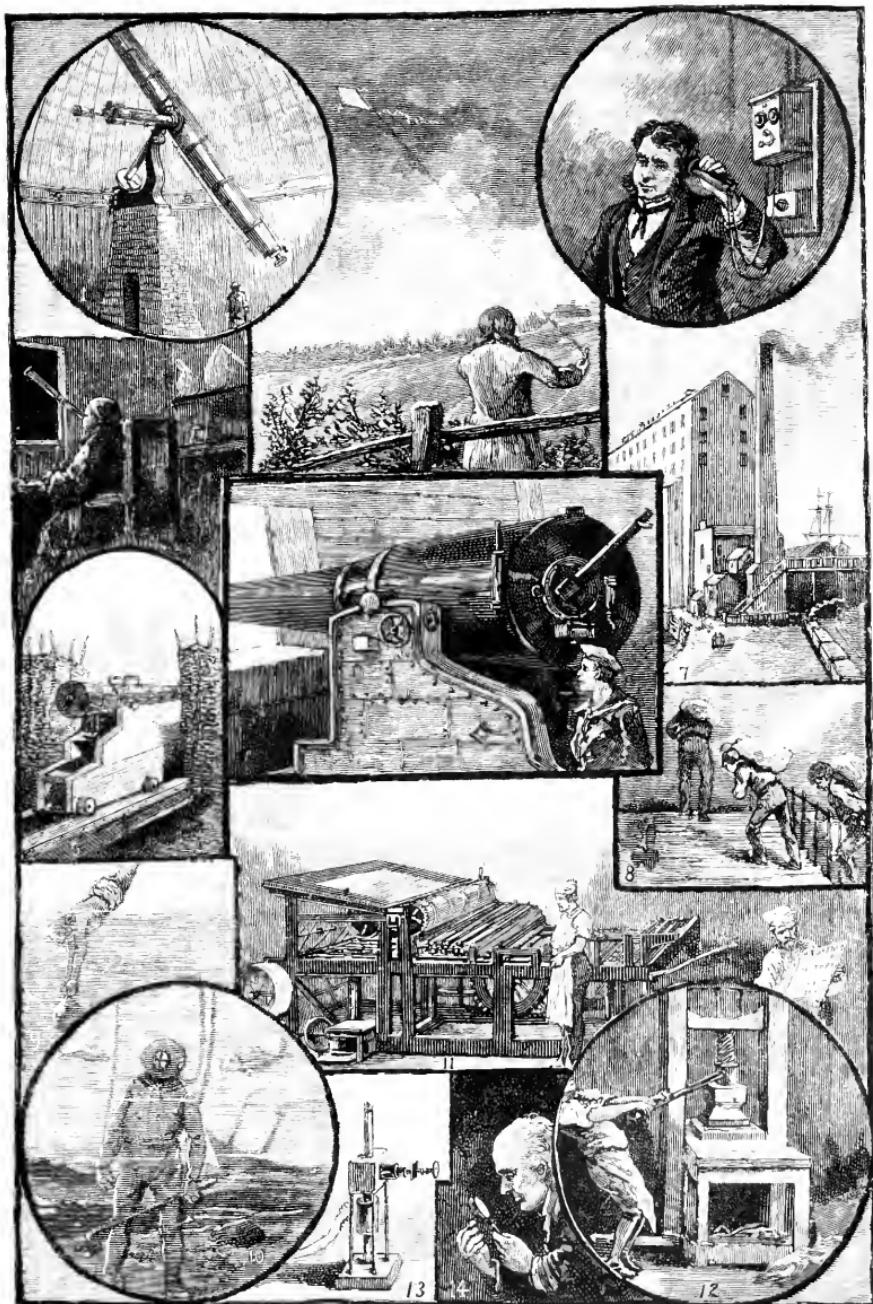
With freedom came such a marvelous development of the mechanic arts and manufactures as to make the word Yankee a synonym for ingenuity.

Cotton had been grown only in the flower-garden. When eight bags of this staple arrived at Liverpool in 1784, the custom-house officers seized it on the plea that so much could not have been raised in America. Only four years after the last British soldier left our shores, the first cotton-mill was set in motion at Beverly, Mass. (1787). In 1793, Whitney patented the cotton-gin for separating the seed from the fiber (p. 172).\* This rendered cotton-raising profitable, and it soon became, at the South, the leading crop. In 1880, over 14,000,000 acres were devoted to its culture, producing nearly 6,000,000 bales. The United States now controls the cotton supply of the world.

It is noted as a fact of special importance that when Washington delivered his first annual message to Congress (1790), he was clad in a full suit of broadcloth manufactured at Hartford, Conn. In the year 1880, \$160,000,000 worth of woolen goods were manufactured in this country.

When the Declaration of Independence was signed, there were probably not more than two steam-engines in the Thirteen Colonies—one at Passaic, and the other in Philadelphia. Yet within five years after the Evacuation of New York, Fitch placed a trial steam-boat on the Delaware; in 1803-4, Evans built a steam-dredge at Philadelphia; in 1807, Fulton solved the problem of steam-navigation; in 1819, a steamer crossed the Atlantic; and in 1830, Peter Cooper made the first locomotive built in America for railroad purposes, and it drew a car of passengers upon the Baltimore and Ohio Railway. During that

\* Whitney invented this machine at the house of the widow of General Greene, of Revolutionary fame. To clean a pound of cotton by hand, was a day's labor.



Progress of Invention.

1. EQUATORIAL TELESCOPE.
2. GALILEO'S FIRST SPY-GLASS.
3. FRANKLIN'S EXPERIMENT.
4. THE TELEPHONE.
5. OLD-FASHIONED CANNON.
6. MODERN BREECH-LOADER.
7. MODERN GRAIN ELEVATOR.
8. OLD METHOD OF CARRYING GRAIN.
9. A DIVER.
10. DIVER, WITH MODERN APPARATUS.
11. STOP-CYLINDER PRESS.
12. AN EARLY PRINTING-PRESS.
13. PHOTO-ELECTRIC MICROSCOPE.
14. SIMPLE MAGNIFYING GLASS.



year, 23 miles of railroad were constructed in the United States; in 1883, nearly 8000 miles were laid, and the total number in operation was 110,000 miles, at a cost in road and equipment of nearly \$7,000,000,000.

The first message ever sent by a recording telegraph was forwarded May, 1844, between Washington and Baltimore, in these sublime words: "What hath God wrought!" Only forty years later, and the aggregate mileage of telegraph lines open for business is reported at 164,000.

The printing press of a century ago would, at a great expense of labor, print, on one side, about 250 sheets per hour. A new steam "power-press", like Hoe's for example, will, in the same time, turn out 40,000 copies of a single sheet, printed on both sides.

These are only a few of the many facts that might be given to illustrate the long series of mechanical and manufacturing triumphs that have excited the admiration of the world, and are the pride and boast of our country. The sewing machine, the reaper, the mower, the horse-rake, the thresher, the safe, the breech-loading gun, the steam fire-engine, the telephone, the steam-ship, the palace-car and sleeper, the elevator, as well as a thousand common devices, minister to the comfort of our lives and the progress of mankind. The skill of the American mechanic has improved almost every implement of both peace and war, from the cannon to the telescope. The records of the Patent Office show over 22,000 patents issued in a single year (1883).

**Education.**—The idea of popular education was brought to the new world by our forefathers. Even in the wilderness, while the wolf prowled about the log-house, and the cry of the wild-cat was still heard, the school, and even the college, were established. The Revolution left all the insti-

tutions of learning paralyzed. But in less than a month after Washington resigned his commission, Gov. George Clinton's message to the Legislature of New York contained these memorable words: "Perhaps there is scarce any thing more worthy your attention than the revival and encouragement of seminaries of learning, and nothing by which we can more satisfactorily express our gratitude to the Supreme Being for His past favors, since purity and virtue are generally the offspring of an enlightened understanding." The State was poor, and savages occupied a large part of the region west of Albany; yet the Legislature rose to the grandeur of the conception, and at once established a Board of Regents to superintend the interests of higher education. Within a month after its organization, this Board authorized the "purchase of such a philosophical apparatus for Columbia College, as Dr. Franklin, Mr. Adams, and Mr. Jefferson (then representatives at the French Court) should advise".

From the first, New England believed that it is the duty of the State to teach its children. The idea of educating all classes of society was then a new and surprising one, scarcely heard of outside of Prussia and Saxony. In 1795, Gov. Clinton first suggested and established the common-school system of New York; it was refounded and more liberally provided for in 1812, in the darkest hour of gloom and disaster, at the opening of the Second War with Great Britain.

A part of the public lands of the United States has, from the beginning, been set aside for purposes of education (p. 194). The ordinance of 1787 for the government of the North-western Territory (p. 194), devoted "section sixteen of every township" for maintaining public schools; and in making this generous provision, stipulated that

“religion, morality, and knowledge being necessary to good government and the happiness of mankind, schools and the means of education shall be forever encouraged.” In 1848, when Oregon was organized as a Territory (p. 209), the “thirty-sixth section” was also set apart for schools; and since then, each new State has received both sections for educational purposes. “At various times, also, other lands have been given, so that in all about 140,000,000 acres have been devoted to the States for the support of common schools.” So general and absorbing has been this feeling on the part of our legislators that, in the midst of the Civil War, when the national Government was straining every nerve to raise and equip armies to preserve its very existence, Congress took time to consider and pass a bill (1862) granting 30,000 acres of public lands for every Senator and Representative in Congress, in order to maintain, in each State, what has since been known as an “Agricultural College”.

In consequence of these and equally liberal provisions on the part of State governments, the progress of education in the United States has been marvelous. Instead of nine colleges, as in pre-Revolutionary times, we have four hundred and fifty. The common school is fostered in every part of the country. The daily free-school bell now calls together (1883), in the 48 States and Territories of the Union, over 10,000,000 children, who are being educated at an annual expense of \$96,000,000.

**Literature.**—In the Colonial times, there were few American books, and those chiefly upon THEOLOGY.

During the agitation that finally ended in the separation from the mother-country, POLITICS became the universal theme of discussion. The contest was decided by the pen quite as certainly as by the sword. Patrick

Henry, Otis, the elder Adams, Franklin, Dickinson, Freneau, Trumbull,\* and Hopkinson aroused their countrymen, first to attempt, and then to endure, while, at the same time, they sought to enlist in their cause the sympathies of mankind.

After the war had decided the issue, and it came to building up a united nation out of a loose confederation of States, Jay, Hamilton, Madison,† Jefferson, John Adams, Washington, Fisher Ames, and others were most efficient in organizing and shaping the policy of the new Government. As the Declaration of Independence was chiefly the work of Jefferson, so the Constitution of the United States was that of Hamilton and Madison.

In all history, an era of strife has been followed by one of marked mental vigor. Thus, as one would expect, the generation that directly followed the adoption of the Constitution, gave us the classics of American literature.

Irving was the first American author to secure general recognition at home and abroad. In 1809, appeared his inimitable Diedrich Knickerbocker's History of New York, and, about ten years later, his Sketch Book. The creatures of his fancy quickly passed into the life of the people. Even now, Ichabod Crane and Rip Van Winkle are as familiar to us as if we had lived in Sleepy Hollow and known them all our days. Bryant wrote his Thanatopsis in 1812, when he was only 18 years old. Cooper laid the foundation of American romance. His descriptions of American scenery, the Indian, and life at sea, were eagerly

\* Whipple says, "Trumbull's McFingal sent the rustic volunteers laughing into the ranks of Washington and Greene."

† Hamilton, Jay, and Madison wrote a series of powerful and convincing essays favoring the adoption of the Constitution. These were, at first, published as newspaper articles, but were afterward collected in a volume known as the **FEDERALIST** —the "political classic of the United States".

read on both sides of the Atlantic. Poe, the most imaginative of our poets, made himself famous by the *Bells*, and the *Raven*. Emerson's essays, by their original thought and brilliant style, caused at once a profound impression. Hawthorne's *Scarlet Letter*, *House of the Seven Gables*, and *Marble Faun*, ranked him with the great novelists of all time. Longfellow's poems touched the heart of the people, and quickly found their way into the reading-books of the schools; while the verses of Whittier, the Quaker Poet, have been repeated on almost every Academy stage in the land.

To chronicle the constantly-increasing list of our authors and their works would require a volume of itself. American authors are known and their writings read in all parts of the civilized world.

In journalism, our progress has been especially marked. At the opening of the Revolution, only 37 papers circulated in the colonies. There are now (1884) issued in the United States over 12,000 newspapers and periodicals. Popular education has made us a peculiarly enlightened nation, and statistics prove that "our people read as much as all the rest of the world who read at all".

**Philanthropic and Religious Institutions.**—In nothing do we see the ameliorating and elevating influences of our time more than in the generosity with which charitable institutions and philanthropic associations have, of late years, been founded and supported. As the country has grown in size, population, and wealth, relief has been more widely extended to human suffering, and efforts more urgently made to elevate the moral and religious condition of our race the world over.

## BLACKBOARD ANALYSIS.

EPOCH VI. RECONSTRUCTION AND PASSING EVENTS.	1. Johnson's Administration. (1865-'69.)	
	1. Inauguration	1. <i>Inauguration</i>
	2. Disbanding of the Union Army.	2. <i>Disbanding of the Union Army.</i>
	3. Domestic Affairs.	3. <i>Domestic Affairs.</i>
	4. Foreign Affairs.	4. <i>Foreign Affairs.</i>
	5. Political Parties.	5. <i>Political Parties.</i>
	1. Domestic Affairs.	1. <i>Reconstruction Policy of the President.</i>
2. Grant's Administrations. (1869-'77.)	2. Foreign Affairs.	2. <i>The Thirteenth Amendment.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	3. <i>Public Debt.</i>
	1. Domestic Affairs.	4. <i>Reconstruction Policy of Congress.</i>
	2. Foreign Affairs.	5. <i>The Seceded States Admitted.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	6. <i>Impeachment of the President.</i>
	1. Domestic Affairs.	7. <i>The Fourteenth Amendment.</i>
	2. Foreign Affairs.	8. <i>Fenian Excitement.</i>
3. Hayes' Administration. (1877-'81.)	1. Domestic Affairs.	1. <i>Purchase of Alaska.</i>
	2. Foreign Affairs.	2. <i>French in Mexico.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	3. <i>Laying of the Atlantic Cable.</i>
	1. Domestic Affairs.	4. <i>Treaty with China.</i>
	2. Political Parties.	1. <i>Pacific Railroad.</i>
	1. Domestic Affairs.	2. <i>The Fifteenth Amendment.</i>
	2. Political Parties.	3. <i>Prosperity of the Country.</i>
4. Garfield and Arthur's Administration. (1881-'85.)	1. Domestic Affairs.	4. <i>Fires.</i>
	2. Domestic Affairs.	1. <i>Treaty of Washington.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	2. <i>Proposed Annexation of San Domingo.</i>
	1. Inauguration.	1. <i>The Modoc Indians.</i>
	2. Domestic Affairs.	2. <i>Railroad Panic.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	3. <i>Centennial Anniversaries.</i>
	1. Foreign Affairs.	4. <i>The Centennial Exhibition.</i>
5. Cleveland's Administration. (1885-'89.)	2. Political Parties.	5. <i>War with the Sioux.</i>
	1. Domestic Affairs.	1. <i>U. S. Troops at the South Withdrawn.</i>
	2. Foreign Affairs.	2. <i>A Railroad Strike.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	3. <i>"Bland Silver Bill."</i>
	1. Domestic Affairs.	4. <i>The Yellow Fever.</i>
	2. Foreign Affairs.	5. <i>The Resumption of Specie Payment.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	6. <i>Indian Difficulty.</i>
6. States Admitted during this Epoch.	1. Domestic Affairs.	7. <i>Prosperity of the Country.</i>
	2. Foreign Affairs.	1. <i>Fishery Award.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	2. <i>Treaty with China.</i>
	1. Inauguration.	1. <i>The Star Route Frauds.</i>
	2. Domestic Affairs.	2. <i>Assassination of President Garfield.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	3. <i>Accession of Arthur.</i>
	1. Foreign Affairs.	4. <i>Flood in the Mississippi Valley.</i>
7. Progress in Civilization.	2. Political Parties.	5. <i>The Brooklyn Bridge.</i>
	1. Domestic Affairs.	6. <i>A Civil Service Bill.</i>
	2. Foreign Affairs.	7. <i>Letter-postage.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	8. <i>Order of Presidential Succession.</i>
	1. Domestic Affairs.	9. <i>Exposition at New Orleans.</i>
	2. Foreign Affairs.	1. <i>Chinese Immigration.</i>
	3. Political Parties.	2. <i>Treaty with Mexico.</i>

## QUESTIONS FOR CLASS USE.

THESE questions are placed at the close of the work rather than at the foot of each page, in order to compel a more independent use of the book. As far as possible, topical recitations should be encouraged. On naming the subject of a paragraph, the pupil should be expected to tell all he knows about it. A little patience and practice in this method will achieve wonderful results. The following pages often present topical questions in the hope of gradually leading the pupil to this system of study. The figures refer to the pages of the book.

### INTRODUCTION.

9. From what continent did the first inhabitants of America probably come? How did they get here? (At that time it is probable that Bering Strait was not cut through, and the two continents were connected.) What remains of these people are found?

10. Where do they occur? What proof is there of their antiquity? Describe the ruins at Newark, Ohio. The mound at St. Louis. The embankment in Adams County, Ohio. Are earth-works permanent? Describe the ruins in South America. Who were the mound-builders?

11. What became of them? Who succeeded them? How did the Indians compare with them? What do you say of the number of the Indians? Where were they most numerous?

12, 13. Were there any blacksmiths, carpenters, etc., among them? Were they a progressive people? In what were they skilled? How did they regard labor? Describe the life of their women. Give an account of the Iroquois Confederacy. Who are the Pueblo Indians? Describe the Indian disposition. His power of endurance.

14-17. His religion. Did he have any idea of God? What policy should be pursued toward the Indian? Can you give any account, from your recent reading, of the efforts now making to educate the Indian? Who were the Northmen? What traditions about their having discovered and settled America? Are these stories credible? Are there any remains of this people now existing? Were their discoveries of any value? At what date does the history of this country begin? Name the subjects and limits of the six epochs into which this history is divided.

### FIRST EPOCH.

19. What was the state of geographical knowledge in Europe in the fifteenth century? Why could not sailors have crossed the ocean before as well as then? Why were books of travel more abundant then? Why were they so eagerly read?

20. By what route were goods from the East then obtained? What was the commercial problem of that day? Columbus' idea? What facts strengthened his view? (See note, p. 21.) Tell something of his life.

21. Why did he seek assistance? Before whom did he lay his plan? How was it received? Did the king treat him fairly? To whom did Columbus apply next? How was he regarded? What reply was made him?

22. What did Columbus' friends do for him? What offer did Queen Isabella make? Were her jewels sold? What new trouble assailed Columbus? What vessels composed his fleet? Give some of the incidents of the voyage.

23. Did Columbus waver? (There seems to be no truth in the common statement that he promised to turn back, if he did not discover land in three days.) Describe the discovery of land. The landing. When and where was this? What region did Columbus think he had reached? What was the result? For what did he search? What other islands did he discover?

24. Describe his reception on his return. How many subsequent voyages did Columbus make? What settlement did he make? (See p. 289.) Did he discover the main-land? Did he know that he had found a new continent? Where is Columbus' tomb? How was the continent named?

25. What was the plan of John Cabot? What discoveries did he make? Did his discoveries antedate those of Columbus? Where and when is it probable the American continent was first discovered? What discoveries did Sebastian Cabot make? Did England improve them? Of what value were they?

26. What four nations explored the territory of the future United States? What portion of the continent did each explore? What was the feeling in Spain? What effect was produced? Why did Ponce de Leon come to the new world?

27. What land did he discover? Why did he so name it? What success did he meet? What discovery did Balboa make? Describe the expedition of De Narvaez. Its fate. Of De Soto. Of De Ayllon.

28. What region did De Soto traverse? Did he make any valuable discoveries? What river was his burial-place? When? What became of his companions?

29. When, where, and by whom was the first town in the United States founded? What is the probable origin of the name California? Why did Cortez explore that region? Who made the first voyage along the Pacific coast? Which is the second oldest town in the United States? When and by whom was it founded?

30. What was then the great wish of maritime nations? What was the extent of the Spanish possessions in the new world? Who was the first French navigator to reach the continent? When? What name did he give it? Who discovered the River St. Lawrence? Why did he so name it?

31. Why was Montreal so named? Who were the Huguenots? What was Coligny's plan? Who led the first expedition? Fate of the colony? Give an account of the second expedition. Tell the amusing story of the longevity of the Indians.

32. What was the fate of the second colony? What French navigator was the next to ascend the St. Lawrence? How did he find things at Hochelaga? When, where, and by whom was the first permanent French settlement made in America? How much land was granted to this colony?

33. When, where, and by whom was the first permanent French settlement

made in Canada? What journey did Champlain make? What discoveries? The consequence of his trip? Who explored the Mississippi valley? What relics of them remain? Tell something of their heroism. Of Father Marquette. Of his death.

34. Tell of La Salle's adventures. What were the results of French enterprise? How did it compare with English enterprise? When did the English awake to the importance of American discovery? Who made the first attempt to carry out Cabot's plan?

35. What success did he have? Was the discovery of gold profitable? What discovery did Sir Francis Drake make? Describe his buccaneering adventures (p. 42). Where did Drake winter on the Pacific coast?

36. What was the view of Sir Humphrey Gilbert? His fate? Who adopted his plan? Give some account of Sir Walter Raleigh. Why was Virginia so named? Where did Raleigh plant his first colony? Give its history.

37. What did the colonists introduce into England on their return? Story told of Raleigh's smoking? Give the history of the second colony. What kept the interest in America alive? How did Gosnold shorten the voyage across the Atlantic?

38. What discoveries did Gosnold make? Captain Pring? Results of these explorations? What was South Virginia? North Virginia? Where, when, and by whom was the first English settlement made in the United States? Tell some of the provisions of the charter granted to these companies. What is a charter? *Ans.* A document which confers the title to certain land, and, not unlike a constitution, defines the form of government, and secures to the people certain rights and privileges. What is a patent? *Ans.* It is now the exclusive right to any invention; formerly it was a grant conferring land and the right to plant a colony.

39. Who entered New York harbor next after Verrazani? Was Hudson a Dutchman? What river did he discover? What claim did the Dutch found on this discovery? What name did they give to the region? State the claims of these four nations, and the settlements they had made.

40. Why were these claims conflicting? Had these nations any idea of the extent of the country? Which nation ultimately secured the whole region? Which centuries were characterized by explorations, and which century by settlements? Name the permanent settlements which were made at the beginning of the seventeenth century.

## SECOND EPOCH.

45, 46. Name the thirteen colonies. Were they united during this epoch? What was the character of the Virginia colonists? What was their success? Describe the services of John Smith. Narrate some of the incidents of his life.

47, 48. What was his theory of founding a colony? Tell the story of his capture by the Indians. What change in the government of the colony was made by the second charter? Was it based on the principle of self-government? Why did Smith leave? What was its effect on the colony? Tell something of the "Starving Time".

49. How did relief come? What change was made by the third charter? Describe the marriage of Pocahontas. Her visit to England. Where was the first legislative body held?

50. When was the first constitution given? Of what value were these charters? State some particulars of the prosperity of the colony. Of the culture of tobacco. Of the purchase of wives. When and how was slavery introduced? Why?

51. Why did the Indians now become hostile? Give some account of the massacre. Its result. What new change was next made in the government? Cause? What was the Navigation Act? Why was it oppressive? What was the conduct of the assembly?

52. What division now arose among the people? Tell the story of Bacon's rebellion. Was Bacon a patriot or a rebel? What was the conduct of Berkeley? What curious fact illustrates the ruling sentiment of Massachusetts and of Virginia at that time? What coincidence between this event and the Revolution?

53. Describe John Smith's explorations at the north. What authority was granted to the Council of New England? What became of the Plymouth Company? Give some account of the landing of the Pilgrims. Who were the Puritans? What was the difference between the Puritans and the Pilgrims? Why did the Pilgrims come to this country? When?

54. What was their character? What story is told to illustrate their piety? Describe their sufferings. What is "Plymouth Rock"? What do you mean by Dec. 11, O. S. and Dec. 21, N. S.? Why did not the Indians disturb the settlers?

55. What Indians visited them in the spring? How did Governor Bradford reply to Canonicus' threat? Tell about the scarcity of food. How did the plan of working in common succeed?

56. Did they have any more privileges than the Jamestown colonists? Who settled about Massachusetts Bay? Why was this colony popular? Who founded Salem? Boston? Did the Puritans tolerate other Churches? Why not? Give an account of the difficulty with Roger Williams.

57. Where did he go? What settlement did he found? Why did Mrs. Hutchinson become obnoxious? State the treatment of the Quakers. What union of the colonies was now formed? What was its object? What Indian chiefs befriended Massachusetts and Virginia in their early history? (The grandson of Massasoit was sold as a slave in the West Indies.)

58, 59. Give an account of King Philip's war. Of the "swamp fight". Of the attack on Hadley. How did the colonists protect themselves? How was the war finally ended? How did the Navigation Act affect Massachusetts? Did the Puritans obey it? What change now took place in the government? Give some account of Andros' rule. What action did the colonists take? What form of government was finally imposed upon them?

60. Give an account of the Salem witchcraft. What is a "witch"? Was this delusion common at that time? What two colonies were intimately associated with Massachusetts?

61. Give an account of the early settlement of New Hampshire. Of Maine. What is said of the claims made upon the land by the heirs of these proprietors? Why are these States so named? Who obtained a grant of the territory now embraced in Connecticut? Who claimed this region?

62. Give an account of the early settlement at Windsor, Hartford, Saybrook. How were the Narragansett Indians kept from joining the Pequods against the whites? Describe the attack upon the Pequot fort.

63. What three colonies were formed in Connecticut? What peculiarities in

the government of each? How were they combined into one colony? Why was the charter so highly prized? What story is told of Andros' visit?

64. What colony was established the same year that Hooker went to Hartford? What exiles settled Rhode Island? Why was the island so called? What fact illustrates William's generosity?

65. What was his favorite idea? Why was not the colony allowed to join the New England Union? How was a charter secured? What was its character? Give an account of the settlement of New York by the Dutch. Who were the "patroons"?

66. What was the character of the history of New York under its four Dutch governors? Who was the ablest of them? How much territory did he claim? How did he settle the boundary lines? Tell something of the growth of liberty among the people.

67. Describe old Peter's reluctance to surrender to the English. Why was the colony named New York? Were the people pleased with the English rule? Was the English occupation permanent? Was civil liberty secured under Andros? Dongan? What course did the Duke of York take when he became King of England? Tell how Captain Leisler came to assume the government. Of his trial and execution.

68. In what colony was New Jersey formerly embraced? Who first settled it? When, to whom, and by whom was the land granted? Where and by whom was the first English settlement made? Why so called? How divided? Who settled the different parts?

69. How did New Jersey come to be united to New York? To be made a separate royal province? Where and by whom was the first settlement in Delaware made? In Pennsylvania? Who was the founder of Pennsylvania? Give some account of William Penn. Of the Quakers.

70. How did Penn obtain a grant of this region? Why was it so named? What was Delaware styled? How did Penn settle the territory? What city did he found? Meaning of the name? Rapidity of its growth? What was the "Great Code"? Was religious toleration granted?

71, 72. Give an account of Penn's treaty with the Indians. In what spirit did Penn treat the colony? How came Delaware to be separated from Pennsylvania? Was this separation total? How did Pennsylvania secure the title to its soil? With what intent did Lord Baltimore secure a grant of land in America? When was the first settlement made? Why was Maryland so named? What class of people generally settled this country?

73. What advantage did the Maryland charter confer? What was the "Toleration Act"? How did religious toleration vary in the colonies? Give an account of Clayborne's rebellion. Of the difficulties between the Catholics and the Protestants.

74. What territory was granted to Lord Clarendon? By whom was the Albemarle colony settled? What course did the proprietors take? By whom was the Carteret colony settled? What location did they select? What do you say of the rapidity of its growth?

75. What beneficial influence did the Huguenots have on the colony? What was the "Grand Model"? How was it unfitted for a new country? How was it received? (Read p. 96.) What were the relations between the proprietors and settlers? How were the difficulties ended? How came Carolina to be divided?

76. By what coincidence is Georgia linked with Washington? With what

intention was this colony planned? Character of the settlers? Restrictions of the trustees? Result?

77. How many inter-colonial wars were there? If you include the Spanish war? (See p. 80, note.) Duration of King William's war? Cause? Describe the Indian attacks upon the colonists. Tell the story of Mrs. Dustin.

78, 79. What attacks were made by the colonists in return? Were they successful? What was the result of the war? Length of Queen Anne's war? Cause? Where was the war mainly fought? Effect upon New England? What attack by the colonists at the South? At the North? Tell the story of Mrs. Williams.

80. What was the result of the war? Length of King George's war? Cause? Principal event? Give an account of the capture of Louisburg. Of the Spanish war.

81, 82. Result of the war. Length of the French and Indian war. Cause. Occasions of quarrel. Give an account of Washington's journey to Lake Erie. His return. Result of his journey.

83. What did the French do in the spring of 1754? Tell the story of Washington's first battle. Give an account of the capture of Fort Necessity by the French. Who fired the first gun of this war? Name the five objective points of this war.

84. Why were they so obstinately attacked and defended? Give an account of the defeat of General Braddock. Character of Braddock. Conduct of Washington.

85. Give an account of the second expedition. Who finally captured the fort? What city now occupies its site? What was the principal cause of the easy capture of the fort? (See p. 87, note.) What success did the English meet in Acadia? What cruel act disgraced their victory? What attempt was made on Louisburg? Who finally captured it?

86. Describe the battle of Lake George. Who earned the glory of this victory and who got it? Tell the story of Dieskau's death. The fate of Fort William Henry. Describe the attack on Fort Ticonderoga by Abercrombie.

87. When were both forts captured? Describe the two attempts to capture Niagara. Who forced it to surrender? In what year did these successes occur? Describe the difficulties which General Wolfe met in his attack on Quebec.

88, 89. How did he overcome them? Describe the battle on the Plains of Abraham. What was the result of the battle? What were the conditions of peace?

90, 91. What was the cause of Pontiac's war? Result? Fate of Pontiac? What stratagems did the Indians use? Effect of the French and Indian war? How did the British officers treat the colonial officers? Describe the condition of the colonies at the close of the French and Indian war. How many kinds of government? Name and define each.

92-99. How many colleges? Did the English government support educational interests? Condition of agriculture? Manufactures? Commerce? Was money plenty? Were there many books or papers? How did the people travel? Tell something about the first public conveyance. Condition of morals in New England. Name some peculiar customs. Some rigid laws. Who were entitled to the prefix Mr.? What were common people called? Laws with regard to drinking? Using tobacco? Tell something of the habits of the people in New York. What customs familiar to us are of Dutch origin? How did the style

of living at the South differ from that at the North? Describe a southern plantation. What is said of the luxurious living? State of education in New England? Tell something of the support given to schools. Of the founding of Yale College. Of their town meetings. Of the state of education in the middle colonies. How were the ministers' salaries met? What was the state of education in the southern colonies? Provision made for public worship? Give some idea of the early Virginia laws of worship.

### THIRD EPOCH.

101, 102. How did England treat the colonies? Give some illustrations. What was the tendency of this course of conduct? What was the direct cause of war? The Stamp Act? What were Writs of Assistance? Tell the story of Patrick Henry.

103-105. What efforts were made to resist the law? What effect did they have on the English government? Was this permanent? What was the Mutiny Act? Why was it passed? How was it received by the colonists? Tell about the Boston Massacre. The Boston Tea Party. Why was the tea thrown overboard? For what is Faneuil Hall noted? What did the English now do?

106, 107. What parties were formed? What action did the colonists take? When and where was the First Continental Congress held? What action did it take? When and where was the first blood spilled? Describe how the battle of Lexington occurred.

108, 109. What were the effects of this battle? Tell how the battle of Bunker Hill occurred. Describe it. Tell something of "Old Put".

110. State the effect of this battle. Describe the death of General Warren. Give some account of Ethan Allen.

111. Why were the New Hampshire Grants so called? Describe the capture of Ticonderoga. Meeting of Second Continental Congress. Its action. What was the condition of the army?

112. What expedition was undertaken against Canada? Describe the attack upon Quebec. Its end. How were the British forced to leave Boston?

113. How had they treated the Boston people? The Boston boys? Describe the attack on Fort Moultrie. Its effect. Tell the story of Sergeant Jasper.

114. When was the Declaration of Independence adopted? How many colonies voted for it? (See the Declaration in the Appendix.) Tell the story of the old "liberty bell". How did the campaign near New York occur?

115. Describe the battle of Long Island. What decided it in favor of the English? By what providential circumstance did the Americans escape? What were the prison ships? Who were the Hessians? Tell the story of Nathan Hale.

116, 117. What battles occurred while Washington was falling back? Describe his retreat through New Jersey. How did he escape? What general was captured by the enemy? What was the condition of the country? Describe the battle of Trenton. Tell the story of Rall.

118. The effect of this battle. Name the battles of 1776 in order. Describe the battle of Princeton. What providential circumstance favored the attack?

119. How did the battle of Brandywine occur? Describe it. What decided it in favor of the English? What previous battle did it resemble? Give some account of La Fayette.

120, 121. Describe the battle of Germantown. Why did the Americans fail? How did the campaign in Pennsylvania close? What disastrous attempt was made by the British at the North? Describe the burning of Danbury, the capture of General Prescott, and the murder of Jane McCrea. What events attended General Burgoyne's march south? What measures were taken to check his advance?

122. Who succeeded General Schuyler? What was Schuyler's conduct? What events deranged Burgoyne's plans? How was the siege of Fort Schuyler (Stanwix) raised? Tell something of Kosciusko.

123. Describe the battle of Bennington. For what incident is it noted?

124. Describe the first battle of Saratoga. The second battle. Who was the hero of the fight? How did General Fraser die? Tell some incidents of the campaign.

125, 126. Effect of these fights. Name the battles of 1777 in order. Describe the sufferings at Valley Forge. How could the soldiers endure such misery? What news came in the spring? Story told of Washington? Tell something of the Conway cabal. What story is told of General Reed?

127. What caused the battle of Monmouth to happen? Describe its prominent incident. Tell the history of Benjamin Franklin.

128. Tell the story of Major Molly. What became of General Lee? What campaign was now planned by the aid of the French? How did it turn out? Describe the Wyoming massacre. What poem has been written upon this event? *Ans.* Campbell's Gertrude of Wyoming. Name the battles of 1778 in order.

129. Why was the war now transferred to the South? How did the campaign open? Describe the attack on Savannah. Who were killed? Tell something of Count Pulaski. Was the French aid of great value?

130-132. What characterized the campaign at the North? Tell the story of General Putnam. Describe the capture of Stony Point. General Sullivan's expedition. What do you say of the naval successes? Describe the contest between the Bonhomme Richard and the Serapis. What colony was conquered by the British during this year? Name the principal battles of 1779 in order.

133, 134. What city was now captured? What result followed? How did the battle of Camden occur? Describe it. What was its result? Tell something of the famous partisan warfare. Name some leaders. Story of Marion. Battle of King's Mountain. Death of Colonel Hayne. Effect of this independent warfare. Tell something of the depreciation of the continental money.

135, 136. What mutiny occurred? Tell the story of Arnold's treason. Of André's capture and fate. Of Arnold's escape and reward. In what estimation was he held? Name the principal events of 1780.

137. What was the condition of the army at the South? Who now took command? Describe the battle of the Cowpens. Describe Greene's celebrated retreat. How many times did the rain save him?

138. By what two battles was the contest at the South closed? Were the English or Americans victorious? Illustrate the patriotism of the women. Describe the character of General Greene.

139. Where did Cornwallis go after the failure of his southern campaign? What kind of war did he wage in Virginia? Why did he retire to Yorktown? What plan did Washington now adopt?

140. Describe the siege of Yorktown. Its result. The surrender. The effect.

On what plundering tours did Arnold go? Story told of Nelson? Name the principal battles of 1781 in order.

141, 142. How was the news of Cornwallis' surrender received? Was all peril to our liberties over? What was the condition of the country? What base offer was made to Washington? How did he pacify the army? When was peace signed? What was the result? What course did Washington take?

143. Tell something of the weakness of the government. What held the colonies together? Cause of Shays' rebellion? What need was felt? How was it met? When was the Constitution adopted? Who were the chief authors of the Constitution? What parties arose? What was the Federalist (see p. 310)? How soon was the Constitution ratified? How many States were necessary? When did the new government go into operation?

#### FOURTH EPOCH.

149, 150. What are the limits of this epoch? What was its characteristic idea? Who was the first President of the United States? When and where was he inaugurated? Where was the capital? Name its changes. What was the popular feeling toward Washington? Give some account of Washington's life and character.

151, 152. What difficulties beset the government? What departments were established? Name the members of the first cabinet. Was the Postmaster-General a member? What financial measures were adopted? By whose advice? What did Webster say of Hamilton? Give an account of the whiskey rebellion. Of the Indian war at the north-west. What difficulty arose with England?

153. How was it settled? How was the treaty received in this country? What treaty was made with Spain? Algiers? What was the popular feeling toward France? Why was Genet recalled? What parties now arose? Who were the leaders of each? Their views? Tell something of Randolph.

154, 155. Who was elected second President? Tell something of Adams' life. What were the alien and sedition laws? Why were they passed? How were they received? How did the French difficulty look during this administration? How was it terminated? What reply did Pinckney make to the base offer of the French Directory? What was the state of party feeling? Who was elected third President? Why was not Adams re-elected? What was the important event of Jefferson's administration? Why?

156, 157. Tell something of Jefferson's life and character. Tell how Hamilton was killed. What became of Burr? Tell something of Fulton's invention. Of the war with Tripoli. Of Lieutenant Decatur's exploit.

158. What difficulty now arose with England and France? What is the American doctrine? Was the impressment of seamen general? What was the Embargo Act? (The enemies of this law, spelling the name backward, termed it the O Grab me Act.)

159. What was the issue of the next political campaign? Who was elected fourth President? Views of the federalists? Give an account of Madison's life and character. Of the battle of Tippecanoe. Effect of this Indian war. State how the breach with England widened.

160. Describe the difficulty between the President and Little Belt. When was

war declared? How long did the war last? What was the opening event of the war of 1812? Describe the surrender of Detroit.

161. The battle of Queenstown Heights. How did the naval and the land warfare compare? Describe the fight between the Constitution and Guerriere.

162. Between the Frolic and the Wasp. How many prizes were captured by privateers? What are privateers?

163. What was the effect of these victories? Name the battles of 1812 in order. Plan of the campaign of 1813. What did the armies of the center and north do? What did the British do? What reverse happened to a part of General Harrison's command? Describe this rout. Tell something of Proctor's brutality.

164, 165. Describe the three attacks made by Proctor. In which was he successful? Describe Perry's victory on Lake Erie. What gallant exploit was performed by Perry? What issues depended on this fight? Describe the battle of the Thames. What celebrated Indian was killed? What was the effect of these victories? Who gained great credit?

166. Describe the battle between the Chesapeake and the Shannon. What were Lawrence's dying words? Who used them in battle? What Indian difficulties occurred? How did General Jackson avenge the massacre of Fort Mimms? What story is told of Jackson?

167. What ravages were committed by Admiral Cockburn? Why was New England spared? Name the principal battles of 1813 in order. What movement was made by General Brown? What general led the advance?

168. What battles ensued? Describe the battle of Lundy's Lane. What story is told of Colonel Miller? What battle took place in New York State? How did that happen? Describe it.

169-171. Describe the ravages made by the British on the Atlantic coast. Attack on Washington. On Baltimore. Result of these events. What was the Hartford Convention? What put an end to these fears? Why was the battle of New Orleans unnecessary? Describe this battle. How did it happen that raw militia defeated English veterans? What was the result of this war? Effect upon the federalist party? Who was elected fifth President?

172. Was Monroe a popular man? Give some account of his life and character. What was the characteristic of his administration? What was the Missouri Compromise? Cause of it?

173. Give an account of La Fayette's visit. What territory was gained by treaty? What famous doctrine advanced by Monroe? What political changes now took place? What party was arising? What were its principles? Principles of the democratic party? Who were the champions of each party? Which party absorbed most of the old federalists? Why? Who was elected sixth President? How?

174. Give some account of the life and character of John Quincy Adams. Of his administration. Was it popular? How was the protective tariff received? Who was elected seventh President?

175. Give some account of the life and character of Jackson. Contrast him with John Quincy Adams. What principle did he introduce? What was the nullification ordinance? How did Jackson act?

176. How did Clay pacify? What celebrated debate took place? What is said of Calhoun? Of Clay's patriotism? What action did Jackson take concerning the United States Bank? Its effect?

177, 178. How did speculation become ripe? Give an account of the Black Hawk war. The Seminole war. What is said of Osceola? What difficulty occurred with France? How was it settled? Who were the Presidential candidates? What were their principles? Who was elected eighth President? Give an account of the life and character of Van Buren. Describe the crisis of 1837.

179. What was its effect on trade? What was the patriot war? Van Buren's Sub-Treasury Bill? Tell the story of the steamer Caroline.

180. What was the north-east boundary question? How was it settled? What was the Ashburton treaty? Who was elected ninth President? Who was his opponent? Give an account of the life and character of Harrison. What was the cause of his sudden death? Who succeeded him?

181. Was Tyler's administration successful? Did he remain true to his party? What course did he take with regard to the United States Bank? Give an account of Dorr's rebellion.

182, 183. Of the anti-rent difficulties. Of the Mormons. Of the origin and early history of this sect. Of the invention of the magnetic telegraph. Of the annexation of Texas. Why was this measure warmly opposed? How was the north-western boundary question settled?

184, 185. Who were the Presidential candidates? Give an account of Clay. Who was elected eleventh President? Give an account of the life of Polk. What war now broke out? Give an account of Taylor's campaign on the Rio Grande.

186, 187. Describe the capture of Monterey. The battle of Buena Vista. What battles had Taylor fought? By what incident or peculiarity can you recollect each one? What stories are told of Taylor? Give an account of Kearney's expedition.

188, 189. Describe the conquest of California. Who was the hero of this exploit? Describe the capture of Vera Cruz. The battle of Cerro Gordo. What city now surrendered? Describe the battles before Mexico. The result.

190. When was peace concluded? What did the United States gain by the war? What was the Wilmot proviso? Give an account of the discovery of gold in California.

191. Of the vigilance committees. Of the political parties. Who was elected twelfth President? Give an account of the life and character of Taylor. How long was he President? Who succeeded him? What questions agitated the people?

192. Why were these now awakened? What was the effect? What course did Clay take? Webster? Give some account of Webster.

193. What was the Compromise of 1850? What did it propose? By what name is it commonly known? Give an account of the filibusters. Of the political parties. Who was elected fourteenth President?

194. Give an account of the life of Pierce. Of the Kansas-Nebraska bill. What is squatter sovereignty? Tell how the Public Lands have threatened the peace of the country. How they have enhanced its prosperity.

195. How did the contest arise in Kansas? What was the result? Cause of Brooks' assault on Sumner? What was the Gadsden purchase? Give an account of the treaty with Japan. What political parties now arose?

196. Who was elected fifteenth President? Give some account of Buchanan's life. Of the Know-Nothing party. Of the Dred Scott decision.

197. How was this regarded at the North and at the South? Why was the

Fugitive Slave law obnoxious? What were Personal Liberty bills? Give an account of the John Brown affair. What was the question of the elections? Who were nominated for the Presidency? Who was elected sixteenth President?

198, 199. Give an account of the secession of the South on the election of Lincoln. Give a history of the gradual growth of this movement. When and where was the Confederate government formed? Who were elected President and Vice-President? What action was taken? What was the condition of the country? Give an account of the condition of affairs at Fort Sumter.

200. Was any attempt made by the United States authorities to relieve it? For what did the nation wait? What was the Peace Convention?

No questions are given upon the new States admitted to the Union during this epoch, as each class will naturally commit only that which concerns its own State, and will wish to add to the facts given here those obtained from other sources.

### FIFTH EPOCH.

215, 216. Give an account of Lincoln's inauguration. Of his early history. Of the condition of the country. Was war a necessity? What precipitated this issue? When was the first gun of the Civil War fired? Give an account of the capture of Fort Sumter.

217. What was the effect of this event? What action did the North take? The South? When and where was the first bloodshed? What valuable stores were seized? How did the war in Virginia open?

218. How was Fort Monroe protected from capture? Give an account of the Big Bethel affair. Of the war in Western Virginia. What was the origin of the term "Contrabands"?

219, 220. How did the battle of Bull Run take place? Describe it. By what peculiarity can you recollect it? What is its date? How did Jackson receive the name of "Stonewall"? Give an account of the retreat. Its effect. Describe the battle at Ball's Bluff. Who now took command of the Union troops?

221. Give an account of the war in Missouri. What battles were fought? What leaders on each side? What Union general who afterward became celebrated? What was the condition of affairs in the border States?

222. What step did Davis take? Tell the number of vessels in the Union navy. What naval expeditions were made? What places captured? What was the peculiarity of the attack on the Port Royal forts? Describe the Trent affair.

223. Give a general review of the first year of the war. Describe the preservation of Fort Pickens. The situation at the opening of 1862. What was the plan of the campaign?

224. What was the Confederate line of defense at the West? The Union plan of attack? Where was the first attack? Describe the capture of Fort Henry.

225. Of Fort Donelson. What story is told of General Grant? What was the effect of these victories? What was the next movement? Describe the battle of Shiloh, or Pittsburg Landing.

226, 227. By what peculiarity can you recollect it? How did the battle turn on the second day? How was Corinth captured? Describe the taking of Island No. 10. What were the effects of the Shiloh battle?

228. What line was now held by the Union army? Where were the Confed-

erates located? What movements did they make to break through the Union lines? Describe Bragg's expedition. Was it successful? What was the cause of the battles of Iuka and Corinth? Result?

229. How was Bragg's second expedition stopped? Describe the battle of Murfreesboro. What was its effect? What coincidence occurred?

230. What was Grant's plan for an expedition against Vicksburg? Was it successful? What event closed the Mississippi campaign? What battle was fought in Missouri? What was the condition of the State? What massacre occurred in Kansas?

231, 232. Describe the capture of New Orleans by Farragut. Burnside's expedition against Roanoke Island. What was the importance of Roanoke Island?

233, 234. What places in Florida were captured? Describe the battle between the Monitor and the Merrimac. What was the result?

235. The object of the war in the East? What campaign was undertaken? Who was the commanding general? Describe the siege of Yorktown.

236. The battle of Williamsburg. What checked McClellan's advance? What battle ensued? What was the result? What was now the expectation of the Union army?

237. How did General Joseph E. Johnston thwart General McClellan's plan? Give an account of Jackson in the Shenandoah. What was the effect of this movement? What story is told of Jackson?

238, 239. Describe the battle of Fair Oaks. How was the Union advance on Richmond checked? Who now took command of the Confederate army? What plan did McClellan form? Describe the seven-days battles. In what way was the retreat conducted? With what battle did it close?

240. What was the effect of this campaign? The feeling at the North? Why did Lee now march north? Who took command of the Union army before Washington? Describe Lee's campaign against Pope.

241. What was the effect? What plan did Lee now adopt? Who assumed command of the Army of the Potomac? Describe McClellan's movements in pursuit. On what expedition was Jackson sent?

242, 243. Describe the battle of Antietam. Its effect. The battle of Fredericksburg. Give a review of the second year of the war.

244-246. What Indian conflict occurred at the West? What was the situation at the beginning of the year 1863? What movement did Grant make against Vicksburg? Describe this campaign. The effect. The movements of Rosecrans in Tennessee and Georgia. General Morgan's raid.

247-250. Describe the battle of Chickamauga. By what event can you recollect it? Describe the situation at Chattanooga. The battle of Lookout Mountain. Attack on Missionary Ridge. Its effect. The siege of Knoxville. The battle of Chancellorsville.

251-254. Describe Lee's second invasion of the North. The battle of Gettysburg—first day, second day, third day. Its effect. The attack on Charleston. What two contemporaneous events occurred? What was the "swamp angel"? What can you say concerning the negro troops? Of their charge on Fort Wagner?

255. Give a general review of the third year of the war. State the situation at the beginning of the year 1864. What was Grant's plan?

256, 257. Describe Johnston's plan of defense. How did Sherman drive him

from these positions? Name the battles that occurred. Who succeeded Johnston in command? What followed? How did Sherman capture Atlanta? What was the effect?

258. What prevented Sherman's advance into Georgia? How was he relieved of this difficulty? Where did Hood go? What befell him in Tennessee? Describe the battle of Nashville. What was the effect?

259. Describe Sherman's march to the sea. What was the effect? Describe Kilpatrick's raid to Richmond.

260, 261. Describe the battle of the Wilderness. By what peculiarity was it distinguished? What was the result? Describe the battle of Spottsylvania Court House. What was the result? Describe the battle of Cold Harbor. What famous dispatch did Grant send?

262. Describe the attack on Petersburg. What was the effect of this campaign? Describe the three co-operative expeditions. The mine explosion.

263. The attack on the Weldon railroad. Why did Lee send Early into the Shenandoah Valley? Describe Early's raid.

264, 265. What Union general was now sent to this region? Describe Sheridan's campaign. His ride from Winchester. His devastation of the country. What was the effect of his campaign? Describe the Red River expedition. The rescue of Porter's fleet. The massacre at Fort Pillow.

266, 267. The attack on Mobile by Farragut. The first expedition against Fort Fisher. The second expedition. What can you say of the effectiveness of the blockade? Of the blockade runners?

268, 269. Give an account of the Confederate cruisers. Of the battle between the Alabama and the Kearsarge. Of the Sanitary and Christian Commissions. Of political affairs.

270-272. Who was elected President? Give a general review of the fourth year of the war. Describe the situation at the opening of the year 1865. Describe Sherman's march through the Carolinas. What was the result? What was the situation at Richmond? Describe the attack on Fort Steadman. Why was it made?

273, 274. Describe the battle of Five Forks. What was the effect? Describe the capture of Petersburg and Richmond. The pursuit of Lee. His surrender.

275, 276. Name the terms of surrender. What proofs did Grant give of his generosity? What was the fate of Davis? The cost of the war? Tell about the assassination of Lincoln.

277. What States were added during this epoch?

## SIXTH EPOCH.

281. Who became President on the death of Lincoln? Give an account of the life of Johnson. What was the size of the two armies at the close of the war? What did their peaceful discharge prove?

282. What do you mean by "reconstruction"? What was the reconstruction policy of Johnson? What is the Thirteenth Amendment?

283, 284. What was the condition of the public finances? What was the reconstruction policy of Congress? The result of this clashing between Congress and the President? On what conditions were the seceded States finally re-ad-

mitted to their former position in the Union? Why was Johnson impeached? What was the result? What is the Fourteenth Amendment? Give an account of the French interference in Mexico. How did it end? What territory was added to the United States? Has it any value?

285-287. Give an account of the laying of the Atlantic cable. Give an account of the treaty with China. Who were the Presidential candidates? Who was elected eighteenth President? Give an account of the Pacific Railroad and its value to the country.

288-290. What is the Fifteenth Amendment? What was the population of the United States in 1870? Was the country recovering from the effects of the war? What great fires happened in '71 and '72? What difficulty arose with England? What was the High Commission? Give some account of San Domingo, and its application to be annexed to the United States. What candidates for the Presidency were nominated in 1873? Who was chosen? Give some account of Horace Greeley.

291-294. Describe the contest with the Modoc Indians. What was the cause of the Panic of '73? Name the Centennial observances of '75. Describe the Centennial Exhibition at Philadelphia. Give an account of the "Custer massacre". Who were nominated for the Presidency in '76? What was the Joint Electoral Commission? What questions agitated the country at that time?

294-296. What was the Southern policy of President Hayes? What was the result? Describe the Railroad Strikes of '77. What was the Bland Silver Bill? When were specie payments resumed? What was the population of the United States by the census of '80? What was the Fishery Award? What was the feeling in this country with reference to this award? Who were the nominees at the Presidential election of '80?

296-300. How was President Garfield's election and inauguration received? What were the Star Route Frauds? Describe the assassination, sickness, and death of the President. What important events characterized the administration of President Arthur? Describe the Brooklyn Bridge. Name the different rates of letter-postage at the various stages of its reduction under our laws. Who were the Presidential nominees at the election of '84?

300. What were the principal events in the administration of President Cleveland?

301. What States have been added during the Sixth Epoch?

## HISTORICAL RECREATIONS.

[For answers not contained in this book, see *Barnes' Popular History of the U. S.* Examine especially the title "Political Parties" in the Index.]

1. In what battle was Betty Stark the watchword?
2. What battle occurred when both armies were marching to make a night attack upon each other?
3. What battles have resulted in the destruction or surrender of an entire army?
4. What general rushed into battle without orders and won it?
5. What trees are celebrated in our history?
6. In what battle did Washington bitterly rebuke the commanding general, and himself rally the troops to battle?
7. What three ex-Presidents died on the 4th of July?
8. What cities have undergone a siege?
9. Contrast the characters of Washington and Jefferson.
10. By whom, and on what occasion, were the words used, "Millions for defense, but not one cent for tribute"?
11. Give the coincidences in the lives of the three great statesmen—Webster, Clay, and Calhoun.
12. After whom ought this continent to have been named?
13. What celebrated philosopher, when a boy, went without meat to buy books?
14. How did a half-witted boy once save a fort from capture?
15. Name the retreats famous in our history.
16. When did a fog save our army? A rain?
17. When did a stone house largely decide a battle? A stone wall?
18. What general was captured through his carelessness, and exchanged for another taken in a similar way?
19. What battles have been decided by an attack in the rear?
20. Who said, "I would rather be right than President"?
21. When has an unnecessary delay cost a general a victory?
22. Name the events in our history which seem to you providential.
23. What general died at the moment of victory?
24. Name some defeats which had all the effect of victories.
25. Of what general was this said to be always true?
26. When was the Mississippi River the western boundary of the United States?
27. What territory has the United States acquired by purchase? By conquest?  
By annexation?
28. What Vice-Presidents were afterward elected Presidents?
29. What navigator shortened the voyage across the Atlantic?
30. What tea party is celebrated in our history?
31. Who was President from 1787 (the adoption of the Constitution) to 1789?
32. How many attacks have been made on Quebec?
33. Who said, "I am not worth purchasing, but such as I am the king of England is not rich enough to buy me"?
34. Which is the longer, the Atlantic Cable or the Pacific Railroad?
35. Why were the River St. Lawrence, Florida, St. Augustine, etc., so named?
36. What naval commander captured his antagonist as his own vessel was sinking?
37. How many expeditions have been made into Canada?
38. What battle was preceded by prayer?

39. What do the French names in the Mississippi valley indicate?
40. What do the names New York, New England, New Hampshire, Georgia, Carolina, etc., indicate?
41. When has the question of the Public Lands threatened the Union?
42. Who, in a frail canoe, on a stormy night, visited an Indian wigwam to save the lives of his enemies?
43. In what battle did the Continentals gain the victory by falling back and then suddenly facing about upon the enemy?
44. How many times has Fort Ticonderoga been captured?
45. Why were Davis Strait, Baffin Bay, Hudson River, etc., so named?
46. What do the names San Salvador, Santa Cruz, La Trinidad, etc., indicate?
47. In what battles had the opposing generals formed the same plan?
48. What Presidents died in office?
49. What father and son were Presidents?
50. What administrations have been most popular?
51. Who fired the first gun in the French and Indian War?
52. What battle was fought and gained without a commanding officer?
53. How many rebellions have occurred in our history?
54. Who was called the "Great Pacifier"? Why?
55. What was the "Nullification Act"?
56. How many of our Presidents have been military men?
57. Why did not Webster and Clay become Presidents?
58. Who was "Old Rough and Ready"?
59. Who was the "Sage of Monticello"?
60. What noted events occurred on April 19th?
61. In whose administration was the largest number of States admitted?
62. In which administrations was none admitted?
63. By whom and under what circumstances was the expression used, "Give me liberty or give me death"?
64. What general arose from a sick-bed to lead his troops into a battle in which he was killed?
65. What five ex-Presidents died in the decade between 1860 and 1870?
66. Where is the "Cradle of Liberty"?
67. Give some familiar names that have been applied to American statesmen.
68. How long did each of our five great wars last—(1) the French and Indian war; (2) the Revolutionary war; (3) the war of 1812; (4) the Mexican war; and (5) the Civil war?
69. State the cause of each of these wars.
70. Name the prominent generals who acquired celebrity in each.
71. Name the principal battles of each.
72. Name the results of each.
73. What fort was carried by a midnight assault?
74. What general escaped by riding down a steep precipice?
75. Who drafted the Declaration of Independence?
76. Who secured its adoption in the Convention?
77. Name the Presidents in chronological order.
78. How many of our Presidents were Virginians?
79. Who were the "bachelor Presidents"?
80. State to what party each President belonged.
81. How many of our Presidents were poor boys?

82. What were the principles of the whigs? The democrats?
83. What party adopted the views of the old federalists on the United States Bank, etc.?
84. How many Presidents have served two terms?
85. What battle was fought after peace had been declared?
86. On what issue was Polk elected President?
87. Contrast John Quincy Adams and Andrew Jackson.
88. On what mountains have battles been fought?
89. Who used the expression, "We have met the enemy, and they are ours"?
90. Whose dying words were, "Don't give up the ship"?
91. When was a general blown up by a magazine, at the moment of victory?
92. What Indian chiefs formed leagues against the whites?
93. What celebrated statesman was killed in a duel?
94. What States were named from mountain ranges?
95. What important contemporaneous events can you name?
96. Was Washington ever wounded in battle?
97. What was meant by saying that "Clay was in the succession"?
98. In what battle did Washington show the most brilliant generalship?
99. What officer lost his life because he neglected to open a note?
100. What army retreated at the moment of victory because the fog was so dense that it did not see how successful it was?
101. How many States were named from their principal rivers?
102. Name some celebrated foreigners who have fought for us.
103. What rendered Valley Forge memorable?
104. How did Harrison gain his popularity? Taylor?
105. Give some account of the United States Bank.
106. In what war was Lincoln a captain and Davis a lieutenant?
107. What colonel, when asked if he could take a battery, replied, "I'll try, sir"?
108. Of what President was it said that "if his soul were turned inside out, not a spot could be found upon it"?
109. What town and army were surrendered without firing a shot?
110. For how many years was the Revolutionary War carried on mainly at the North? At the South?
111. Who was "Poor Richard"?
112. Who were the "Green Mountain Boys"?
113. What colony was founded as a home for the poor?
114. What persecuted people settled the different colonies?
115. What colonies are named after a king or a queen?
116. What religious toleration was granted in the different colonies?
117. Which colonies early enjoyed the greatest liberty?
118. What colony took the Bible as its guide?
119. In what battle was the left wing, when separated from the main body by a river, attacked by an overwhelming force of the enemy? The right wing?
120. In what battle did both generals mass their strength on the left wing, expecting to crush the enemy's right?
121. How many invasions of the North did Lee make?
122. What victories induced him to attempt each of these invasions?
123. By what battle was each invasion checked?
124. How many invasions of Kentucky did Bragg make?
125. How was each stopped?

126. For how many years has the United States been involved in war?
127. What object did Penn, Lord Baltimore, and Oglethorpe each have in founding a colony in the new world?
128. What President was impeached?
129. What ex-Vice-President was tried for treason?
130. Name the four prominent battles fought by General Taylor.
131. What noted expressions of General Taylor became favorite mottoes? Of General Grant?
132. What President vetoed the measures of the party that elected him?
133. Of what statesman was it said that "he was in the public service fifty years, and never attempted to deceive his countrymen"?
134. Who is said to have used the words, "A little more grape, Captain Bragg"?
135. From what States have Presidents been elected?
136. Give the number and names from each State.
137. What battle did General Gates win? What battle did he lose?
138. What battles did Washington win? What battles did he lose?
139. What President elect came to Washington in disguise?
140. Give a brief history of the slavery question.
141. When were slaves introduced into this country?
142. Name the generals who commanded the Army of the Potomac.
143. Name the principal battles fought by McClellan—Rosecrans—Bragg—Lee—Hooker—Sheridan—Grant—Sherman—Beauregard—Meade—Pope—Buell—Taylor—Scott—Thomas—Johnston.
144. Describe the "March to the Sea".
145. What two battles were fought in the "Wilderness"?
146. What was the "Missouri Compromise"? The "Compromise of 1850"?
147. What is "squatter sovereignty"? Who was its author?
148. Of whom was it said that "he touched the dead corpse of public credit, and it sprung upon its feet"?
149. What were the "alien and sedition laws"?
150. Who was the "old man eloquent"?
151. When was the first railroad constructed? The first steamboat? The first magnetic telegraph? The first sewing-machine?
152. When was the Erie Canal opened? The Pacific Railroad?
153. What President introduced "rotation in office"?
154. Why, in the Missouri Compromise, was 36° 30' taken as the boundary between the slave and the free States?
155. What is the "Monroe Doctrine"?
156. Who was the inventor of the cotton-gin?
157. What is a "protective tariff"?
158. What is meant by "Reconstruction"?
159. What Presidents were not elected to that office by the people?
160. To what party did Henry Clay belong? J. Q. Adams? Thomas Jefferson? John C. Calhoun? Andrew Jackson? Daniel Webster? Stephen A. Douglas? Alexander Hamilton? George Washington?
161. What President had not voted for forty years?
162. What two distinguished generals of the same name served in the Confederate army? Name the battles fought by each.
163. What was the "Dred Scott decision"?
164. What was the "Kansas-Nebraska Bill"?

165. Give an account of the principal parties which have arisen since the Constitutional Convention of 1787.
166. Who were the "Silver Greys"? The "Hunkers"? The "Barn-Burners"? The "Woolly-Heads"? The "Free-Soilers"? The "Know-Nothings"? The "Anti-Renters"? The "Unionists"? The "Stalwarts"?
167. Give an account of the different attempts to lay the Atlantic cable.
168. Give a history of the difficulty between President Johnson and Congress.
169. What nations settled the different States?
170. How many amendments have been made to the Constitution?
171. What was the "Hartford Convention"?
172. What are "State rights"?
173. What was the Secretary of State formerly called?
174. Tell some stories illustrating the patriotism of the women of the Revolution.
175. Give an account of the Public Lands.
176. What State was admitted to the Union first after the original thirteen?
177. Who are the "Mormons"?
178. For what is Ethan Allen noted?
179. What battles have been fought in Virginia? South Carolina? Louisiana? New York? Massachusetts? New Jersey? Maryland? Pennsylvania? Georgia? Michigan?
180. What was the "Fugitive Slave Law"?
181. Name some unsuccessful candidates for the Presidency.
182. For what is John Brown noted?
183. Who were the "Filibusters"?
184. Give an account of Farragut's most celebrated exploit.
185. Why was "Stonewall" Jackson so called?
186. Give an account of Butler's military career.
187. What was the most prominent event of Jefferson's administration? Jackson's? Monroe's?
188. What treaties are celebrated in our history?
189. What President was once a tailor's apprentice?
190. What was the object of the "American party"?
191. What was the "Gadsden purchase"?
192. Name the various difficulties which have arisen with England.
193. What was the "Wilmot Proviso"?
194. What President followed Washington—Taylor—Jefferson—Lincoln—John Quincy Adams—Pierce?
195. Who was President in 1812—1832—1846—1850—1861?
196. Describe the operations of the Confederate cruisers during the Civil War. Of the "blockade runners".
197. What distinguished generals have been unsuccessful candidates for the Presidency? Successful candidates?
198. Why did the French in Canada extend their explorations westward to the Mississippi rather than southward into New York?
199. What was the "Trent affair"?
200. Name and describe some important naval engagements.
201. In what battle did the defeated general leave his wooden leg?
202. What was the "O grab me Act"?
203. Who first used the expression, "To the victors belong the spoils"?
204. What is the "Civil Service Reform"?

205. What right did the English and Spanish have to occupy this continent?
206. Why is this country English rather than French?
207. What are "patroon estates"?
208. What was the difference between the Pilgrims and the Puritans?
209. Has a State any right to coin money?
210. Ought André to have been executed?
211. What President in his inaugural called attention to the fact that he was the first one born after the Revolution?
212. Who is the author of the "Thirty-Years View"?
213. Name the prominent histories of the United States.
214. What portion of the United States favored the annexation of Texas?
215. Who first used the expression, "A government of the people, by the people, and for the people"?
216. What was the "Town Meeting" of the early New England times?
217. How many times in our history has the House of Representatives been called upon to choose the President?
218. Which Presidents were college graduates?
219. How many States voted for Washington the first time as President?
220. Why did President Hayes take the oath of office privately the day before his public Inauguration?
221. Where is the Key to the Bastile?
222. What effect did the invention of the cotton-gin have on slavery?
223. What three Italians were prominent in American discoveries?
224. Name some important events in our history that have occurred on Friday.
225. What was the "Society of the Cincinnati"?
226. Where was "Franklin State"?
227. What war was waging in Europe during our King William's War? During the French and Indian War?
228. Why did the Iroquois generally favor the English rather than the French?
229. How did the English treatment of the Indians compare with the French?
230. What influence did the following statesmen have on Congressional legislation: Thomas H. Benton, William H. Seward, Alexander Hamilton, Henry Clay, Daniel Webster, John Quincy Adams, John C. Calhoun?
231. For how many years was New York the capital of the United States?
232. What was the object of the Electoral College?
233. What Vice-President took the oath of office two days before the President?
234. Of whom was it said, "When the ermine of the official robe fell on him, it touched nothing less spotless than itself"?
235. How were the early Presidents nominated for office?
236. What constitutes citizenship in the United States?
237. Why was not Washington inaugurated until April 30?
238. Was Hamilton a Federalist or Anti-Federalist? Jefferson? Madison?
239. What is the longest period during which any one party has remained in power in the United States?
240. What was the meaning of the campaign cry "Fifty-four forty, or fight"?
241. What was the "Western Reserve"?
242. Quote the first telegram.
243. Have the President and the Vice-President always belonged to the same party?
244. Who was Lady Rebecca?

## DECLARATION OF INDEPENDENCE.

THE following preamble and specifications, known as the Declaration of Independence, accompanied the resolution of Richard Henry Lee, which was adopted by Congress on the 2d day of July, 1776. This declaration was agreed to on the 4th, and the transaction is thus recorded in the Journal for that day:

*“ Agreeably to the order of the day, the Congress resolved itself into a committee of the whole, to take into their further consideration the Declaration; and, after some time, the president resumed the chair, and Mr. Harrison reported that the committee have agreed to a Declaration, which they desired him to report. The Declaration being read, was agreed to as follows:”*

### A DECLARATION BY THE REPRESENTATIVES OF THE UNITED STATES OF AMERICA, IN CONGRESS ASSEMBLED.

When, in the course of human events, it becomes necessary for one people to dissolve the political bands which have connected them with another, and to assume, among the powers of the earth, the separate and equal station to which the laws of nature and of nature's God entitle them, a decent respect to the opinions of mankind requires that they should declare the causes which impel them to the separation.

We hold these truths to be self-evident—that all men are created equal; that they are endowed by their Creator with certain inalienable rights; that among these are life, liberty, and the pursuit of happiness. That, to secure these rights, governments are instituted among men, deriving their just powers from the consent of the governed; that, whenever any form of government becomes destructive of these ends, it is the right of the people to alter or abolish it, and to institute a new government, laying its foundations on such principles, and organizing its powers in such form, as to them shall seem most likely to effect their safety and happiness. Prudence, indeed, will dictate that governments long established should not be changed for light and transient causes; and, accordingly, all experience hath shown that mankind are more disposed to suffer, while evils are sufferable, than to right themselves by abolishing the forms to which they are accustomed. But when a long train of abuses and usurpations, pursuing invariably the same object, evinces a design to reduce them under absolute despotism, it is their right, it is their duty, to throw off such government, and to provide new guards for their future security. Such has been the patient sufferance of these colonies, and such is now the necessity which constrains them to alter their former systems of government. The history of the present king of Great Britain is a history of repeated injuries and usurpations, all having in direct object the establishment of an absolute tyranny over these States. To prove this, let facts be submitted to a candid world.

1. He has refused his assent to laws the most wholesome and necessary for the public good.
2. He has forbidden his governors to pass laws of immediate and pressing importance, unless suspended in their operations till his assent should be obtained; and, when so suspended, he has utterly neglected to attend to them.

3. He has refused to pass other laws for the accommodation of large districts of people, unless those people would relinquish the right of representation in the Legislature—a right inestimable to them, and formidable to tyrants only.

4. He has called together legislative bodies at places unusual, uncomfortable, and distant from the repository of their public records, for the sole purpose of fatiguing them into compliance with his measures.

5. He has dissolved representative houses repeatedly, for opposing, with manly firmness, his invasions on the rights of the people.

6. He has refused, for a long time after such dissolutions, to cause others to be elected, whereby the legislative powers, incapable of annihilation, have returned to the people at large for their exercise; the State remaining, in the meantime, exposed to all the dangers of invasions from without, and convulsions within.

7. He has endeavored to prevent the population of these States: for that purpose obstructing the laws for the naturalization of foreigners; refusing to pass others to encourage their migration hither, and raising the conditions of new appropriations of lands.

8. He has obstructed the administration of justice, by refusing his assent to laws for establishing judiciary powers.

9. He has made judges dependent on his will alone for the tenure of their offices, and the amount and payment of their salaries.

10. He has erected a multitude of new offices, and sent hither swarms of officers to harass our people and eat out their substance.

11. He has kept among us in times of peace, standing armies, without the consent of our Legislatures.

12. He has affected to render the military independent of, and superior to, the civil power.

13. He has combined with others to subject us to a jurisdiction foreign to our constitutions, and unacknowledged by our laws; giving his assent to their acts of pretended legislation;

14. For quartering large bodies of armed troops among us;

15. For protecting them, by a mock trial, from punishment for any murders which they should commit on the inhabitants of these States;

16. For cutting off our trade with all parts of the world;

17. For imposing taxes on us without our consent;

18. For depriving us, in many cases, of the benefits of a trial by jury;

19. For transporting us beyond seas, to be tried for pretended offenses;

20. For abolishing the free system of English laws in a neighboring province, establishing therein an arbitrary government, and enlarging its boundaries, so as to render it at once an example and fit instrument for introducing the same absolute rule into these colonies;

21. For taking away our charters, abolishing our most valuable laws, and altering, fundamentally, the forms of our governments;

22. For suspending our own Legislatures, and declaring themselves invested with power to legislate for us in all cases whatsoever.

23. He has abdicated government here, by declaring us out of his protection, and waging war against us.

24. He has plundered our seas, ravaged our coasts, burned our towns, and destroyed the lives of our people.

25. He is at this time transporting large armies of foreign mercenaries to complete the works of death, desolation and tyranny, already begun with circum-

stances of cruelty and perfidy scarcely paralleled in the most barbarous ages, and totally unworthy the head of a civilized nation.

26. He has constrained our fellow-citizens, taken captive on the high seas, to bear arms against their country, to become the executioners of their friends and brethren, or to fall themselves by their hands.

27. He has excited domestic insurrection among us, and has endeavored to bring on the inhabitants of our frontiers the merciless Indian savages, whose known rule of warfare is an undistinguished destruction of all ages, sexes, and conditions.

In every stage of these oppressions we have petitioned for redress in the most humble terms; our repeated petitions have been answered only by repeated injury. A prince whose character is thus marked by every act which may define a tyrant, is unfit to be the ruler of a free people.

Nor have we been wanting in our attentions to our British brethren. We have warned them, from time to time, of attempts by their legislature to extend an unwarrantable jurisdiction over us. We have reminded them of the circumstances of our emigration and settlement here. We have appealed to their native justice and magnanimity, and we have conjured them by the ties of our common kindred to disavow these usurpations, which would inevitably interrupt our connections and correspondence. They, too, have been deaf to the voice of justice and of consanguinity. We must, therefore, acquiesce in the necessity which denounces our separation, and hold them as we hold the rest of mankind—enemies in war; in peace, friends.

We, therefore, the representatives of the United States of America in general Congress assembled, appealing to the Supreme Judge of the world for the rectitude of our intentions, do, in the name and by the authority of the good people of these colonies, solemnly publish and declare that these united colonies are, and of right ought to be, free and independent States; that they are absolved from all allegiance to the British crown, and that all political connection between them and the state of Great Britain is, and ought to be, totally dissolved, and that, as free and independent States, they have full power to levy war, conclude peace, contract alliances, establish commerce, and do all other acts and things which independent States may of right do. And for the support of this Declaration, with a firm reliance on the protection of Divine Providence, we mutually pledge to each other our lives, our fortunes, and our sacred honor.

The foregoing declaration was, by order of Congress, engrossed, and signed by the following members:

JOHN HANCOCK.

NEW HAMPSHIRE.

JOSIAH BARTLETT,  
WILLIAM WHIPPLE,  
MATTHEW THORNTON.

\*

MASSACHUSETTS BAY.  
SAMUEL ADAMS,  
JOHN ADAMS,  
ROBERT TREAT PAINE,  
ELBRIDGE GERRY.

RHODE ISLAND.

STEPHEN HOPKINS,  
WILLIAM ELLERY.

CONNECTICUT.

ROGER SHERMAN,  
SAMUEL HUNTINGTON,  
WILLIAM WILLIAMS,  
OLIVER WOLCOTT.

NEW YORK.

WILLIAM FLOYD,  
PHILIP LIVINGSTON,  
FRANCIS LEWIS,  
LEWIS MORRIS.

NEW JERSEY.

RICHARD STOCKTON,  
JOHN WITHERSPOON,  
FRANCIS HOPKINSON,

JOHN HART,	THOMAS M'KEAN.	NORTH CAROLINA.
ABRAHAM CLARK.		WILLIAM HOOPER,
PENNSYLVANIA.	MARYLAND.	JOSEPH HEWES,
ROBERT MORRIS,	SAMUEL CHASE,	JOHN PENN.
BENJAMIN RUSH,	WILLIAM PACA,	
BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,	THOMAS STONE,	SOUTH CAROLINA.
JOHN MORTON,	CHARLES CARROLL, of Car-	EDWARD RUTLEDGE,
GEORGE CLYMER	rollton.	THOMAS HEYWARD, JUN.,
JAMES SMITH,	VIRGINIA.	THOMAS LYNCH, JUN.,
GEORGE TAYLOR,	GEORGE WYTHE,	ARTHUR MIDDLETON.
JAMES WILSON,	RICHARD HENRY LEE,	
GEORGE ROSS.	THOMAS JEFFERSON,	GEORGIA.
DELAWARE.	BENJAMIN HARRISON,	BUTTON GWINNETT,
CESAR RODNEY,	THOMAS NELSON, JUN.,	LYMAN HALL,
GEORGE READ,	FRANCIS LIGHTFOOT LEE,	GEORGE WALTON.
	CARTER BRAXTON.	

# CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

WE, the People of the United States, in order to form a more perfect union, establish justice, insure domestic tranquillity, provide for the common defense, promote the general welfare, and secure the blessings of liberty to ourselves and our posterity, do ordain and establish this CONSTITUTION for the United States of America.

## ARTICLE I.—Legislative Department.

SECTION I. All legislative powers herein granted shall be vested in a Congress of the United States, which shall consist of a Senate and House of Representatives.

SECTION II.—CLAUSE 1. The House of Representatives shall be composed of members chosen every second year by the people of the several States, and the electors in each State shall have the qualifications requisite for electors of the most numerous branch of the State Legislature.

CLAUSE 2. No person shall be a representative who shall not have attained to the age of twenty-five years, and been seven years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State in which he shall be chosen.

CLAUSE 3. Representatives and direct taxes shall be apportioned among the several States which may be included within this Union, according to their respective numbers, which shall be determined by adding to the whole number of free persons, including those bound to service for a term of years, and excluding Indians not taxed, three fifths of all other persons. The actual enumeration shall be made within three years after the first meeting of the Congress of the United States, and within every subsequent term of ten years, in such manner as they shall by law direct. The number of representatives shall not exceed one for every thirty thousand, but each State shall have at least one representative; and until such enumeration shall be made, the State of New Hampshire shall be entitled to choose three; Massachusetts, eight; Rhode Island and Providence Plantations, one; Connecticut, five; New York, six; New Jersey, four; Pennsylvania, eight; Delaware, one; Maryland, six; Virginia, ten; North Carolina, five; South Carolina, five; and Georgia, three.

---

PREAMBLE.—Name the six objects of the Constitution. Who "ordained and established" this Constitution? Is the "union" one of states or of people? What branches of government are established under the first three articles of the Constitution?

ARTICLE I.—Section 1. What body has the "power of legislation"? (Note.—The "power of legislation" is that of making laws.) Of what does Congress consist?

Section 2. Who compose the House of Representatives? Who choose the representatives? What are the necessary qualifications of an elector (or voter) for a representative? How long is the term of a representative? Name the three qualifications necessary for a representative. Is a foreign-born person eligible to the office of representative? How are representatives and direct taxes to be apportioned among the states? How was the representative population of the different states to be determined? What limit is there to the number of representatives? Is every state entitled to representation? How many members were there in the first House of Representatives? How often must the Census be taken? How are vacancies in the House to be filled? Who elect the officers of the House?

CLAUSE 4. When vacancies happen in the representation from any State, the executive authority thereof shall issue writs of election to fill such vacancies.

CLAUSE 5. The House of Representatives shall choose their Speaker and other officers; and shall have the sole power of impeachment.

SECTION III.—CLAUSE 1. The Senate of the United States shall be composed of two senators from each State, chosen by the Legislature thereof, for six years; and each senator shall have one vote.

CLAUSE 2. Immediately after they shall be assembled in consequence of the first election, they shall be divided as equally as may be into three classes. The seats of the senators of the first class shall be vacated at the expiration of the second year; of the second class, at the expiration of the fourth year; and of the third class, at the expiration of the sixth year, so that one third may be chosen every second year; and if vacancies happen by resignation, or otherwise, during the recess of the Legislature of any State, the executive thereof may make temporary appointments until the next meeting of the Legislature, which shall then fill such vacancies.

CLAUSE 3. No person shall be a senator who shall not have attained to the age of thirty years, and been nine years a citizen of the United States, and who shall not, when elected, be an inhabitant of that State for which he shall be chosen.

CLAUSE 4. The Vice-President of the United States shall be president of the Senate, but shall have no vote, unless they be equally divided.

CLAUSE 5. The Senate shall choose their other officers, and also a president *pro tempore*, in the absence of the Vice-President, or when he shall exercise the office of President of the United States.

CLAUSE 6. The Senate shall have the sole power to try all impeachments: when sitting for that purpose, they shall be on oath or affirmation. When the President of the United States is tried, the Chief-Justice shall preside; and no person shall be convicted without the concurrence of two thirds of the members present.

CLAUSE 7. Judgment in cases of impeachment shall not extend further than to removal from office, and disqualification to hold and enjoy any office of honor, trust, or profit under the United States; but the party convicted shall nevertheless be liable and subject to indictment, trial, judgment, and punishment, according to law.

SECTION IV.—CLAUSE 1. The times, places, and manner of holding elections for senators and representatives shall be prescribed in each State by the Legislature thereof; but the Congress may at any time, by law, make or alter such regulations, except as to the places of choosing senators.

What body has the sole power of impeachment? (*Notes*.—The first census was taken in 1790; the "ratio of representation" being one representative for 33,000 persons. The number of representatives is fixed by law each decade. It is now (1882) 325, and the "ratio of representation", in accordance with the census of 1880, is 151,912 persons for each representative. In March of the odd year there is a new House of Representatives. Each organized territory has a delegate who can sit in the House, but not vote. The states are each divided, by its own laws, into congressional districts, as many as the number of representatives to which it is entitled; and the electors in each one of these vote for their representative. The phrase "all other persons" meant "slaves"; but this has been amended by the XIVth Amendment. The speaker is always a member of the House; the clerk, sergeant-at-arms, chaplain, etc., are not members. To impeach an officer is to accuse him of official misconduct.)

*Section 3.* Of how many members does the Senate of the United States consist? Who elect the senators? What is a senator's term of office? Explain the classification originally made. What was the object? How are vacancies filled? State the three qualifications necessary for a senator. Who is the president of the Senate? When only can he vote? Who chooses the other officers of the Senate? When can the Senate choose a president *pro tempore* (for the time being)? What "sole power" does the Senate possess? Who presides when the President of the United States is impeached? What number is needed to convict? What penalties can be inflicted in case of conviction? Is a person so convicted liable to a trial-at-law for the same offense?

*Section 4.* Who prescribes the "time, place and manner" of electing representatives and senators? What power has Congress over the state regulations? How often, and when, must Congress meet? (*Note*.—Congress has pre-

CLAUSE 2. The Congress shall assemble at least once in every year, and such meeting shall be on the first Monday in December, unless they shall by law appoint a different day.

SECTION V.—CLAUSE 1. Each house shall be the judge of the elections, returns, and qualifications of its own members, and a majority of each shall constitute a quorum to do business; but a smaller number may adjourn from day to day, and may be authorized to compel the attendance of absent members, in such manner, and under such penalties, as each house may provide.

CLAUSE 2. Each house may determine the rules of its proceedings, punish its members for disorderly behavior, and, with the concurrence of two thirds, expel a member.

CLAUSE 3. Each house shall keep a journal of its proceedings, and from time to time publish the same, excepting such parts as may in their judgment require secrecy, and the yeas and nays of the members of either house on any question shall, at the desire of one fifth of those present, be entered on the journal.

CLAUSE 4. Neither house, during the session of Congress, shall, without the consent of the other, adjourn for more than three days, nor to any other place than that in which the two houses shall be sitting.

SECTION VI.—CLAUSE 1. The senators and representatives shall receive a compensation for their services, to be ascertained by law, and paid out of the treasury of the United States. They shall in all cases, except treason, felony, and breach of the peace, be privileged from arrest during their attendance at the session of their respective houses, and in going to and returning from the same; and for any speech or debate in either house, they shall not be questioned in any other place.

CLAUSE 2. No senator or representative shall, during the time for which he was elected, be appointed to any civil office under the authority of the United States, which shall have been created, or the emoluments whereof shall have been increased, during such time; and no person holding any office under the United States shall be a member of either house during his continuance in office.

SECTION VII.—CLAUSE 1. All bills for raising revenue shall originate in the House of Representatives; but the Senate may propose or concur with amendments, as on other bills.

CLAUSE 2. Every bill which shall have passed the House of Representatives and the Senate, shall, before it become a law, be presented to the President of the United States; if he approve, he shall sign it, but if not, he shall return it, with his objections, to that house in which it shall have originated, who shall enter the objections

---

scribed that senators shall be chosen in the following manner: The Legislature elected last before the end of the senatorial term, on the second Tuesday after its first session, shall choose the next senator. The two branches of the Legislature shall meet separately and vote *visa voce*. They shall then assemble together, and if they agree on any person, he shall be considered duly elected; if they disagree, the joint meeting shall vote *visa voce* from day to day, at 12 M. until a choice is made.)

*Section 5.* Who decides upon the "elections, returns and qualifications" of the representatives and of the senators? What number of the members is necessary for a quorum (needed to do business)? What business can a minority transact? What power is given each house of Congress of making and enforcing rules? What is the law with regard to keeping and publishing a journal of the proceedings? When must the yeas and nays be entered on the journal? What restriction is there upon the time and place of adjournment?

*Section 6.* Who fixes and pays the salaries of members of Congress? What special privileges are granted to members of Congress? To what offices are members of Congress ineligible? Can a Congressman hold another office at the same time?

*Section 7.* What bills must originate in the House of Representatives? What authority is given the Senate with regard to such bills? Describe the three ways in which a bill may become a law—(1) With the President's concurrence; (2) over his veto (I forbid); and (3) by non-return within ten days? What "orders, resolutions, and

at large on their journal, and proceed to reconsider it. If after such reconsideration, two thirds of that house shall agree to pass the bill, it shall be sent, together with the objections, to the other house, by which it shall likewise be reconsidered, and if approved by two thirds of that house, it shall become a law. But in all such cases the votes of both houses shall be determined by yeas and nays, and the names of the persons voting for and against the bill shall be entered on the journal of each house respectively. If any bill shall not be returned by the President within ten days (Sunday excepted) after it shall have been presented to him, the same shall be a law, in like manner as if he had signed it, unless the Congress by their adjournment prevent its return, in which case it shall not be a law.

CLAUSE 3. Every order, resolution, or vote to which the concurrence of the Senate and House of Representatives may be necessary (except on a question of adjournment) shall be presented to the President of the United States; and before the same shall take effect, shall be approved by him, or being disapproved by him, shall be repassed by two thirds of the Senate and House of Representatives, according to the rules and limitations prescribed in the case of a bill.

SECTION VIII.—CLAUSE 1. The Congress shall have power to lay and collect taxes, duties, imposts, and excises, to pay the debts and provide for the common defense and general welfare of the United States; but all duties, imposts, and excises shall be uniform throughout the United States;

CLAUSE 2. To borrow money on the credit of the United States;

CLAUSE 3. To regulate commerce with foreign nations, and among the several States, and with the Indian tribes;

CLAUSE 4. To establish an uniform rule of naturalization, and uniform laws on the subject of bankruptcies throughout the United States;

CLAUSE 5. To coin money, regulate the value thereof, and of foreign coin, and fix the standard of weights and measures;

CLAUSE 6. To provide for the punishment of counterfeiting the securities and current coin of the United States;

CLAUSE 7. To establish post-offices and post-roads;

CLAUSE 8. To promote the progress of science and useful arts, by securing, for limited times, to authors and inventors the exclusive right to their respective writings and discoveries;

votes" must be submitted to the President? What is the object of this provision? (Notes.—In case a vacancy occurs in the senatorial representation of any state, the governor of the state can appoint a senator to fill the place, who can hold office only until the next session of the Legislature. The method of representation in the Senate gives in that body perfect equality to all the States, Rhode Island having the same power as Virginia. A senator is chosen by the Legislature, a representative by the people; a senator serves for six years, a representative for two. The Senate tries an officer for misconduct, but he must be impeached by the House of Representatives. The salary of a Congressman is now \$5,000 per year, and mileage (20 cents per mile for every mile of travel by the usual route in coming and going). The speaker of the House has double a member's salary, and the president of the Senate has a salary of \$8,000. One third of the Senate retire from office every two years. By the term "a Congress" is meant the body of senators and representatives holding office during any one representative term of two years; the Congress which began its term March 4, 1885, is the 49th. Each Congress "ends at noon of the 4th of March next succeeding the beginning of its second regular session." The committees in the House are appointed by the Speaker; those in the Senate by itself. The classification of the Senate makes it a more efficient and conservative body than the House, since in the former there are always two thirds of the number old members, while the House is all new every two years. If the president of the Senate were a senator, it would give extra power to one state, which would be contrary to the plan of that body.

Section 8. Eighteen clauses now follow which enumerate the *powers granted to Congress*. What power has Congress with regard to taxes? Duties (taxes on imported or exported articles)? Imposts (taxes on imported articles)? Excises (taxes on articles produced in the country)? Borrowing money? Regulating commerce? Naturalization? Bankruptcies? Coining money? Counterfeiting? Post-offices and post-roads? Authors and inventors? Inferior courts? Piracies? Declaring war? Raising and supporting armies? A navy? Government of the land

CLAUSE 9. To constitute tribunals inferior to the Supreme Court;

CLAUSE 10. To define and punish piracies and felonies committed on the high seas, and offenses against the law of nations;

CLAUSE 11. To declare war, grant letters of marque and reprisal, and make rules concerning captures on land and water;

CLAUSE 12. To raise and support armies, but no appropriation of money to that use shall be for a longer term than two years;

CLAUSE 13. To provide and maintain a navy;

CLAUSE 14. To make rules for the government and regulation of the land and naval forces;

CLAUSE 15. To provide for calling forth the militia to execute the laws of the Union, suppress insurrections, and repel invasions;

CLAUSE 16. To provide for organizing, arming, and disciplining the militia, and for governing such part of them as may be employed in the service of the United States, reserving to the States respectively the appointment of the officers, and the authority of training the militia according to the discipline prescribed by Congress;

CLAUSE 17. To exercise exclusive legislation in all cases whatsoever over such district (not exceeding ten miles square) as may, by cession of particular States, and the acceptance of Congress, become the seat of the government of the United States, and to exercise like authority over all places purchased by the consent of the Legislature of the State in which the same shall be, for the erection of forts, magazines, arsenals, dock-yards, and other needful buildings;—And

CLAUSE 18. To make all laws which shall be necessary and proper for carrying into execution the foregoing powers, and all other powers vested by this Constitution in the government of the United States, or in any department or officer thereof.

SECTION IX.—CLAUSE 1. The migration or importation of such persons as any of the States now existing shall think proper to admit, shall not be prohibited by the Congress prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight, but a tax or duty may be imposed on such importation, not exceeding ten dollars for each person.

CLAUSE 2. The privilege of the writ of habeas corpus shall not be suspended, unless when in cases of rebellion or invasion the public safety may require it.

CLAUSE 3. No bill of attainder or ex-post-facto law shall be passed.

CLAUSE 4. No capitation or other direct tax shall be laid, unless in proportion to the census or enumeration hereinbefore directed to be taken.

CLAUSE 5. No tax or duty shall be laid on articles exported from any State.

---

and naval forces? Calling forth the militia? Organizing the militia? Over what places has Congress exclusive legislation? What power is finally given to Congress to enable it to enforce its authority? What four restrictions upon the Congressional powers are made in this section? (See clauses 1, 2, 16 and 17.) (Notes.—Taxes may be either direct or indirect; the former are laid directly upon the person; the latter upon articles exported, imported, or consumed. Naturalization is the process by which a foreign born person becomes a citizen. The process of naturalization is as follows: (1.) The person declares, on oath before the proper authority, his intention of becoming a citizen of the United States. (2.) Two years, at least, having elapsed, the person takes the oath of allegiance, when he must prove by witness that he has resided in the United States five years and in the state where he seeks to be naturalized one year; that he has borne a good moral character, and has been well-disposed toward the government. The copyright, or exclusive right of publishing a book, is given to an author for 28 years, with the privilege of extension 14 years longer. It is issued only to a citizen or resident of the United States. A patent is now granted to an inventor for 17 years, without the privilege of extension. Any crime punishable with death is a felony. "Letters of marque and reprisal" are commissions given to persons authorizing them to seize the property of another nation. By the term "high seas" is meant the open sea, the highway of nations.)

Section 9. Eight clauses now follow, enumerating the *powers denied to Congress*. What prohibition was made concerning the slave-trade? Writ of habeas corpus? Bill of attainder? Ex-post-facto law? Direct tax? Exports from any state? Trade between the United States? Payments from the Treasury? Titles of nobility? United States office-holder receiving presents from a foreign power? (Notes.—The object of the first clause was to destroy

CLAUSE 6. No preference shall be given by any regulation of commerce or revenue to the ports of one State over those of another; nor shall vessels bound to, or from, one State, be obliged to enter, clear, or pay duties in another.

CLAUSE 7. No money shall be drawn from the treasury but in consequence of appropriations made by law: and a regular statement and account of the receipts and expenditures of all public money shall be published from time to time.

CLAUSE 8. No title of nobility shall be granted by the United States: And no person holding any office of profit or trust under them, shall, without the consent of the Congress, accept of any present, emolument, office, or title, of any kind whatever, from any king, prince, or foreign state.

SECTION X.—CLAUSE 1. No State shall enter into any treaty, alliance, or confederation; grant letters of marque and reprisal; coin money; emit bills of credit; make any thing but gold and silver coin a tender in payment of debts; pass any bill of attainder, ex-post-facto law, or law impairing the obligation of contracts, or grant any title of nobility.

CLAUSE 2. No State shall, without the consent of the Congress, lay any impost or duties on imports or exports, except what may be absolutely necessary for executing its inspection laws; and the net produce of all duties and impost, laid by any State on imports or exports, shall be for the use of the treasury of the United States; and all such laws shall be subject to the revision and control of the Congress.

CLAUSE 3. No State shall, without the consent of Congress, lay any duty of tonnage, keep troops, or ships-of-war, in time of peace, enter into any agreement or compact with another State, or with a foreign power, or engage in war, unless actually invaded, or in such imminent danger as will not admit of delay.

## ARTICLE II.—Executive Department.

SECTION I.—CLAUSE 1. The executive power shall be vested in a President of the United States of America. He shall hold his office during the term of four years, and, together with the Vice-President, chosen for the same term, be elected as follows:

CLAUSE 2. Each State shall appoint, in such manner as the Legislature thereof may direct, a number of electors, equal to the whole number of senators and representatives to which the State may be entitled in the Congress: but no senator or representative, or person holding an office of trust or profit under the United States, shall be appointed an elector.

---

the foreign slave-trade or the importation of negroes from Africa for the purpose of enslaving them. In 1808, a law was passed prohibiting the trade, and in 1820 it was declared to be piracy. A writ of habeas corpus is a written order from a magistrate directing that a certain person shall be brought before him; its object is to guard against false imprisonment or trial in a prejudiced court. A bill of attainder is an English term, meaning an act which without trial inflicts death for treason; attainder of treason can not in the United States work "corruption of blood" so as to prevent a person from transmitting lands to his descendants. An ex-post-facto law makes an act criminal or penal which was not so at the time it was committed. A United States office-holder, wishing to accept a present or distinction offered him by any foreign power, must ask permission of Congress before he can receive it.)

Section 10. Three clauses now follow enumerating the *powers denied to the several States*. What prohibition was made with regard to treaties? Letters of marque and reprisal? Coinage of money? Issuing bills of credit (bills to circulate as money)? Making any other legal tender than gold or silver? A bill of attainder? An ex-post-facto law? The impairing of contracts? Titles of nobility? Imposts? Keeping troops? Making peace or war?

ARTICLE II.—Section 1. In whom is the executive power vested? (Note.—The executive power is that of executing the laws.) How long is the President's term of office? The Vice-President's? Who are the presidential electors? How many are there from each state? Who are ineligible to the office? Describe the method of electing a President, as originally directed by the Constitution. (Note.—This has been superseded by the XIIth Amend-

CLAUSE 3. The Congress may determine the time of choosing the electors, and the day on which they shall give their votes; which day shall be the same throughout the United States.

CLAUSE 4. No person except a natural-born citizen, or a citizen of the United States at the time of the adoption of this Constitution, shall be eligible to the office of President; neither shall any person be eligible to that office who shall not have attained to the age of thirty-five years, and been fourteen years resident within the United States.

CLAUSE 5. In case of the removal of the President from office, or of his death, resignation, or inability to discharge the powers and duties of the said office, the same shall devolve on the Vice-President, and the Congress may by law provide for the case of removal, death, resignation, or inability, both of the President and Vice-President, declaring what officer shall then act as President; and such officer shall act accordingly until the disability be removed, or a President shall be elected.

CLAUSE 6. The President shall, at stated times, receive for his services a compensation which shall neither be increased nor diminished during the period for which he shall have been elected, and he shall not receive within that period any other emolument from the United States, or any of them.

CLAUSE 7. Before he enter on the execution of his office, he shall take the following oath or affirmation:—"I do solemnly swear (or affirm) that I will faithfully execute the office of President of the United States, and will, to the best of my ability, preserve, protect, and defend the Constitution of the United States."

SECTION II.—CLAUSE 1. The President shall be commander-in-chief of the army and navy of the United States, and of the militia of the several States, when called into the actual service of the United States; he may require the opinion, in writing, of the principal officer in each of the executive departments, upon any subject relating to the duties of their respective offices; and he shall have power to grant reprieves and pardons for offenses against the United States, except in cases of impeachment.

CLAUSE 2. He shall have power, by and with the advice and consent of the Senate, to make treaties, provided two thirds of the senators present concur; and he shall nominate, and by and with the advice and consent of the Senate shall appoint ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, judges of the Supreme Court, and all other officers of the United States, whose appointments are not herein otherwise provided for, and which shall be established by law; but the Congress may by law vest the appointment of such inferior officers, as they think proper, in the President alone, in the courts of law, or in the heads of departments.

---

ment.) What power has Congress over the electors? What are the necessary qualifications for the office of President? In case of a vacancy, who would become President? (*Note*.—In case of a vacancy in the office of both President and Vice-President, the office would devolve in succession upon the Secretary of State, the Secretary of the Treasury, etc. (See p. 299.) The electors are now chosen on "the Tuesday next after the first Monday in the last November" of each presidential term of office. The electors meet to cast their ballots, generally at the capital of each state, on "the first Wednesday in the last December" of each presidential term of office. When the plan of choosing electors was originally adopted, it was intended to choose good men who should themselves select the President; but it soon came about that the electors were pledged to their respective candidates before their own election. The President's salary is \$50,000 per year, together with the use of the White House.) Can the salary of President be changed during his term of office? Can he receive any other emolument from the national or any state government? Repeat the President's oath of office.

Section 2. Three clauses now follow enumerating the *powers granted to the President*. What authority has the President over the United States army and navy? State militia? The chief officers of the different executive departments? (See note, p. 151.) Reprieves and pardons? The making of treaties? Appointment of ambassadors? Judges of the Supreme Court, etc.? Filling vacancies?

**CLAUSE 3.** The President shall have power to fill up all vacancies that may happen during the recess of the Senate, by granting commissions which shall expire at the end of their next session.

**SECTION III.**—He shall from time to time give to the Congress information of the state of the Union, and recommend to their consideration such measures as he shall judge necessary and expedient; he may, on extraordinary occasions, convene both houses, or either of them, and in case of disagreement between them with respect to the time of adjournment, he may adjourn them to such time as he shall think proper; he shall receive ambassadors and other public ministers; he shall take care that the laws be faithfully executed, and shall commission all the officers of the United States.

**SECTION IV.**—The President, Vice-President, and all civil officers of the United States, shall be removed from office on impeachment for, and conviction of, treason, bribery, or other high crimes and misdemeanors.

### ARTICLE III.—Judicial Department.

**SECTION I.**—The judicial power of the United States shall be vested in one Supreme Court, and in such inferior courts as the Congress may from time to time ordain and establish. The judges, both of the Supreme and inferior courts, shall hold their offices during good behavior, and shall, at stated times, receive for their services a compensation which shall not be diminished during their continuance in office.

**SECTION II.**—**CLAUSE 1.** The judicial power shall extend to all cases, in law and equity, arising under this Constitution, the laws of the United States, and treaties made, or which shall be made, under their authority;—to all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers, and consuls;—to all cases of admiralty and maritime jurisdiction;—to controversies to which the United States shall be a party;—to controversies between two or more States;—between a State and citizens of another State;—between citizens of different States;—between citizens of the same State claiming lands under grants of different States, and between a State, or the citizens thereof, and foreign states, citizens, or subjects.

**CLAUSE 2.** In all cases affecting ambassadors, other public ministers and consuls, and those in which a State shall be party, the Supreme Court shall have original jurisdiction. In all the other cases before mentioned, the Supreme Court shall have appellate jurisdiction, both as to law and fact, with such exceptions and under such regulations as the Congress shall make.

*Section 3.* Defines the *duties of the President*. Name these duties with regard (1) to Congress, (2) to ambassadors, and (3) to United States officers. (*Note.*—Washington and Adams in person read their messages to Congress; the present plan of sending the message by a private secretary was commenced by Jefferson.)

*Section 4.* For what crimes and in what way may any United States officer be removed from office?

**ARTICLE III.—Section 1.** In what is the judicial power of the United States vested? (*Note.*—The judicial power is that of interpreting and applying the laws.) How long do the judges hold office? Can their salary be changed during their term of office?

*Section 2* defines the *jurisdiction of the United States Courts*. Name the cases to which the judicial power of the United States extends. In what cases does the Supreme Court have original jurisdiction? Appellate jurisdiction? What is the law with regard to trial by jury? Where must such a trial be held? Where may a crime be committed “not within a state”? (*Notes.*—The Supreme Court consists of a chief justice and eight associate justices. The salary of the chief justice is \$10,500 and that of an associate \$10,000 per annum. This court meets at Washington annually on the first Wednesday in December. A citizen of the District of Columbia, within the meaning of the Constitution as above, is not a citizen of a State. By original jurisdiction is meant the court in which the case begins; by appellate, is indicated a trial after an appeal from a lower court.)

CLAUSE 3. The trial of all crimes, except in cases of impeachment, shall be by jury, and such trial shall be held in the State where the said crimes shall have been committed; but when not committed within any State, the trial shall be at such place or places as the Congress may by law have directed.

SECTION III.—CLAUSE 1. Treason against the United States shall consist only in levying war against them, or in adhering to their enemies, giving them aid and comfort.

CLAUSE 2. No person shall be convicted of treason, unless on the testimony of two witnesses to the same overt act, or on confession in open court.

CLAUSE 3. The Congress shall have power to declare the punishment of treason; but no attainder of treason shall work corruption of blood, or forfeiture, except during the life of the person attainted.

#### ARTICLE IV.—General Provisions.

SECTION I.—Full faith and credit shall be given in each State to the public acts, records, and judicial proceedings of every other State; and the Congress may by general laws prescribe the manner in which such acts, records, and proceedings shall be proved, and the effect thereof.

SECTION II.—CLAUSE 1. The citizens of each State shall be entitled to all privileges and immunities of citizens in the several States.

CLAUSE 2. A person charged in any State with treason, felony, or other crime, who shall flee from justice, and be found in another State, shall, on demand of the executive authority of the State from which he fled, be delivered up, to be removed to the State having jurisdiction of the crime.

CLAUSE 3. No person held to service or labor in one State, under the laws thereof, escaping into another, shall, in consequence of any law or regulation therein, be discharged from such service or labor, but shall be delivered up on claim of the party to whom such service or labor may be due.

SECTION III.—CLAUSE 1. New States may be admitted by the Congress into this Union; but no new State shall be formed or erected within the jurisdiction of any other State; nor any State be formed by the junction of two or more States, or parts of States, without the consent of the Legislatures of the States concerned as well as of the Congress.

CLAUSE 2. The Congress shall have power to dispose of and make all needful rules and regulations respecting the territory or other property belonging to the United States; and nothing in this Constitution shall be so construed as to prejudice any claims of the United States, or of any particular State.

SECTION IV.—The United States shall guarantee to every State in this Union a republican form of government, and shall protect each of them against inva-

*Section 3. In what does treason consist? What proof is required? Who fixes the punishment? What limit is assigned?*

ARTICLE IV.—*Section 1. What is the law with regard to state records, judicial proceedings, etc.?*

*Section 2. What privileges has the citizen of one state in all the others? Can a criminal or an apprentice escape by fleeing into another state? (Note.—Clause 3 originally included fugitive slaves, but that application was annulled by the XIIIth Amendment.)*

*Section 3. State the law with regard to the formation and admission of new states. What power has Congress over the territory and property of the United States?*

sion, and on application of the Legislature, or of the executive (when the Legislature can not be convened) against domestic violence.

### ARTICLE V.—Power of Amendment.

The Congress, whenever two thirds of both houses shall deem it necessary, shall propose amendments to this Constitution, or, on the application of the Legislatures of two thirds of the several States, shall call a convention for proposing amendments, which, in either case, shall be valid to all intents and purposes, as part of this Constitution, when ratified by the Legislatures of three fourths of the several States, or by conventions in three fourths thereof, as the one or the other mode of ratification may be proposed by the Congress; provided that no amendment which may be made prior to the year one thousand eight hundred and eight shall in any manner affect the first and fourth clauses in the ninth section of the first article; and that no State, without its consent, shall be deprived of its equal suffrage in the Senate.

### ARTICLE VI.—Miscellaneous Provisions.

CLAUSE 1. All debts contracted, and engagements entered into, before the adoption of this Constitution, shall be as valid against the United States under this Constitution, as under the confederation.

CLAUSE 2. This Constitution, and the laws of the United States which shall be made in pursuance thereof; and all treaties made, or which shall be made, under the authority of the United States, shall be the supreme law of the land; and the judges in every State shall be bound thereby, any thing in the Constitution or laws of any State to the contrary notwithstanding.

CLAUSE 3. The senators and representatives before mentioned, and the members of the several State Legislatures, and all executive and judicial officers, both of the United States and of the several States, shall be bound by oath or affirmation to support this Constitution; but no religious test shall ever be required as a qualification to any office or public trust under the United States.

### ARTICLE VII.—Ratification of the Constitution.

The ratification of the conventions of nine States shall be sufficient for the establishment of this Constitution between the States so ratifying the same.

Done in convention, by the unanimous consent of the States present, the seventeenth day of September, in the year of our Lord one thousand seven hundred and eighty-seven, and of the independence of the United States of America the twelfth.

In witness whereof, we have hereunto subscribed our names.

GEORGE WASHINGTON,  
*President, and Deputy from Virginia.*

*Section 4. What must Congress guarantee to every state? When must Congress protect the states?*

*ARTICLE V.—State the two ways in which amendments to the Constitution may be proposed. The two ways in which they may be ratified. What restriction in this article has now lost all force? What provision for the benefit of the smaller states is attached to this article?*

*ARTICLE VI.—What debts did the United States assume when the Constitution was adopted? What is the supreme law of the land? Who are required to take an oath or affirmation to support the Constitution of the United States? Can a religious test be exacted?*

## NEW HAMPSHIRE.

JOHN LANGDON,  
NICHOLAS GILMAN.

## MASSACHUSETTS.

NATHANIEL GORHAM,  
RUFUS KING.

## CONNECTICUT.

WILLIAM SAMUEL JOHNSON,  
ROGER SHERMAN.

## NEW YORK.

ALEXANDER HAMILTON.

## NEW JERSEY.

WILLIAM LIVINGSTON,  
DAVID BREARLEY,  
WILLIAM PATERSON,  
JONATHAN DAYTON.

## PENNSYLVANIA.

BENJAMIN FRANKLIN,  
THOMAS MIFFLIN,  
ROBERT MORRIS,  
GEORGE CLYMER,  
THOMAS FITZSIMONS,  
JARED INGERSOLL,  
JAMES WILSON,  
GOUVERNEUR MORRIS.

## DELAWARE.

GEORGE REED,  
GUNNING BEDFORD, JR.,  
JOHN DICKINSON,  
RICHARD BASSETT,  
JACOB BROOM.

## MARYLAND.

JAMES McHENRY,  
DANIEL OF ST. THOMAS JENIFER,  
DANIEL CARROLL.

## VIRGINIA.

JOHN BLAIR,  
JAMES MADISON, JR.

## NORTH CAROLINA.

WILLIAM BLOUNT,  
RICHARD DOBES SPAIGHT,  
HUGH WILLIAMSON.

## SOUTH CAROLINA.

JOHN RUTLEDGE,  
CHARLES C. PINCKNEY,  
CHARLES PINCKNEY,  
PIERCE BUTLER.

## GEORGIA.

WILLIAM FEW,  
ABRAHAM BALDWIN.

WILLIAM JACKSON, *Secretary.*

## A M E N D M E N T S

To the Constitution of the United States. Ratified according to the Provisions of the Fifth Article of the Foregoing Constitution.

ARTICLE I.—Congress shall make no law respecting an establishment of religion, or prohibiting the free exercise thereof; or abridging the freedom of speech, or of the press; or the right of the people peaceably to assemble, and to petition the government for redress of grievances.

ARTICLE II.—A well-regulated militia, being necessary to the security of a free State, the right of the people to keep and bear arms shall not be infringed.

ARTICLE VII. What was necessary for the adoption of this Constitution? (Note, p. 143.) In what year was it adopted?

AMENDMENTS. (Notes.—The first ten amendments were proposed in 1789 at the first session of the First Congress, and in 1791 were declared adopted. They are of the nature of a Bill of Rights, and were passed in order to satisfy those who complained that the Constitution did not sufficiently guard the rights of the people.)

ARTICLE I. What guarantees are provided concerning religious freedom? Freedom of speech and the press? Peaceable assembly and petition?

ARTICLE II. What guarantee is given with regard to the right of bearing arms?

**ARTICLE III.**—No soldiers shall, in time of peace, be quartered in any house, without the consent of the owner, nor in time of war, but in a manner to be prescribed by law.

**ARTICLE IV.**—The right of the people to be secure in their persons, houses, papers, and effects, against unreasonable searches and seizures, shall not be violated, and no warrants shall issue, but upon probable cause, supported by oath or affirmation, and particularly describing the place to be searched, and the persons or things to be seized.

**ARTICLE V.**—No person shall be held to answer for a capital or otherwise infamous crime, unless on a presentment or indictment of a grand jury, except in cases arising in the land or naval forces, or in the militia, when in actual service in time of war and public danger; nor shall any person be subject for the same offense to be twice put in jeopardy of life or limb; nor shall be compelled in any criminal case to be a witness against himself, nor to be deprived of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law; nor shall private property be taken for public use, without just compensation.

**ARTICLE VI.**—In all criminal prosecutions, the accused shall enjoy the right to a speedy and public trial, by an impartial jury of the State and district wherein the crime shall have been committed, which district shall have been previously ascertained by law, and to be informed of the nature and cause of the accusation; to be confronted with the witnesses against him; to have compulsory process for obtaining witnesses in his favor, and to have the assistance of counsel for his defense.

**ARTICLE VII.**—In suits at common law, where the value in controversy shall exceed twenty dollars, the right of trial by jury shall be preserved, and no fact tried by a jury shall be otherwise re-examined in any court of the United States than according to the rules of common law.

**ARTICLE VIII.**—Excessive bail shall not be required, nor excessive fines imposed, nor cruel and unusual punishments inflicted.

**ARTICLE IX.**—The enumeration in the Constitution of certain rights, shall not be construed to deny or disparage others retained by the people.

**ARTICLE X.**—The powers not delegated to the United States by the Constitution, nor prohibited by it to the States, are reserved to the States respectively, or to the people.

---

ARTICLE III. What is provided with regard to quartering soldiers upon citizens?

ARTICLE IV. What is provided with regard to unreasonable searches and warrants?

ARTICLE V. What provisions are made with regard to a trial for capital offenses? Can a person be tried twice for the same crime? Can a criminal be forced to witness against himself? When can private property be taken for the public use?

ARTICLE VI. What important rights are secured to the accused in case of a criminal prosecution?

ARTICLE VII. When is the right of jury trial guaranteed? How must a fact tried by a jury be re-examined?

ARTICLE VIII. What guarantee is given with regard to excessive bail or fine and unusual punishment?

ARTICLE IX. Does the enumeration of certain rights in the Constitution have any effect upon those not enumerated?

ARTICLE X. What declaration is made concerning the powers neither delegated to Congress nor forbidden the states?

## 350 CONSTITUTION OF THE UNITED STATES.

ARTICLE XI.—The judicial power of the United States shall not be construed to extend to any suit in law or equity, commenced or prosecuted against one of the United States by citizens of another State, or by citizens or subjects of any foreign state.

ARTICLE XII.—The electors shall meet in their respective States, and vote by ballot for President and Vice-President, one of whom, at least, shall not be an inhabitant of the same State with themselves; they shall name in their ballots the person voted for as President, and in distinct ballots the person voted for as Vice-President; and they shall make distinct lists of all persons voted for as President, and of all persons voted for as Vice-President, and of the number of votes for each, which lists they shall sign and certify, and transmit sealed to the seat of the government of the United States, directed to the president of the Senate;—the president of the Senate shall, in the presence of the Senate and House of Representatives, open all the certificates, and the votes shall then be counted;—the person having the greatest number of votes for President, shall be the President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have such majority, then from the persons having the highest numbers not exceeding three on the list of those voted for as President, the House of Representatives shall choose immediately, by ballot, the President. But in choosing the President, the votes shall be taken by States, the representation from each State having one vote; a quorum for this purpose shall consist of a member or members from two thirds of the States, and a majority of all the States shall be necessary to a choice. And if the House of Representatives shall not choose a President whenever the right of choice shall devolve upon them, before the fourth day of March next following, then the Vice-President shall act as President, as in the case of the death or other constitutional disability of the President. The person having the greatest number of votes as Vice-President, shall be the Vice-President, if such number be a majority of the whole number of electors appointed; and if no person have a majority, then from the two highest numbers on the list, the Senate shall choose the Vice-President; a quorum for the purpose shall consist of two thirds of the whole number of senators, and a majority of the whole number shall be necessary to a choice. But no person constitutionally ineligible to the office of President shall be eligible to that of Vice-President of the United States.

ARTICLE XIII.—SECTION 1. Neither slavery nor involuntary servitude, except as a punishment for crime, whereof the person shall have been duly convicted, shall exist within the United States, or any place subject to their jurisdiction.

SECTION 2. Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

---

ARTICLE XI. (*Note.*—This amendment was proposed at the first session of the Third Congress, 1794, and declared adopted in 1798.) What restriction is placed on the judicial power of the United States? Can the citizens of one state bring a suit against another state?

ARTICLE XII. (*Note.*—This amendment was proposed at the first session of the Eighth Congress, 1803, and declared adopted in 1804. It grew up out of the contest in the House of Representatives at the time of Jefferson's election; he was not chosen until the 36th ballot.) Describe in full the mode of choosing the President by the electors. The Vice-President. State the essential qualifications of the Vice-President. (See Art. II., Sec. 1, Clause 4.) In case there is no choice by the electors, how is the President elected? Describe the mode of election in the House. If a President should not be chosen by March 4, who would act as President?

ARTICLE XIII. (*Note.*—This amendment was proposed at the second session of the Thirty-eighth Congress, 1865, and declared adopted in 1865. It grew out of the Civil War. See p. 282.) Repeat the amendment abolishing slavery and involuntary servitude in the United States.

**ARTICLE XIV.**—**SECTION 1.** All persons born or naturalized in the United States, and subject to the jurisdiction thereof, are citizens of the United States and of the State wherein they reside. No State shall make or enforce any law which shall abridge the privileges or immunities of citizens of the United States; nor shall any State deprive any person of life, liberty, or property, without due process of law, nor deny to any person within its jurisdiction the equal protection of the laws.

**SECTION 2.** Representatives shall be appointed among the several States according to their respective numbers, counting the whole number of persons in each State excluding Indians not taxed. But when the right to vote at any election for the choice of electors for President and Vice-President of the United States, representatives in Congress, the executive or judicial officers of a State, or the members of the Legislature thereof, is denied to any of the male inhabitants of such State, being twenty-one years of age and citizens of the United States, or in any way abridged except for participation in rebellion or other crime, the basis of representation therein shall be reduced in the proportion which the number of such male citizens shall bear to the whole number of male citizens twenty-one years of age in such State.

**SECTION 3.** No person shall be a senator or representative in Congress, or elector of President or Vice-President, or hold any office, civil or military, under the United States, or under any State, who, having previously taken an oath as a member of Congress, or as an officer of the United States, or as a member of any State Legislature, or as an executive or judicial officer of any State, to support the Constitution of the United States, shall have engaged in insurrection or rebellion against the same, or given aid or comfort to the enemies thereof. But Congress may, by a vote of two thirds of each house, remove such disability.

**SECTION 4.** The validity of the public debt of the United States, authorized by law, including debts incurred for payment of pension and bounties for services in suppressing insurrection or rebellion, shall not be questioned. But neither the United States nor any State shall assume or pay any debt or obligation incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion against the United States, or any claim for the loss or emancipation of any slave; but all such debts, obligations, and claims shall be held illegal and void.

**SECTION 5.** Congress shall have power to enforce, by appropriate legislation, the provisions of this article.

**ARTICLE XV.**—**SECTION 1.** The rights of citizens of the United States to vote shall not be denied or abridged by the United States, or by any State, on account of race, color, or previous condition of servitude.

**SECTION 2.** Congress shall have power to enforce this article by appropriate legislation.

---

**ARTICLE XIV.** (*Note.*—This amendment was adopted in 1868. See p. 284.) **Section 1.** Who are citizens of the United States? What restrictions are laid upon the states with regard to abridging the rights of citizens?

**Section 2.** How are representatives apportioned among the several states? How does this amend Art. I. See, 2, Clause 3?

**Section 3.** What persons are prohibited from holding any office under the United States? How may this disability be removed?

**Section 4.** Repeat the provision with regard to the validity of the public debt. With regard to any debt incurred in aid of insurrection or rebellion.

**ARTICLE XV.** (*Note.*—This amendment was adopted in 1870. See page 288.) Repeat the amendment granting universal suffrage.

TABLE OF STATES.

## TABLE OF STATES.

No.	STATES.	ORIGIN OF NAME.	SETTLEMENT.		POPULATION, 1850.	ORIGINAL NAMES, OR TERRITORY FROM WHICH DERIVED.
			DATE UNION ADDED.	THE UNION.		
1	Delaware.....	In honor of Lord Delaware, *1787	1638	Wilmington..... Swedes.....	2,050	New Netherland. The three Lower Counties on the Delaware.
2	Pennsylvania.....	Latin, meaning Penn's Woods.	1683	Philadelphia..... English.....	45,215	4,282,891
3	New Jersey.....	In honor of Sir George Carteret, governor of Jersey Island.	1664	Elizabethtown.....	7,815	1,131,116
4	Georgia.....	In honor of George II.	1733	Savannah.....	59,475	1,542,180
5	Connecticut.....	Indian, meaning Long River	1788	Wind sor.....	4,960	623,700
6	Massachusetts.....	The place of Great Hills †.	1633	Plymouth.....	8,315	1,783,085
7	Maryland.....	In honor of Queen Henrietta Maria.	1634	St. Mary's.....	12,210	934,943
8	South Carolina.....	In honor of Charles II.	1788	Ashley River.....	30,570	935,577
9	New Hampshire.....	Hampshire county, England.	1623	Portsmouth.....	9,305	346,991
10	Virginia.....	In honor of Elizabeth, the "Virgin Queen."	1607	James town.....	42,450	1,512,565
11	New York.....	In honor of the Duke of York.	1788	New York.....	49,170	5,082,871
12	North Carolina.....	In honor of Charles II.	1789	Dutch.....	52,250	1,399,550
13	Rhode Island.....	Red Island.....	1790	Albemarle Sound.....	1,250	276,531
14	Vermont.....	French, meaning Green Mountain.	1791	Providence.....	9,565	332,286
15	Kentucky.....	Indian, meaning Dark and Bloody Ground.	1792	Fort Dummer.....	40,400	1,648,630
16	Tennessee.....	Indian, meaning River with the Great Bend.	1796	Boonesboro'.....	42,050	1,542,359
17	Ohio.....	Indian, meaning Beautiful River.	1802	Fort Loudon.....	41,060	Kentucky Territory.
				Marietta.....		North-west Territory.

18	Louisiana.....	In honor of Louis XIV.....	1812	1699	Biloxi.....	French.....	48,720	339,946	Louisiana, Territory of Orleans.
19	Indiana.....	Indian's Ground.....	1816	..+..	Vincennes.....	“	36,350	1,978,301	North-west Territory, Indiana Territory.
20	Mississippi.....	Indian, meaning Great Father of Waters.	1817	1716	Natchez.....	“	46,810	1,131,597	Louisiana, Georgia, Mississippi Territory.
21	Illinois.....	Indian, meaning River of Men.	1818	+1082	Kashkashia.....	“	56,650	3,077,871	North-west Territory, Illinois Territory.
22	Alabama.....	Indian, meaning Here we Rest.	1819	1702	Mobile.....	“	52,250	1,262,505	Louisiana, Florida, Georgia, Mississippi Territory.
23	Maine.....	The main land.	1820	1625	Bristol.....	“	33,040	618,936	New England, Laconia, Massachusetts.
24	Missouri.....	Indian, meaning Muddy Water.	1821	1735	St. Genevieve .....	“	69,415	2,168,380	Louisiana, Missouri Territory.
25	Arkansas.....	From a tribe of Indians.....	1836	1685	Arkansas Post.....	“	53,850	802,525	Louisiana, Missouri Territory, Arkansas Territory.
26	Michigan.....	Indian, meaning Great Lake.	1837	1701	Detroit.....	“	58,915	1,636,937	North-west Territory, Indiana Territory, Michigan Territory.
27	Florida.....	Spanish, meaning Bloom-ing.	1845	1565	St. Augustine .....	Spaniards.	58,680	369,403	Florida.
28	Texas.....	.....+.....	1845	..+..	.....+.....	French .....	265,780	1,591,749	New Philippines.
29	Iowa.....	Indian, meaning Drowsy Ones.	1846	1833	Burlington.....	English .....	56,025	1,624,615	Louisiana, Louisiana, Ter- ritory, Missouri Ter- ritory, Wisconsin Ter- ritory, Illinois Ter- ritory, Michigan Territory.
30	Wisconsin.....	Indian, meaning Gathering of the Waters.	1848	1745	Green Bay.....	French .....	56,040	1,315,497	Louisiana, Illinois Ter- ritory, Wisconsin Ter- ritory, Michigan Territory.
31	California.....	From an old Spanish ro-binance.	1850	1739	San Diego.....	Spaniards.	158,360	864,694	New Albion, Upper Calif- ornia.
32	Minnesota.....	Indian, meaning Cloudy Water.	1858	1846	St. Paul.....	Americans.	83,365	780,773	Louisiana, Minnesota Ter- ritory.
33	Oregon.....	Spanish, meaning Wild Marjoram.	1859	1811	Astoria.....	“	96,030	174,708	Louisiana, Oregon Ter- ritory.
34	Kansas.....	Indian, meaning Smoky Water.	1861	.....	.....	.....	82,080	996,096	Louisiana, Kansas Ter- ritory.
35	West Virginia.....	From Virginia.....	1863	.....	.....	.....	21,780	618,457	South Virginia, Virginia.
36	Nevada.....	Spanish, meaning Snow-covered Mountains.	1864	.....	Carson City.....	.....	110,700	62,266	Upper California.
37	Nebraska.....	Indian, meaning Water-valley.	1867	.....	.....	.....	76,855	452,402	Louisiana, Nebraska Ter- ritory.
38	Colorado.....	Spanish, meaning Red or Ruddy.	1876	.....	.....	.....	103,925	194,327	Louisiana, Mexican Cen- sion.

\* Date of ratifying the Constitution.

† The blue hills south-west of Boston, the highest land in the eastern part of the State.

‡ Doubtful or unknown.

## TABLE OF THE PRESIDENTS.

NO.	PRESIDENT.	STATE.	BORN.	DIED.	TERM OF OFFICE.	BY WHOM ELECTED.	VICE-PRESIDENT.	SECRETARY OF STATE.
1	George Washington.	Virginia.....	1732	1799	Two terms; 1789-1797.....	Whole people.	John Adams.....	Thomas Jefferson. Edmund Randolph. Timothy Pickering. John Marshall.
2	John Adams.....	Massachusetts.	1735	1826	One term; 1797-1801.....	Federalists.....	Thomas Jefferson	James Madison.
3	Thomas Jefferson.....	Virginia.....	1743	1826	Two terms; 1801-1809.....	Republicans	Aaron Burr.....	George Clinton. Elbridge Gerry.
4	James Madison.....	Virginia.....	1751	1836	Two terms; 1809-1817.....	Republicans	George Clinton.....	John Quincy Adams. James Monroe.
5	James Monroe.....	Virginia.....	1758	1831	Two terms; 1817-1825.....	Democrats	John C. Calhoun.....	Robert Smith. John Quincy Adams.
6	John Quincy Adams.	Massachusetts.	1767	1848	One term; 1825-1829.....	House of Rep.	John C. Calhoun.....	Henry Clay. Martin Van Buren.
7	Andrew Jackson.....	Tennessee.....	1767	1845	Two terms; 1829-1837.....	Democrats	John C. Calhoun.....	Edward Livingston. Louis McLane.
8	Martin Van Buren.....	New York.....	1782	1862	One term; 1835-1841.....	Democrats	Rich'd M. Johnson.....	John Forsyth.
9	William H. Harrison.	Ohio.....	1773	1841	One month; 1841.....	Whigs.....	John Tyler.....	Daniel Webster.
10	John Tyler.....	Virginia.....	1790	1862	3 yrs. and 11 mos.; 1841-1845.....	Whigs.....	John Tyler.....	Hugh S. Legaré. Abel P. Upshur.
11	James K. Polk.....	Tennessee.....	1795	1849	One term; 1845-1849.....	Democrats	George M. Dallas.	John C. Calhoun. James Buchanan.
12	Zachary Taylor.....	Louisiana.....	1804	1850	1 yr. and 4 mos.; 1849, 1850	Whigs.....	Millard Fillmore.	John M. Clayton.
13	Millard Fillmore.....	New York.....	1800	1874	2 yrs. and 8 mos.; 1850-1853.	Whigs.....	George M. Dallas.	Daniel Webster.
14	Franklin Pierce.....	N. Hampshire.	1804	1869	One term; 1853-1857.....	Democrats	William R. King.	Edward Everett. William L. Marcy.
15	James Buchanan.....	Pennsylvania.....	1791	1868	One term; 1857-1861.....	Democrats	J. C. Breckinridge.	Lewis Cass. Jeremiah S. Black.
16	Abraham Lincoln.....	Illinois.....	1809	1865	1 term and 1 mo.; 1861-1865.	Republicans	Hannibal Hamlin.	William H. Seward.
17	Andrew Johnson.....	Tennessee.....	1808	1875	3 yrs. and 11 mos.; 1865-1869.	Republicans	Andrew Johnson.	Schuyler Colfax.
18	Ulysses S. Grant.....	Illinois.....	1822	1885	Two terms; 1869-1877.....	Republicans	Eliz. B. Washburne. Hamilton Fish.	Henry Wilson.
19	Rutherford B. Hayes	Ohio.....	1822	...	One term; 1877-1881.....	Republicans	Wm. A. Wheeler.	Wm. M. Evarts.
20	James A. Garfield.....	Ohio.....	1831	1881	6 months and 15 days; 1881.	Republicans	Chester A. Arthur.	James G. Blaine.
21	Chester A. Arthur.....	New York.....	1830	...	3 yrs. 5 mos. 15 days; 1881-1885.	Republicans	F. T. Frelinghuysen.	
22	Grover Cleveland.....	New York.....	1837	...	1885-.....	Democrats	Thomas F. Bayard.	

# INDEX.

*This Index refers to the notes at the bottom of the page as well as the text of the book.*

ACADIA, named, 32; depopulated, 85.  
Adams, John, the patriot, 102-104; Declaration of Independence, 114; President, 154.  
Adams, John Quincy, 174.  
Adams, Samuel, 103.  
Alabama, admission of, 203; secession of, 198.  
Alabama and Kearsarge, 268.  
Alaska, purchase of, 284.  
Albany, 65.  
Alexandria, seizure of, 217.  
Algiers, treaty with, 153; Decatur at, 171.  
Alien and Sedition Laws, 154.  
Allen, Ethan, 110.  
Amendment, Fifteenth, 288; Fourteenth, 284; Thirteenth, 282.  
Ames, Fisher, 310.  
Amnesty Proclamation, 282.  
Anderson, Maj. R., 199.  
Andre, execution of, 136.  
Andros, Governor Edmund, of New England, 59; demands charter of Connecticut, 63; governor of New York, 67.  
Antietam, battle of, 241.  
Antiquities, American, 9.  
Anti-rent difficulties, 182.  
Appomattox Court House, surrender at, 275.  
Arkansas, admission of, 204; secession of, 217.  
Arlington Heights, seizure of, 217.  
Arnold, Benedict, at Ticonderoga, 110; at Quebec, 112; relieves Fort Schuyler, 122; at Saratoga, 124; treason of, 135; in Virginia, 139; at New London, 140.  
Arthur, Chester A., 296, 298.  
Atlanta, advance upon, 256; capture of, 257.  
Atlantic Cable, 285.

Averysboro, battle of, 272.  
Aylton, De, 27.  
BACON'S REBELLION, 52.  
Bailey, Col. Joseph, 265.  
Baker, Colonel E. D., 221.  
Balboa, 27.  
Ball's Bluff, battle of, 220.  
Baltimore, Lord, 72.  
Baltimore, Massachusetts troops at, 217.  
Bank of United States, 152, 176, 181.  
Banks, General N. P., in Shenandoah, 237; at Port Hudson, 245; in Red River Expedition, 265.  
Barton, Colonel William, 121.  
Beaufort, capture of, 232.  
Beauregard, General P. G. T., at Fort Sumter, 216; at Bull Run, 219; at Shiloh, 226; at Bermuda Hundred, 262.  
Belmont, battle of, 221.  
Bennington, battle of, 123.  
Bentonville, battle of, 272.  
Bermuda Hundred, battle at, 262.  
Big Bethel, skirmish at, 218.  
Big Black River, battle of, 245.  
Black Hawk War, 177.  
Bland Silver Bill, 295.  
Blennerhassett, Harman, 157.  
Blockade, the, 267.  
Boone, Daniel, 201.  
Boonville, battle of, 221.  
Boston, massacre in, 104; Port Bill, 105; Tea Party at, 105; evacuation of, 112; fire at, 289.  
Boundary, north-east, 180; north-west, 183.  
Braddock, General Edward, 84.  
Bragg, General Braxton, at Buena Vista, 187; invades Kentucky, 228; at Chickamauga, 246; at Chattanooga, 247.  
Brandywine, battle of, 119.

Brooklyn Bridge, 290.  
 Brooks, Preston S., assails Sumner, 195.  
 Brown, John, 197.  
 Bryant, William Cullen, 310.  
 Buchanan, James, 196.  
 Buckner, Gen. S. B., 225.  
 Buell, General D. C., 225, 226, 228.  
 Buena Vista, battle of, 186.  
 Bull Run, first battle, 219; second battle, 241.  
 Bunker Hill, battle of, 108.  
 Burgoyne, invasion of, 121-125.  
 Burnside, General Ambrose E., expedition to Roanoke Island, 232; at Antietam, 242; at Fredericksburg, 242.  
 Burr, Aaron, 155-157.  
 Butler, General B. F., 218, 231, 262, 266.  
 CABINET, the formation of, 151.  
 Cabot, John, 25.  
 Cabot, Sebastian, 25.  
 Cabrillo, 29.  
 Calhoun, John C., 173, 176.  
 California, admission of, 206; ceded to United States, 208; gold discovered in, 190.  
 Camden, battle of, 133.  
 Carnifex Ferry, battle of, 218.  
 Carolina, secession of South, 198; secession of North, 217.  
 Carolinas, settlement of, 74.  
 Caroline, burning of the, 180.  
 Carrick's Ford, battle of, 218.  
 Carthage, battle of, 221.  
 Cartier, 30.  
 Cedar Mountain, battle of, 240.  
 Centennial Anniversaries, 291; exhibition, 292.  
 Center of population, 304.  
 Cerro Gordo, battle of, 188.  
 Chambersburg, burning of, 264.  
 Champion Hills, battle of, 245.  
 Champlain, 32.  
 Chancellorsville, battle of, 250.  
 Chantilly, battle of, 241.  
 Chapultepec, capture of, 189.  
 Charleston, settlement of, 74; in Revolution, 129, 132, 133; in Civil War, 254, 272.  
 Chattanooga, battle of, 247.  
 Cheat Mountain, battle of, 218.  
 Chesapeake and Leopard, 158.  
 Chesapeake and Shannon, 166.  
 Chicago, massacre at (Fort Dearborn), 203; fire at, 288.  
 Chickamauga, battle of, 246.  
 China, treaties with, 286, 296.  
 Chinese Immigration forbidden, 299.  
 Chippewa, battle of, 168.  
 Chrysler's Field, battle of, 163.  
 Churubusco, battle of, 189.  
 Civil Rights Bill, 283.  
 Civil Service Reform, 299.  
 Clay, Henry, Missouri Compromise, 172; Compromise Bill, 176; nominated President, 184; Omnibus Bill, 193.  
 Clayborne's Rebellion, 73.  
 Cleveland, Grover, 300.  
 Clinton, Sir Henry, 114, 127, 128, 136, 139.  
 Clinton, Gov. George, 308.  
 Cold Harbor, battle of, 261.  
 Coligny, 31.  
 Colleges, 92, 96, 309.  
 Colonial life, 91.  
 Colorado, admission of, 301.  
 Columbia, S. C., capture of, 272.  
 Columbia River, discovery of, 208.  
 Columbus, Christopher, 20-24.  
 Commissions, Sanitary and Christian, 269.  
 Compromise, Missouri, 172; of 1850, 193.  
 Confederate currency, 267.  
 Congress, First Continental, 106.  
 Connecticut, 61.  
 Constitution, adoption of Federal, 143; authors of, 310.  
 Constitution and Guerriere, 161.  
 Continental money, 134.  
 Contreras, battle of, 189.  
 Convention, Hartford, 169.  
 Conway cabal, the, 126.  
 Cooper, James Fenimore, 310.  
 Cooper, Peter, 306.  
 Corinth, battle of, 228.  
 Cornwallis, Earl, pursues Washington, 116; at Brandywine, 119; at Camden, 133; pursues Greene, 137; surrenders, 140.  
 Cotton, 172, 198, 306.  
 Cowpens, battle of the, 137.  
 Crisis of '37, the, 178.  
 Cross Keys, battle of, 237.  
 Crown Point, attack on, 86; capture of, 111.  
 Cuba, invasion of, 193.  
 Cumberland, loss of the, 233.  
 Custer, Gen. George A., 292.  
 DADE'S MASSACRE, 177.  
 Dalgren, Col. Ulric, 259.  
 Danbury, burning of, 120.  
 Darling, Fort, 236.  
 Davis, Jefferson, 199, 275.  
 De Ayllon, 27.  
 Decatur, Lieut. Stephen, 157.  
 Deerfield, burning of, 79.  
 Delaware, 69.

De Leon, Ponce, 26.  
 Democratic party, 173; elects Jackson, 174; elects Van Buren, 178; elects Polk, 184; elects Pierce, 194; elects Buchanan, 196; elects Cleveland, 300.  
 De Monts, 32.  
 De Narvaez, 27.  
 De Soto, Hernando (Ferdinand), 27.  
 Detroit, surrender of, 160.  
 Donaldson's Point, 227.  
 Donelson, Fort, surrender of, 225.  
 Doniphan, Colonel, 188.  
 Dorr's Rebellion, 181.  
 Douglas, Stephen A., "The Little Giant", 197.  
 Draft riot in New York city, 252.  
 Drake, Sir Francis, 35, 42.  
 Dranesville, skirmish at, 221.  
 Dred Scott decision, the, 196.  
 Dress, 93, 111, 210.  
 Dress, distinctions of, 93, 210.  
 Duquesne, Fort, 84, 85.  
 Dustin, capture of Mrs., 77.  
 Dutch Manners and Customs, 95.

EARLY, GEN. JUBAL A., 219, 263, 264.  
 Edward, Fort, massacre at, 86.  
 Education, 96, 210, 318.  
 Ellsworth, Col. Elmer E., 217.  
 Elmira, battle near, 131.  
 Emancipation Proclamation, 242, 244.  
 Embargo ("O Grab me") Act, the, 158.  
 Emerson, Ralph W., 311.  
 Ericsson, John, 234.  
 Erie Canal, by Gov. Dewitt Clinton, 174.  
 Espejo, 29.  
 Eutaw Springs, battle of, 139.  
 Ewell, Gen. R. S., 237, 353, 274.

FAIR OAKS, battle of, 238.  
 Farragut, Capt. D. G., at New Orleans, 231; above Vicksburg, 232; at Mobile, 266.  
 Federalist, the, 310.  
 Federalists, the, 143, 153, 159, 171.  
 Fenians, 284.  
 Field, Cyrus W., 286.  
 Filibusters, 193.  
 Fillmore, Millard, 191, 192.  
 Fisher, capture of Fort, 267.  
 Fishery Award, 296.  
 Five Forks, battle of, 273.  
 Florida, discovery of, 27; purchase of, 173; secession of, 198; admission of, 205.  
 Foote, A. H., 224.  
 Forrest, Gen. N. B., 265.

Fort Monroe, 218.  
 France, aid from, 126; Genet recalled to, 153; Hostilities with, 155; payment by, 178.  
 Franklin, Benjamin, 105, 127.  
 Franklin, battle of, 258.  
 Frayser's Farm, encounter at, 239.  
 Fredericksburg, battle of, 242.  
 Free Soil party, 193.  
 Fremont, J. C., 188, 196, 221, 237.  
 Frenchtown, Indian atrocities at, 164.  
 Frobisher, 34.  
 Frolic and Wasp, 162.  
 Fugitive Slave Law, 193, 197.  
 Fulton, Robert, 157.

GADSDEN PURCHASE, 195.  
 Gage, Gen. Thomas, 105, 106, 113.  
 Gaines' Mill, battle of, 239.  
 Galveston, capture of, 251.  
 Garfield, James A., 296.  
 Gates, Gen. Horatio, 122, 133.  
 Genet, difficulties with, 153.  
 Georgia, settlement of, 76; secession of, 198.  
 Germantown, battle of, 120.  
 Gettysburg, battle of, 252.  
 Gilbert, Sir Humphrey, 36.  
 Gillmore, Gen. Q. A., 254, 270.  
 Goffe, the regicide, 58.  
 Gosnold, 38.  
 Grand Model, the, 75.  
 Grant, Ulysses S., at Belmont, 221; at Forts Henry and Donelson, 224; captures Vicksburg, 245; at Chattanooga, 247; made Lieutenant-General, 255; overland campaign, 260; before Richmond, 262; elected President, 286; death of, 287; funeral of, 301.  
 Greeley, Horace, 290.  
 Greene, Gen. Nathaniel, 137, 138.  
 Griswold, Fort, 140.  
 Guilford Court House, battle of, 138.

HALE, CAPTAIN NATHAN, 115.  
 Halleck, Gen. J. W., 221, 227.  
 Hamilton, Alexander, plans of, 152; death of, 156; contributes to Federalist, 310.  
 Hancock, Gen. Winfield S., 260, 296.  
 Hanging Rock, battle of, 134.  
 Hanover Court House, battle of, 236.  
 Harper's Ferry, 217, 241.  
 Harrison, William Henry, at battle of Tippecanoe, 159; at Thames, 165; elected President, 180.  
 Harrison's Landing, 240.  
 Hatteras Inlet, Expedition to, 222.  
 Hawthorne, Nathaniel, 311.

Hayes, Gen. R. B., nominated President, 293; administration of, 294.

Hayne, Col. Isaac, 134.

Hayne, Robert Y., 176.

Henry, Fort, 224, 310.

Henry, Patrick, 102.

Hessians, origin of name, 115; at Trenton, 117.

Hood, Gen. John B., 257, 258.

Hooker, Gen. Joseph, at Williamsburg, 236; at Chattanooga, 247; at Chancellorsville, 250.

Hornet and Peacock, 166.

Horseshoe Bend, battle of, 166.

Howe, Gen. William, evacuates Boston, 113; on Long Island, 115.

Huguenots, the, 75.

Hull, Capt. Isaac, 161; Gen. William, 160.

Hunter, Gen. D., 221, 261.

Hutchinson, Mrs. Anne, 57.

ILLINOIS, admission of, 203.

Independence, Declaration of, 114.

Indiana, admission of, 202.

Indiana, 10.

Iowa, admission of, 206.

Irving, Washington, 310.

Island No. 10, capture of, 227.

Iuka, battle of, 228.

JACKSON, ANDREW, Creek war, 166; at New Orleans, 170; nominated President, 174; administration of, 175.

Jackson, Gen. T. J., at Bull Run, 219; in Shenandoah, 237; near Hanover Court House, 239; death of, 251. Jamestown, 38, 52.

Japan, treaty with, 195.

Jasper, Sergeant, 113, 129.

Jay, Chief-Justice John, 153, 310.

Jefferson, Thomas, writes Declaration of Independence, 114; elected Vice-President, 154; nominated President, 155; administration of, 155.

Jesuits, the, 33.

Johnson, Andrew, 281.

Johnson, Col. R. M., 165, 178.

Johnson, Sir William, 86.

Johnston, Gen. Albert Sidney, 225, 226.

Johnston, Gen. Joseph E., at Bull Run, 220; at Williamsburg, 236; in Shenandoah, 237; at Fair Oaks, 238; at Jackson, 245; before Atlanta, 257; at Averysboro and Bentonville, 272; surrender of, 279.

Joint Electoral Commission, 293.

Jones, Paul, victory of, 132.

KALB, DE, BARON JOHN, 133.

Kansas, admission of, 209; difficulties in, 195.

Kansas-Nebraska Bill, 194.

Kearney, Gen. Philip, 241.

Kearney, Stephen W., 187.

Kearsarge sinks the Alabama, 268.

Kentucky, admission of, 200.

Key, Francis S., 169.

Kidd, William, 68.

Kilpatrick, Gen. J. C., 259.

King's Mountain, battle of, 134.

Know-Nothing party, 196.

Knoxville, siege of, 250.

Kosciusko, 122.

LABORER, the, 93, 210.

La Fayette, Marquis de, at Brandywine, 119; character of, 119; sent against Arnold, 139; second visit, 173, 210.

Lake Champlain, battle of, 168.

Lake Erie, battle of, 164.

Lake George, battle of, 86.

Lancaster, 304.

La Salle, Chevalier Robert de, 34.

Laudonnière, 31.

Lawrence sacked, 230.

Lawrence, Captain James, 166.

Lee, Gen. Charles, capture of, 116; at Monmouth, 128; dismissed, 128.

Lee, Henry, "Light-horse Harry", 134, 238.

Lee, Gen. Robert E., at Cheat Mountain, 218; takes command of Confederate forces, 238; invades Maryland, 241, 251; battle of Wilderness, 260; surrender of, 274.

Leisler, execution of, 68.

Lewis and Clarke Expedition, 209, 302, 303.

Lexington, Mass., battle of, 106.

Lexington, Mo., battle of, 221.

Lincoln, Abraham, nominated President, 197; inauguration of, 215; frees the slaves, 242; assassination of, 275.

Literature, American, 309.

Locofoco, origin of name, 173.

Longfellow, Henry W., 311.

Long Island, battle of, 114.

Longstreet, Gen. Jas. S., 250.

Lookout Mountain, battle of, 248.

Louisburg, capture of (1745), 80; capture of (1757), 85.

Louisiana, admission of, 201; secession of, 198.

Louisiana purchase, 156, 302, 303.

Lundy's Lane, battle of, 167.

Lyceum Lectures, 211.

MACDONOUGH, COM. THOMAS, 168.  
 Mackinaw, surrender of, 160.  
 Madison, James, 159, 310.  
 Magellan, 26, 43.  
 Magruder, Gen. J. B., 235.  
 Maine, settlement of, 60; admission of, 204.  
 Malvern Hill, battle of, 239.  
 Manassas, battles of, 235, 241.  
 Manufactures, 142, 171, 305.  
 Marion, Gen. Francis, 138.  
 Marquette, Father, 33.  
 Maryland, settlement of, 72; invasion of, 241.  
 Mason and Dixon's line, 72.  
 Mason and Slidell, 222.  
 Massachusetts, 53.  
 Maximilian in Mexico, 285.  
 May, Capt., 185.  
 Mayflower, 53.  
 McAlister, capture of Fort, 259.  
 McClellan, Gen. George B., at Philippi, Rich Mountain, and Carrick's Ford, 218; made commander-in-chief, 220; in Peninsular Campaign, 235; at Antietam, 241; democratic candidate, 269.  
 McCrea, murder of Miss, 121.  
 McDowell, Gen. Irvin, 219, 236, 237.  
 McHenry, bombardment of Fort, 169.  
 Meade, Gen. George G., 252.  
 Meehanic Arts, 305.  
 Mechanicsville, battle of, 239.  
 Meigs, siege of Fort, 164.  
 Memphis, surrender of, 227.  
 Menendez, 29.  
 Merrimac and Monitor, 233.  
 Mexico, war with, 185; treaty with, 190; boundary of, 195; French in, 284.  
 Mexico, battles before, 189.  
 Michigan, admission of, 204.  
 Miller, Col. James, 168.  
 Mill Spring, battle of, 224.  
 Mimms, massacre at Fort, 166.  
 Mine Explosion, the, 262.  
 Minnesota, admission of, 208.  
 Mississippi River, discovery of, 28.  
 Mississippi, admission of, 202; secession of, 198.  
 Missouri Compromise, the, 172.  
 Missouri, admission of, 204.  
 Mister, the title of, 94, 210.  
 Mobile, 204, 304.  
 Modoc Indians, 291.  
 Monitor, the, 233.  
 Monmouth, battle of, 127.  
 Monocacy, battle of, 263.  
 Monroe Doctrine, the, 173.  
 Monroe, Fort, 218.  
 Monroe, James, 172.  
 Montcalm, Marquis de, 87, 89.  
 Monterey, capture of, 186.  
 Montgomery, Gen. Richard, 112.  
 Monticello, home of Jefferson, 156.  
 Montreal, surrender of, 89.  
 Morgan, Gen. Daniel, 121, 124, 137.  
 Morgan, Gen. John H., 246.  
 Mormons, the, 182.  
 Morris, Robert, 135, 139.  
 Morse, Sam. F. B., 183.  
 Motte, Mrs., anecdote of, 138.  
 Moultrie, Col. William, 113.  
 Moultrie, Fort, attack on, 113; Anderson at, 199.  
 Mound Builders, the, 10.  
 Mount Vernon, home of Washington, 150.  
 Murfreesboro, battle of, 229.  
 Mutiny Act, 103.

NASHVILLE, battle of, 258.  
 Navigation Act, 51.  
 Nebraska, admission of, 301.  
 Negro soldiers, 254.  
 Nelson, Gov. Thomas, 140.  
 Nevada, admission of, 277.  
 New Amsterdam, 65.  
 New Bern, capture of, 232.  
 New England manners and customs, 91, 144.  
 New Hampshire, 60.  
 New Hampshire Grants, 111.  
 New Haven Colony, 63.  
 New Jersey, 68.  
 New Netherland, 65.  
 New Orleans, battle of, 169; capture of, 230.  
 Newport, attack on, 128.  
 Newspapers and journalism, 93, 97, 311.  
 New York, 65.  
 New York City, fire in, 179; riot in, 252.  
 Niagara, capture of Fort, 87.  
 Norfolk (Portsmouth) Navy Yard, 217, 235.  
 North-east Boundary, 180.  
 Northinen, the, 15.  
 North-west Boundary, 183.  
 North-western Territory, 201, 302.  
 Nullification, 175.

OGLETHORPE, GOV. JAS. EDWARD, 76, 80.  
 Ohio, admission of, 201.  
 Okeechobee, battle of, 178.  
 Old Ironsides, 161.  
 Omnibus Bill, 193.  
 Ord, Gen. E. O. C., 221.  
 Oregon, admission of, 208.  
 Osceola, 177.

Oswego, Fort, 87, 303.  
 Otis, James, 103, 310.

PACIFIC, discovery of the, 27; railroad, 287.

Palo Alto, battle of, 185.

Patent, definition of, 346.

Patriot War, the, 179.

Patroons, the, 65, 95.

Pea Ridge, battle of, 230.

Penn, William, founds Pennsylvania, 69; founds Philadelphia, 70; treaty with Indians, 71; gives up Delaware, 72; life of, 60.

Pennsylvania, 69.

Pequod War, the, 62.

Perry, Oliver H., 164.

Perryville, battle of, 228.

Petersburg, attack on, 262; capture of, 273.

Philadelphia, 70, 95, 150.

Philadelphia. Frigate, destroyed, 157.

Philip, Indian chief, 57.

Philippi, battle of, 218.

Pickens, Fort, 223.

Pierce, Franklin, 194.

Pike, Gen. Z. N., 163.

Pilgrims, landing of the, 53.

Pilgrims versus Puritans, 53.

Pillow, capture of Fort, 265.

Pinekney, Charles C., 155.

Pitcher, Major Molly, 128.

Pitt, William, 85, 99.

Pittsburg Landing, battle at, 225.

Pittsburgh, named, 85.

Plains of Abraham, 87.

Plattsburg and Lake Champlain, battle of, 168.

Pleasant Hill, battle of, 265.

Pocahontas, 48, 49.

Poe, Edgar Allan, 311.

Polk, James K., 185.

Pope, Gen. John, 240.

Porter, D. D., 265, 266.

Port Gibson, battle of, 245.

Port Hudson, surrender of, 246.

Port Republic, encounter at, 237.

Port Royal Entrance, S. C., capture of, 222.

Port Royal, N. C., founded, 32.

Postage, 299, 305.

Post Offices and mails, 93, 304.

Powhatan, 48.

Prescott, capture of Gen., 121.

President and Little Belt, 160.

Price, Gen. Stirling, 228.

Princeton, battle of, 118.

Printing Press, 93, 307.

Privateers, Confederate, 222.

Providence. 64, 303.

Public lands, 194, 308.

Pulaski, Count, 129.

Pulaski, reduction of Fort, 233.

Puritans, the, 53.

Putnam, Gen. Israel, 108, 130.

QUAKERS, the, 57, 69.

Quebec, attack on, 87; surrender of, 89; battle of, 112.

Queenstown, battle of, 161.

RAILROAD, the first, 174, 306; strike, 295.

Raleigh, Sir Walter, 36.

Rall, death of, 117.

Randolph, John, 153.

Reconstruction, 282.

Red River Expedition, 265.

Republican (Democratic-Republican) party, 153, 154, 196.

Republican party, 196, 197.

Resaca, Ga., battle of, 257.

Resaca de la Palma, battle of, 185.

Resumption of specie payments, 295.

Rhode Island, 64.

Ribaut, John, 31.

Richmond, siege of, 262; capture of, 273.

Ridge Mountain, battle of, 218.

Roanoke Island, 36, 232.

Rolfe, John, 49.

Rome, 122, 304.

Rosecrans, Gen. W. S., 228, 229, 246.

Rotation in office, 175, 293.

Russy, Fort de, capture of, 265.

SABINE CROSS-ROADS, battle of, 265.

Sackett's Harbor, attack on, 163.

Saint Augustine, founded, 29.

San Domingo, 289.

San Franeiseo, 207.

Santa Anna, 187, 189, 205.

Santa Fe, founded, 29.

Saratoga, battles of, 123.

Saratoga Springs, 304.

Savage's Station, battle at, 230.

Savannah, capture of, 129; port closed, 233; Sherman at, 259.

Savannah, first steamer to cross Atlantic, 306.

Schenectady, attack on, 77.

Schofield, Gen. John M., 258, 272.

Schuylar, Fort, 122.

Schuylar, Gen. Philip, 121.

Scott, Gen. Winfield, at Chippewa and Lundy's Lane, 168; in Mexico, 188; retires from active service, 220.

Seminole, war with, 177.

Seven-Days Battles, 239.

Seward, attack on William H., 275.

Shaw, of colored troops, Colonel, 254.

Shays' Rebellion, 143.

Sheridan, Gen. Phil. H., at Murfreesboro, 229; in Shenandoah, 264; at Five Forks, 273.

Sherman, Gen. W. T., at Chickasaw Bayou, 230; at Knoxville, 250; before Atlanta, 256; march to the sea, 259; march through the Carolinas, 271.

Shiloh, battle of, 225.

Sigel, Gen. Franz, 221, 261.

Silver Bill, the, 295.

Sioux, war with the, 244.

Slavery, introduction of, 50; question of, 172, 193, 196-198, 242.

Slemmer, Lieut. A. J., 223.

Smith, Capt. John, 46.

Smith, Gen. Kirby, 219, 228.

Smith, Joseph, 183.

South Mountain, battle of, 241.

Spain, treaty with, 153; cedes Florida to the United States, 173.

Specie Payments, 295.

Spottsylvania, battle of, 260.

Squatter sovereignty, 194.

Stamp Act, the, 102, 103.

Stanton, Edwin M., 284.

Stark, Col. John, 123.

Stark, Mrs. Elizabeth ("Betty"), 123.

Star Route Frauds, 297.

Star Spangled Banner, the song of, 169.

State Rights, doctrine of, 176.

Steadman, Fort, attack on, 272.

Steam-boat, 157, 306.

Steam-engine, 306.

Steam-press, 306.

Steele, Mrs., anecdote of, 138.

Steele, John, 62.

Stephens, Alex. H., 176, 199.

Stephenson, battle of Fort, 164.

St. Louis, 204, 304.

Stony Point, capture of, 130.

Stuart, Gen. J. E. B., 238, 262.

Stuyvesant, Peter, 66.

Sub-Treasury Bill, 179.

Sullivan, Gen. John, 119, 128, 131.

Sumner, Charles, 195.

Sumter, Gen. Thomas, 134, 138.

Sumter, Fort, Anderson at, 200; capture of, 216; Gillmore besieges, 254.

Swansea, 57.

**TARIFF, 173, 174, 176.**

Tarleton, Lieut.-Col. Bannastre, 133.

Taylor, Zachary, in Mexican War, 185-187; elected President, 191.

Tea, tax on, 105.

Tecumseh, Shawnee chief, 163, 165, 166.

Telegram, the first, 307.

Telegraph, Magnetic, 183; Submarine, 285.

Tennessee, admission of, 201; secession of, 217.

Tenure-of-office Bill, 283, 284.

Territorial Development, 302.

Texas, annexation of, 183; admission of, 205; secession of, 198.

Thames, battle of the, 165.

Thomas, Gen. George H., at Chickamauga, 247; at Nashville, 258.

Ticonderoga, attack on, 86; capture of, 110.

Tilden, Samuel J., 293.

Tippecanoe, battle of, 159.

Tobacco, 37, 50.

Town Meetings in New England, 96.

Towns, large (1790), 304.

Travel, slowness of early, 93, 145, 304.

Treaty of Paris, 142; with Spain, 153; of Ghent, 169; the Ashburton, 180; the Oregon, 184; with Mexico, 190; of Washington, 289.

Trent affair, the, 222.

Trenton, battle of, 116.

Tripoli, 157.

Tyler, John, 180, 181.

**UNITED COLONIES of New England, 57.**

Utica, 303.

**VALLEY FORGE, winter in, 125.**

Van Buren, Martin, 178.

Van Dorn, Gen. Earl, 228.

Vera Cruz, capture of, 188.

Vermont, admission of, 200.

Verrazani, 30.

Vesputius, Americus, 24.

Vicksburg, first expedition against, 230; second expedition, 244.

Virginia, settlement of, 46; secession of, 217.

Virginia, West, admission of, 218, 277.

**WAGNER, Fort, capture of, 254.**

Wagons, 145.

Wallace, Gen. Lew, 228, 263.

Walloons, the, 65.

Warren, Gen. Joseph, 110.

Washington, George, journey of, 81; captures Fort Duquesne, 85; appointed commander-in-chief, 111; captures Boston, 112; retreat through New Jersey, 116; at Princeton, 118; in Valley Forge, 125, 126; at Monmouth, 127; at Yorktown, 139; addresses officers at Newburg, 142; inaugurated President, 149; life of, 150.

Washington, Col. William A., 137.

Washington, capture of, by British, 169.









LIBRARY OF CONGRESS



0 005 834 730 9